

1. LoopBack	4
1.1 Installing StrongLoop	6
1.1.1 Updating to the latest version	6
1.2 LoopBack core concepts	7
1.2.1 StrongLoop Labs	10
1.3 LoopBack FAQ	10
1.4 Security advisories	14
1.4.1 Security advisory 01-09-2015	14
1.4.2 Security advisory 06-04-2015	15
1.5 Getting started with LoopBack	17
1.5.1 Create a simple API	17
1.5.2 Use API Explorer	22
1.5.3 Connect your API to a data source	25
1.5.4 Extend your API	29
1.5.5 Add a static web page	31
1.5.6 Add a custom Express route	35
1.5.7 Run in a cluster	37
1.5.8 Next steps	39
1.6 Getting started part II	40
1.6.1 Introducing the Coffee Shop Reviews app	40
1.6.2 Create new data source	42
1.6.3 Create new models	43
1.6.4 Define model relations	47
1.6.5 Define access controls	50
1.6.6 Define a remote hook	52
1.6.7 Create AngularJS client	53
1.6.8 Deploying your application	65
1.6.9 Learn more	66
1.7 Creating an application	67
1.7.1 Using LoopBack tools	68
1.7.2 Environment-specific configuration	69
1.7.3 Versioning your API	73
1.8 Managing users	73
1.8.1 Registering users	76
1.8.2 Logging in users	79
1.8.3 Partitioning users with realms	81
1.9 Authentication, authorization, and permissions	82
1.9.1 Introduction to User model authentication	84
1.9.2 Controlling data access	87
1.9.3 Making authenticated requests	90
1.9.4 Defining and using roles	92
1.9.5 Accessing related models	94
1.9.6 Creating a default admin user	97
1.9.7 Security considerations	98
1.9.8 Tutorial: access control	99
1.9.9 Advanced topics: access control	104
1.10 Defining models	105
1.10.1 Creating models	106
1.10.1.1 Using the model generator	107
1.10.1.2 Discovering models from relational databases	108
1.10.1.2.1 Database discovery API	110
1.10.1.3 Creating models from unstructured data	117
1.10.2 Customizing models	118
1.10.3 Attaching models to data sources	122
1.10.4 Exposing models over REST	123
1.10.5 Validating model data	128
1.10.6 Creating model relations	131
1.10.6.1 Tutorial: model relations	134
1.10.6.2 BelongsTo relations	141
1.10.6.3 HasOne relations	142
1.10.6.4 HasMany relations	145
1.10.6.5 HasManyThrough relations	146
1.10.6.6 HasAndBelongsToMany relations	152
1.10.6.7 Polymorphic relations	154
1.10.6.8 Querying related models	157
1.10.6.9 Embedded models and relations	159
1.11 Connecting models to data sources	167
1.11.1 Creating a database schema from models	170
1.11.2 Database connectors	174
1.11.2.1 Memory connector	174
1.11.2.2 MongoDB connector	175
1.11.2.2.1 Connecting to MongoDB	180

1.11.2.2.2 Using MongoLab	182
1.11.2.3 MySQL connector	183
1.11.2.3.1 Connecting to MySQL	186
1.11.2.4 Oracle connector	191
1.11.2.4.1 Installing the Oracle connector	197
1.11.2.4.2 Connecting to Oracle	199
1.11.2.5 PostgreSQL connector	204
1.11.2.5.1 Connecting to PostgreSQL	209
1.11.2.6 Redis connector	213
1.11.2.7 SQL Server connector	214
1.11.2.7.1 Connecting to Microsoft SQL Server	220
1.11.3 Executing native SQL	225
1.11.4 Non-database connectors	226
1.11.4.1 ATG connector	226
1.11.4.2 Email connector	227
1.11.4.3 Push connector	228
1.11.4.4 Remote connector	230
1.11.4.4.1 Remote connector example	231
1.11.4.4.2 Strong Remoting	233
1.11.4.5 REST connector	234
1.11.4.5.1 REST connector API	240
1.11.4.5.2 REST resource API	240
1.11.4.5.3 Request builder API	241
1.11.4.5.4 REST example with SharePoint	241
1.11.4.6 SOAP connector	252
1.11.4.7 Storage connector	255
1.11.5 Community connectors	257
1.11.6 Advanced topics: data sources	258
1.11.6.1 Building a connector	260
1.11.6.1.1 Implementing auto-migration	263
1.11.6.1.2 Implementing CRUD methods	265
1.11.6.1.3 Implementing model discovery	269
1.12 Using built-in models	273
1.12.1 Extending built-in models	276
1.12.2 Creating database tables for built-in models	278
1.12.3 Model property reference	279
1.12.4 Built-in models REST API	280
1.12.4.1 PersistedModel REST API	280
1.12.4.2 Access token REST API	286
1.12.4.3 ACL REST API	287
1.12.4.4 Application REST API	288
1.12.4.5 Email REST API	289
1.12.4.6 Relation REST API	289
1.12.4.7 Role REST API	296
1.12.4.8 User REST API	297
1.13 Working with data	301
1.13.1 Creating, updating, and deleting data	302
1.13.2 Querying data	303
1.13.2.1 Fields filter	306
1.13.2.2 Include filter	307
1.13.2.3 Limit filter	310
1.13.2.4 Order filter	311
1.13.2.5 Skip filter	312
1.13.2.6 Where filter	313
1.13.3 Using database transactions	319
1.13.4 Realtime server-sent events	322
1.14 Adding application logic	323
1.14.1 Adding logic to models	324
1.14.1.1 Remote methods	324
1.14.1.2 Remote hooks	331
1.14.1.3 Operation hooks	335
1.14.1.3.1 Operation hooks summary	343
1.14.1.4 Model hooks	345
1.14.1.5 Connector hooks	349
1.14.1.6 Tutorial: Adding application logic	351
1.14.2 Defining boot scripts	355
1.14.3 Defining mixins	358
1.14.4 Defining middleware	360
1.14.4.1 Upgrading applications to use phases	369
1.14.5 Working with LoopBack objects	372
1.14.5.1 Prototype versus instance methods	377
1.14.6 Using current context	379

1.14.7 Events	381
1.15 Running and debugging apps	381
1.15.1 Running local apps with slc	381
1.15.2 Setting debug strings	383
1.16 Preparing for deployment	385
1.17 Tutorials and examples	387
1.17.1 LoopBack example app	389
1.17.1.1 LoopBack example app extra material	394
1.17.2 Blog posts	396
1.17.3 Setting up an MBaaS	396
1.18 Using promises	396
1.19 Reference	398
1.19.1 Command-line reference (slc loopback)	399
1.19.1.1 ACL generator	399
1.19.1.2 Application generator	400
1.19.1.3 Boot script generator	400
1.19.1.4 Data source generator	401
1.19.1.5 Example generator	401
1.19.1.6 Middleware generator	402
1.19.1.7 Model generator	403
1.19.1.8 Property generator	403
1.19.1.9 Relation generator	404
1.19.1.10 Swagger generator	404
1.19.2 Project layout reference	405
1.19.2.1 package.json	406
1.19.2.2 server directory	407
1.19.2.2.1 component-config.json	407
1.19.2.2.2 config.json	409
1.19.2.2.3 datasources.json	411
1.19.2.2.4 middleware.json	414
1.19.2.2.5 model-config.json	416
1.19.2.2.6 server.js	418
1.19.2.3 common directory	418
1.19.2.3.1 Model definition JSON file	418
1.19.2.4 client directory	429
1.19.3 LoopBack types	430
1.19.4 Valid names in LoopBack	431
1.19.5 LoopBack 2.0 release notes	432
1.19.5.1 Migrating apps to version 2.0	433
1.19.5.2 Multi-module bundles	439
1.19.5.3 LoopBack known issues	440
1.19.6 Latest updates	441
1.19.7 LoopBack Definition Language (LDL)	459
1.19.8 Error object	460

# LoopBack

**LoopBack is a highly-extensible, open-source Node.js framework** that enables you to:

- Create dynamic end-to-end REST APIs with little or no coding.
- Access data from major relational databases, MongoDB, SOAP and REST APIs.
- Incorporate model relationships and access controls for complex APIs.
- Use geolocation, file, and push services for mobile apps.
- Easily create client apps using Android, iOS, and JavaScript SDKs.
- Run your application on-premises or in the cloud.



Read [LoopBack core concepts](#) to learn about key concepts you need to understand to use LoopBack.

Follow [Getting started with LoopBack](#) for an introduction to some of LoopBack's key features.

Check out the [LoopBack Developer Forum on Google Groups](#), a place where developers can ask questions, discuss LoopBack, and how they are using it.

## The LoopBack framework

The LoopBack framework is a set of Node.js modules that you can use independently or together to quickly build applications that expose REST APIs.

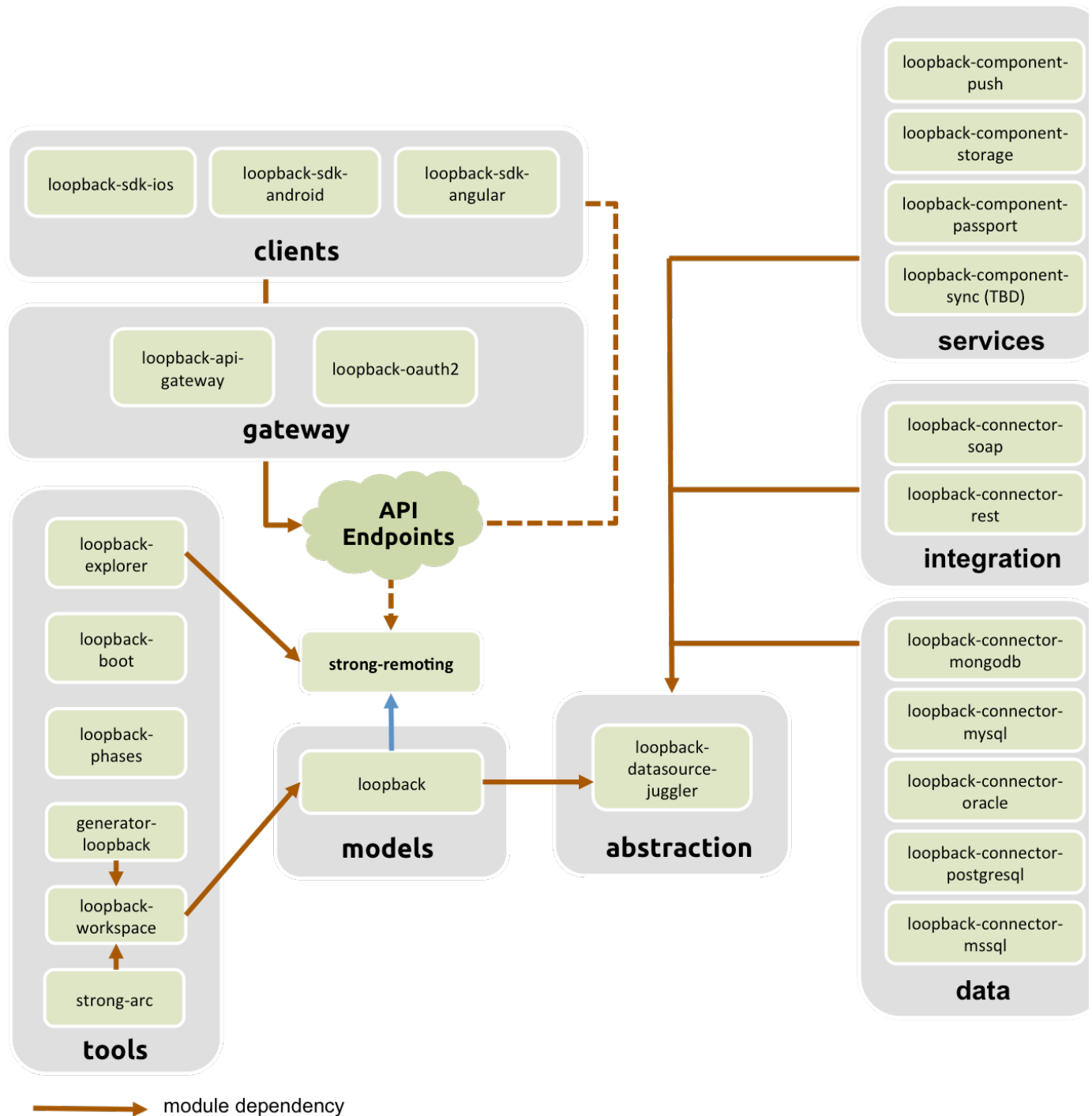
An application interacts with data sources through the LoopBack model API, available locally within Node.js, [remotely over REST](#), and via native client APIs for [iOS](#), [Android](#), and [HTML5](#). Using these APIs, apps can query databases, store data, upload files, send emails, create push notifications, register users, and perform other actions provided by data sources and services.

Clients can call LoopBack APIs directly using [Strong Remoting](#), a pluggable transport layer that enables you to provide backend APIs over REST, WebSockets, and other transports.

The following diagram illustrates key [LoopBack modules](#), how they are related, and their dependencies.

**New to Node.js? Read [Getting Started with Node.js](#) for:**

- [PHP Developers](#)
- [Rails Developers](#)
- [Java Developers](#)



## LoopBack framework modules

Category	Description	Use to...	Modules
Models	Model and API server	Quickly and dynamically mock up models and expose them as APIs without worrying about persisting.	loopback
Abstraction	Model data abstraction to physical persistence	Connect to multiple data sources or services and get back an abstracted model with CRUD capabilities independent on how it is physically stored.	loopback-datasource-juggler
Initialization	Application initialization	Configure data-sources, custom models, configure models and attach them to data sources; Configure application settings and run custom boot scripts.	loopback-boot

Sequencing	Middleware execution	Configure middleware to be executed at various points during application lifecycle.	loopback-phase
Data	RDBMS and noSQL physical data sources	Enable connections to RDBMS, noSQL data sources and get back an abstracted model.	loopback-connector-mongodb loopback-connector-mysql loopback-connector-postgresql loopback-connector-mssql loopback-connector-oracle
Integration	General system connectors	Connect to an existing system that expose APIs through common enterprise and web interfaces	loopback-connector-rest loopback-connector-soap
Tooling	CLI and graphical tools	Yeoman generator used by <code>slc loopback</code> command; <a href="#">Strong Loop Arc</a> graphical tool.	generator-loopback strong-arc
Services	Prebuilt services	Integrate with prebuilt services for common use cases to be utilized within LoopBack applications packaged into components.	loopback-component-push loopback-component-storage loopback-component-passport loopback-component-sync (in development)
Gateway	API gateway	Secure your APIs and inject quality of service aspects to the invocation and response workflow.	strong-gateway loopback-component-oauth2
Clients	Client SDKs	Develop your client app using native platform objects (iOS, Android, AngularJS) that interact with LoopBack APIs via REST.	loopback-sdk-ios loopback-sdk-android loopback-sdk-angular

## Installing StrongLoop



**Quickstart:** If you've already installed Node, you're familiar with installing npm modules globally, and you want to start using LoopBack quickly, then just enter:

```
$ npm install -g strongloop
```

Then, check out [Getting started with LoopBack](#).

Here's what `npm install -g strongloop` does:

- The [LoopBack](#) framework, including [loopback](#), [loopback-datasource-juggler](#) modules, and numerous other related StrongLoop modules, along with modules that they require.
- The StrongLoop command-line tool, `slc`, for creating LoopBack applications and for running and managing Node applications.
- [StrongLoop Arc](#), the unified graphical tool suite for the API lifecycle, including tools for building, profiling and monitoring Node apps.
- [LoopBack Angular command line tools](#) (`lb-ng` and `lb-ng-doc`). See [AngularJS JavaScript SDK](#) for details.
- Various other tools, including [Yeoman](#), the LoopBack Yeoman generators to create and scaffold LoopBack applications, and [Grunt](#), the JavaScript task runner.



If you want to [profile your application](#) or [monitor application metrics](#), **determine whether you need to install compiler tools**.

Then, **follow the instructions for your operating system:**


- [MacOS](#)
- [Windows](#)
- [Linux](#)

## Updating to the latest version

- [Basic update](#)
- [Performing a clean re-installation](#)
  - [Clean up installation from before Aug 2014](#)

- [Clean up installation from after Aug 2014](#)
- [Updating your Node.js installation](#)

For application dependencies, npm will automatically update packages that your application requires, based on the information in the `package.json` file. For more information on `package.json`, see the [npm documentation](#).

 See [Security advisories](#) for important upgrade information required to address security issues.

## Basic update

 The current version of strongloop is .

Update your installation with this command:

```
$ npm install -g strongloop
```


## Performing a clean re-installation

### Clean up installation from before Aug 2014

If you last installed StrongLoop software **before 6 Aug 2014**, enter these commands to clean up your installation:

```
$ npm uninstall -g strong-cli  
$ npm uninstall -g loopback-sdk-angular-cli
```

Wonder why you need to do this? See the [StrongLoop blog post on the subject](#).

 If you get errors running these commands, you may need to use `sudo` or manually delete the directories where these modules are installed.


Then install as shown above.

### Clean up installation from after Aug 2014

If you installed StrongLoop after 6 Aug 2014, and need to perform a clean reinstallation, follow these steps:

```
$ npm uninstall -g strongloop  
$ npm cache clear  
$ npm install -g strongloop
```

## If you have a LoopBack 1.x app

 You must make changes to your old app to run it with LoopBack 2.0.

Follow the instructions in [Migrating apps to version 2.0](#) to move your application to version 2.

## Updating your Node.js installation

To update your version of Node, simply reinstall Node as you did previously. See [nodejs.org](#) for details.

# LoopBack core concepts



**Read this first** to understand how LoopBack works. Then follow [Getting started with LoopBack](#) for a basic introduction to creating a LoopBack application.

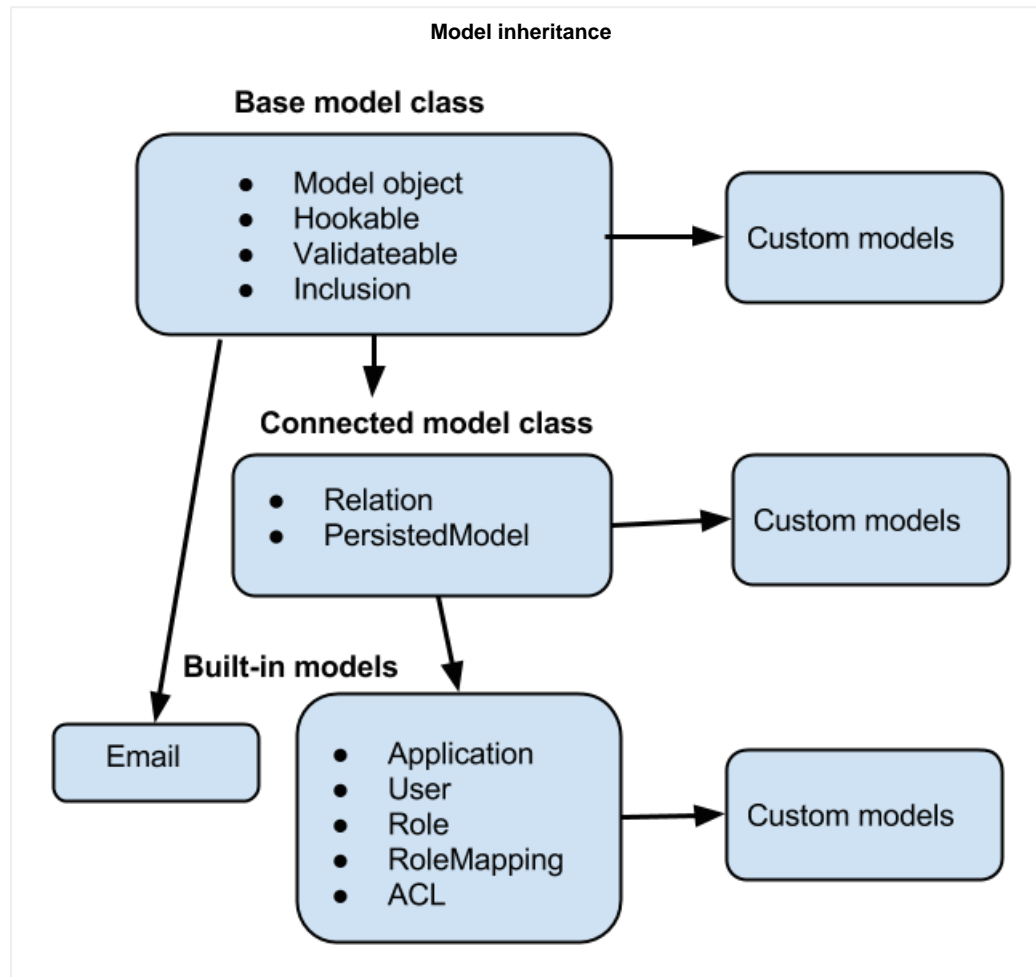
- [Models](#)
- [Application logic](#)
- [Data sources and connectors](#)
- [LoopBack components](#)
- [Development tools](#)

## Models

*Models* are at the heart of LoopBack, and represent back-end data sources such as databases or other back end services (REST, SOAP, and so on). LoopBack models are JavaScript objects with both Node and REST APIs.

A key powerful feature of LoopBack is that when you define a model it automatically comes with a predefined REST API with a full set of create, read, update, and delete (CRUD) operations.

The [Basic model object](#) has methods for adding [hooks](#) and for [validating data](#). Other model objects all "inherit from" it. Models have an inheritance hierarchy, as shown at right: When you attach a model to a persistent data source it becomes a [connected model](#) with CRUD operations; LoopBack's built-in models inherit from it.



## Built-in models

Every LoopBack application has a set of predefined [built-in models](#) such as `User`, `Role`, and `Application`, so you don't have to create these common models from scratch.

## Custom models

You can [define your own custom models](#) specific to your application. You can make your custom models [extend built-in models](#) to build on the predefined functionality of `User`, `Application`, and other built-in models.

You can create LoopBack models in various ways, depending on what kind of data source the model is based on. You can create models:

- [With the model generator](#), `slc loopback:model`.
- [From an existing relational database](#) using [model discovery](#). Then you can keep your model synchronized with the database using LoopBack's [schema / model synchronization API](#).
- [By instance introspection](#) for free-form data in NoSQL databases or REST APIs.

All three of these methods create a [Model definition JSON file](#) that defines your model in LoopBack, by convention in a LoopBack project's `common/models` directory; for example, `common/models/Account.json`.

You can also create and customize models programmatically using the [LoopBack API](#), or by manually editing the [Model definition JSON file](#). In most cases, you shouldn't need to use those techniques to create models, but generally will to customize models for your use.



The [Model definition JSON file](#) includes an `idInjection` property that indicates whether LoopBack automatically adds a unique `id` property.



property to a model. For a model connected to a database, the id property corresponds to the primary key. See [ID properties](#) for more information.

## Model relations

You can express [relationships between models](#), such as [BelongsTo](#), [HasMany](#), and [HasAndBelongsToMany](#).

## Model CRUD operations

When you connect a model to a persistent data source such as a database, it becomes a [connected model](#) with a full set of create, read, update, and delete (CRUD) operations from the [PersistedModel](#) class:

Operation	REST	LoopBack model method (Node API)*	Corresponding SQL Operation
Create	<a href="#">PUT /modelName</a> <a href="#">POST /modelName</a>	<code>create()</code> *	INSERT
Read (Retrieve)	<a href="#">GET /modelName?filter=...</a>	<code>find()</code> *	SELECT
Update (Modify)	<a href="#">POST /modelName</a> <a href="#">PUT /modelName</a>	<code>updateAll()</code> *	UPDATE
Delete (Destroy)	<a href="#">DELETE /modelName/modelId</a>	<code>destroyById()</code> *	DELETE

\*Methods listed are just prominent examples; other methods may provide similar functionality; for example: `findById()`, `findOne()`, and `findOrCreate()`. See [PersistedModel API](#) documentation for more information.

## Application logic

You can add custom application logic in several ways; you can:

- [Add application logic to models](#) through [remote methods](#) (custom REST endpoints), [remote hooks](#) that are triggered by remote methods, and [operation hooks](#) that are triggered by model CRUD methods.
- Add boot scripts that run when the application starts.
- Define custom [middleware](#), similar to Express middleware.

You can add code to [Validate data](#) before saving it to the model and back-end data store.

## Middleware phases

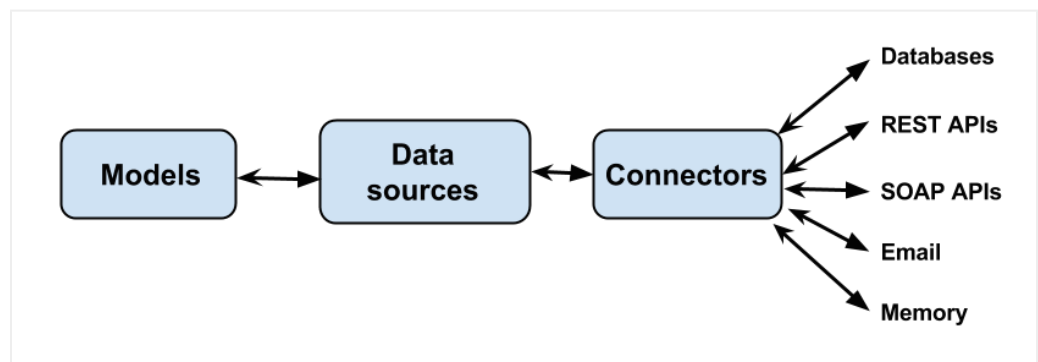
*Middleware* refers to functions executed when HTTP requests are made to REST endpoints. Since LoopBack is based on [Express](#), LoopBack middleware is the same as [Express middleware](#). However, LoopBack adds the concept of *phases*, to clearly define the order in which middleware is called. Using phases helps to avoid ordering issues that can occur with standard Express middleware.

See [Defining middleware](#) for more information.

## Data sources and connectors

LoopBack generalizes backend services such as databases, REST APIs, SOAP web services, and storage services as *data sources*.

Data sources are backed by *connectors* that then communicate directly with the database or other back-end service. Applications don't use connectors directly, rather they go through data sources using the [DataSource](#) and [PersistedModel](#) APIs.



## LoopBack components

LoopBack components provide additional "plug-in" functionality:

- [Push notifications](#) - enables sending information to mobile apps for immediate display in a "badge," alert, or pop-up message on the mobile device.
- [Storage service](#) - enables uploading and downloading files to and from cloud storage providers (Amazon, Rackspace, Openstack, and Azure) as well as the server file system.
- [Third-party login](#) - integrates [Passport](#) and enables user login (and account linking) using third-party credentials from Facebook, Google, Twitter, Github, or any system that supports OAuth, OAuth 2, or OpenID.
- [Synchronization](#) - enables mobile applications to operate offline and then synchronize data with the server application when reconnected.
- [OAuth 2.0](#) - enables LoopBack applications to function as oAuth 2.0 providers to authenticate and authorize client applications and users to access protected API endpoints.

## Development tools

LoopBack provides two primary application development tools:

- [slc loopback](#), a command line tool for creating and modifying LoopBack applications.
- [StrongLoop Arc](#), a graphical tool for developing, deploying, and monitoring LoopBack applications.

The `slc loopback` command-line tool guides you through the application development process with interactive prompts:

1. Start with the [application generator](#) to initially create and scaffold the basic structure of the application: `slc loopback`.
2. Add models (and model properties) using the [model generator](#): `slc loopback:model`.  
If you need to add properties to existing models, use the [property generator](#), `slc loopback:property`.
3. Add data sources using the [data source generator](#), `slc loopback:datasource`.
4. Add relationships between models with the [relation generator](#), `slc loopback:relation`.

## StrongLoop Labs



**StrongLoop Labs projects** provide early access to advanced or experimental functionality. In general, these projects may lack usability, completeness, documentation, and robustness, and may be outdated.

However, StrongLoop supports these projects: Paying customers can open issues using the StrongLoop customer support system (Zendesk), and community users can report bugs on GitHub.

These are the StrongLoop Labs projects:

- [Android SDK](#)
- [iOS SDK](#)
- [LoopBack in the client](#)
- [Push notifications](#)
- [Redis connector](#)
- [Synchronization](#)

## LoopBack FAQ

- General questions
  - [Is LoopBack free? How much does it cost?](#)
  - [Is there a developer forum or mailing list?](#)
  - [What client SDKs does LoopBack have?](#)
  - [Which data connectors does LoopBack have?](#)
  - [Why do curl requests to my LoopBack app fail?](#)
- Detailed questions
  - [How do you perform a GET request to a remote server?](#)
  - [Can an application respond with XML instead of JSON?](#)
  - [How do you send email from an application?](#)
  - [How do you use static middleware?](#)
  - [What kind of hooks do models support?](#)
  - User management questions
    - [How do you register a new user?](#)
    - [How do you send an email verification for a new user registration?](#)

- How do you log in a user?
- How do you log a user out?
- How do you perform a password reset for a registered user?
- Troubleshooting
  - Error message: loopback deprecated Routes "/methods" and "/models" are considered dangerous and should not be used

## General questions

StrongLoop supports the following operating systems:

- RHEL/CentOS 6.3 (RPM)
- Debian/Ubuntu 12.10 (DEB)
- Mac OS X Mountain Lion 10.8 (PKG)
- Microsoft Windows 8, 2008 (MSI).

**NOTE:** Node does not support using Cygwin. Instead use Windows Command Prompt for command-line tools.

## Is LoopBack free? How much does it cost?

There are free and paid versions of LoopBack. See <http://strongloop.com/node-js/subscription-plans/> for more information.

LoopBack uses a dual license model: you may use it under the terms of the open source MIT license, or under the commercial StrongLoop License. See the [license file](#) for the full text of both licenses.

## Is there a developer forum or mailing list?

Yes! The [LoopBack Google Group](#) is a place for developers to ask questions and discuss LoopBack and how they are using it. Check it out!

There is also a [LoopBack Gitter channel](#) for realtime discussions with fellow LoopBack developers.

StrongLoop also publishes a blog with topics relevant to LoopBack; see [Blog posts](#) for a list of the latest posts.

## What client SDKs does LoopBack have?

LoopBack has three client SDKs for accessing the REST API services generated by the LoopBack framework:

- iOS SDK (Objective C) for iPhone and iPad apps. See [iOS SDK](#) for more information.
- Android SDK (Java) for Android apps. See [Android SDK](#) for more information.
- AngularJS (JavaScript) for HTML5 front-ends. See [AngularJS JavaScript SDK](#) for more information.

## Which data connectors does LoopBack have?

LoopBack provides numerous connectors to access enterprise and other backend data systems.

Database connectors:

- [Memory connector](#)
- [MongoDB connector](#)
- [MySQL connector](#)
- [Oracle connector](#)
- [PostgreSQL connector](#)
- [Redis connector](#)
- [SQL Server connector](#)

Other connectors:

- [ATG connector](#)
- [Email connector](#)
- [Push connector](#)
- [Remote connector](#)
- [REST connector](#)
- [SOAP connector](#)
- [Storage connector](#)


Additionally, there are [community connectors](#) created by developers in the LoopBack open source community.

## Why do curl requests to my LoopBack app fail?

If the URL loads fine in a browser, but when you make a `curl` request to your app you get the error:

```
curl: (7) Failed to connect to localhost port 3000: Connection refused
```

The cause is likely to be because of incompatible IP versions between your app and `curl`.

 On Mac OS 10.10 (Yosemite), `curl` uses IP v6 by default.

LoopBack, by default uses IP v4, and `curl` might be using IP v6. If you see IP v6 entries in your hosts file (`::1 localhost`, `fe80::1%lo0 localhost`), it is likely that `curl` is making requests using IP v6. To make request using IP v4, specify the `--ipv4` option in your `curl` request as shown below.

```
$ curl http://localhost:3000 --ipv4
```

You can make your LoopBack app use IP v6 by specifying an IP v6 address as shown below:

```
app.start = function() {  
  // start the web server  
  return app.listen(3000, '::1', function() {  
    app.emit('started');  
    console.log('Web server listening at: %s', app.get('url'));  
  });  
};
```

## Detailed questions

Once you start working with LoopBack, you may have more detailed questions. Some of the most common are collected here, along with brief answers and links to the documentation for more information.

### How do you perform a GET request to a remote server?

First, you have to configure a data source using the [REST connector](#). In the `datasources.json` file that configures the data source, you can define operations against the REST API using the `operations` property.

For a short example, see [loopback-faq-rest-connector](#).

### Can an application respond with XML instead of JSON?

Yes: in `server/config.json` set the `remoting.rest.xml` property to `true`. See [config.json](#) for more information.

### How do you send email from an application?

In brief:

1. Configure a datasource to use the [email connector](#).
2. Map the built-in `Email` model to the email datasource.
3. Send an email using the configured model with `Email.send()`.

See [loopback-faq-email](#) for a short example.

### How do you use static middleware?

Static middleware enables an application to serve static content such as HTML, CSS, images, and client JavaScript files. To add it:

1. Remove the contents of the default `"routes"` property in `middleware.json`.
2. Add the following to the `"files"` property in `middleware.json`: to serve static content from the project's `/client` directory.

```
"loopback#static": {
  "params": "$!../client"
}
```

Of course, change the value to use a different directory to contain static content.

See [Defining middleware](#) for more information, and [loopback-faq-middleware](#) for a short example.

## What kind of hooks do models support?

LoopBack models support:

- [Operation hooks](#) that execute when the model performs CRUD (create, read, update, and delete) operations.
- [Remote hooks](#) that execute before or after a remote method is called.

## User management questions

See [Managing users](#) for more information and [loopback-faq-user-management](#) for relevant code examples.

Note

- You must [configure LoopBack to send email](#) for email-related features.
- If you're using Gmail, simply [replace user and pass](#) with your own credentials.

### How do you register a new user?

1. Create a [form](#) to gather sign up information.
2. Create a [remote hook](#) to [send a verification email](#).

Notes:

- Upon execution, `user.verify` sends an email using the provided [options](#).
- The verification email is configured to [redirect the user to the /verified route](#) in our example. For your app, you should configure the redirect to match your use case.
- The [options](#) are self-explanatory except `type`, `template` and `user`.
  - `type` - value must be `email`.
  - `template` - the path to the template to use for the verification email.
  - `user` - when provided, the information in the object will be used to in the verification link email.

### How do you send an email verification for a new user registration?

See [step 2](#) in the previous question.

### How do you log in a user?

1. Create a [form](#) to accept login credentials.
2. Create an [route](#) to handle the login request.

### How do you log a user out?

1. Create a [logout link](#) with the access token embedded into the URL.
2. Call `User.logout` with the access token.

Notes:

- We use the loopback token middleware to process access tokens. As long as you provide `access_token` in the query string of URL, the access token object will be provided in `req.accessToken` property in your route handler.

### How do you perform a password reset for a registered user?

1. Create a [form](#) to gather password reset information.
2. Create an [endpoint to handle the password reset request](#). Calling `User.resetPassword` ultimately emits a `resetPasswordRequest` event and creates a temporary access token.
3. Register an event handler for the `resetPasswordRequest` that sends an email to the registered user. In our example, we provide a [URL](#) that redirects the user to a [password reset page authenticated with a temporary access token](#).
4. Create a [password reset form](#) for the user to enter and confirm their new password.

5. Create an [endpoint to process the password reset](#).

Note: For the `resetPasswordRequest` handler callback, you are provided with an `info` object which contains information related to the user that is requesting the password reset.

## Troubleshooting

### Error message: loopback deprecated Routes `"/methods"` and `"/models"` are considered dangerous and should not be used

If you see this error message, you need to update your version of LoopBack. This issue is fixed in LoopBack 2.14+. See [LoopBack PR #1135](#).

If you need to use an older version of LoopBack, or want to enable these routes, you can [set a property in config.json](#) to do so.

## Security advisories

At StrongLoop, we take security very seriously. We make every effort to ensure the security of StrongLoop-supported modules, and to fix any vulnerabilities or provide workarounds as soon as possible.

These are important advisories about known security issues:

- [Security advisory 01-09-2015](#)
- [Security advisory 06-04-2015](#)



Some advisories may require action on your part, for example to upgrade StrongLoop packages.

## How to report a security issue


If you think you have discovered a new security issue with any StrongLoop package, please do not report it on GitHub. Instead, send an email to [callback@strongloop.com](mailto:callback@strongloop.com) with a full description and steps to reproduce.

## Security advisory 01-09-2015

### LoopBack connectors SQL injection vulnerability



If you installed LoopBack connectors for PostgreSQL, Microsoft SQL Server, Oracle, or MySQL prior to **9 Jan 2015** you need update the affected packages.

- **Date:**  09 Jan 2015
- **Security risk:** Highly critical
- **Vulnerability:** SQL Injection

### Description

LoopBack allows you to define model properties (including id) as number types. A vulnerability in the implementations of relational database connectors allows an attacker to send specially crafted requests (SQL statements as the value of numbers) resulting in arbitrary SQL execution. This vulnerability can be exploited by anonymous users.

### Reported by

David Kirchner

### Versions affected

- `loopback-connector-postgresql` prior to 1.3.0
- `loopback-connector-mssql` prior to 1.3.0
- `loopback-connector-oracle` prior to 1.5.0
- `loopback-connector-mysql` prior to 1.5.0 (The SQL injection is not possible but invalid numbers are treated as NaN).

### Solution

Please upgrade your project dependencies to use the latest versions of connectors and run **npm update**:

- `loopback-connector-postgresql@1.3.0`

- loopback-connector-mssql@1.3.0
- loopback-connector-oracle@1.5.0
- loopback-connector-mysql@1.5.0



Before running `npm update`, check your application's `package.json` to ensure that it specifies the correct version, for example:

```
"loopback-connector-oracle": "^1.5.0"
```

## How to report security vulnerabilities?

Please send us an e-mail at [callback@strongloop.com](mailto:callback@strongloop.com).

## Security advisory 06-04-2015

### LoopBack and HTTP parameter pollution

HTTP parameter pollution is a known [vulnerability of Express applications](#). LoopBack addressed the problem in the following module versions; to avoid this vulnerability, make sure your application uses these:

- loopback version 2.17.1 or newer.
- strong-remoting version 2.16.3 or newer.
- loopback-datasource-juggler version 2.26.1 or newer.

If you are using vanilla Express, then add [hpp](#) middleware to your application to protect against the vulnerability.

### What is HTTP parameter pollution?

Let's start with a quick quiz. Consider the following HTTP request:

```
GET /search?firstname=John&firstname=Jane
```

Now, what is the value of `req.query.firstname`?

The correct answer is that `req.query.firstname` is set to an array of two items, `['John', 'Jane']`, because Express populates HTTP request parameters with an array when the parameter name is repeated multiple times.

While this is a useful feature that many modules depend on (including LoopBack), it allows an attacker to intentionally pollute request parameters that are not supposed to be an array and bypass input validation or even cause a denial of service.

For example, if the record above were a POST request the updated database record might end up as follows:

```
{
  "firstname": ["John", "Jane"],
  "lastname": "Smith"
}
```

If the handler expects the `firstname` parameter to be a string and calls one of the string prototype methods on the parameter, then the application may crash on an unhandled error:

```
TypeError: Object John,Jane has no method 'trim'
(...)
```

### Consequences for LoopBack applications

Fortunately, LoopBack has an extra layer of abstraction on top of Express implemented by the `strong-remoting` module. This module understands the types of arguments that are passed to request handlers and thus it can effectively prevent parameter pollution.

Unfortunately the code that handles parameter type conversions was not implemented correctly in respect to this particular edge case. For example, the following code snippet allows the attacker to crash your server process:

```

Car.greet = function(whom, cb) {
  process.nextTick(function() {
    cb(null, 'Hello ' + whom.toUpperCase());
  });
};
Car.remoteMethod('greet', {
  isStatic: true,
  accepts: { arg: 'whom', type: 'string', required: true },
  returns: { arg: 'message', type: 'string' },
  http: { verb: 'GET' }
});

```

The request GET /cars/greet?whom=Jane&whom=John triggers unhandled exception in the server:

```

cb(null, 'Hello ' + whom.toUpperCase());
                        ^
TypeError: undefined is not a function

```

The vulnerability was fixed by [strong-remoting#207](#). The fix revealed a bug in remoting metadata provided by LoopBack's built-in User model, and we addressed the problem in [loopback#1332](#).

## Beyond HTTP requests

There is one more place where LoopBack deals with request parameters: model properties. When setting model properties from request data, loopback-datasource-juggler (LoopBack's ORM framework) coerces data types to ensure values match the type provided by the model definition.

For example, one can send a string value "123" for a number property and loopback-datasource-juggler will automatically convert the string to the number 123.

Here is an overview of conversion result for array values:

- For String properties, an array value specified in the request is converted into a single comma-delimited string. For example, the request {name: ['a', 'b']} is converted to model data {name: 'a,b'}.
- For Number properties, when the request specifies an array value, then the following rule is applied:
  - An empty array is converted to 0. For example, {count: []} is converted to {count: 0}.
  - An array of with a single numeric element is converted to a number. For example, {count: [18]} is converted to {count: 18}.
  - An other array values are converted to NaN. Note that NaN (not a number) values are later serialized as null in the JSON response body.  
For example, {count: [18, 19]} is converted to {count: NaN} and produces {count: null} in the server response.
- For Boolean properties, array values are converted to true. For example, {isChecked: [1,2,3]} is converted to {isChecked: true}.
- For Date properties, an array value is converted to a comma-delimited string first and then it's parsed as a date string. (This typically produces an "Invalid Date" value). For example, {when: [2015,04,02]} is converted to 2015-04-02T00:00:00.000.
- For Object or Any properties, the original array value is used.
- For properties of array type, for example [number] (array of numbers) or [string] (array of strings), each array item is converted using the appropriate rule from the rules above. Examples:
  - {strings: [['a','b'], 'c']} is converted to {strings: ['a,b', 'c']}.
  - {numbers: [[1,2], 3]} is converted to {numbers: [NaN, 3]}.

Although all looks good on the first sight, I found a flaw in the implementation of the validation rule "required" for numbers, where NaN value was considered as "truthy" and thus passed the validation. This can be exploited by passing an array value for a number property, for example:



```
> POST /api/records
{
  "count": [1,2,3]
}
< 200 OK
{
  "count": null
}
```

The issue was fixed by [loopback-datasource-juggler#568](#).

## Getting started with LoopBack



**Prerequisites:** Before following this tutorial:

- [Install StrongLoop software](#).
- Read [LoopBack core concepts](#).

This tutorial will walk through the initial steps to create a basic LoopBack application.

The application you'll create is in the [loopback-getting-started](#) GitHub repository. To make it easy for you to pick up the tutorial at any point, there are [tags](#) for each step of the tutorial.

You can run through the steps in order to create the app and get a sense for some of the things LoopBack can do, or just skip to the one that interests you:

- [Create a simple API](#)
- [Use API Explorer](#)
- [Connect your API to a data source](#)
- [Extend your API](#)
- [Add a static web page](#)
- [Add a custom Express route](#)
- [Run in a cluster](#)
- [Next steps](#)

**New to Node? Read [Getting Started with Node.js](#) for ....**

- [PHP Developers](#)
- [Rails Developers](#)
- [Java Developers](#)

## Create a simple API



**Prerequisite:** Install StrongLoop software as described in [Installing StrongLoop](#).

**Recommended:** Read [LoopBack core concepts](#).

- [Create new application](#)
- [Create models](#)
- [Check out the project structure](#)
- [Run the application](#)

Use the LoopBack command-line tool, `slc loopback`, to quickly create a LoopBack application, models, and data sources.

Use the [LoopBack command-line tool](#), `slc loopback`, to create and *scaffold* applications. Scaffolding simply means generating the basic code for your application to save you time. You can then extend and modify the code as desired for your specific needs.



Before following this tutorial, make sure you have the latest version of StrongLoop with:

```
$ npm install -g strongloop
```

Make sure you run this command recently (within 24 hours) to get the latest updates. We're always improving LoopBack!

## Create new application

To create a new application, run the LoopBack [application generator](#):

```
$ slc loopback
```

The LoopBack generator will greet you with some friendly ASCII art and prompt you for the name of the application.

Enter `loopback-getting-started`. Then the generator will prompt you for the name of the directory to contain the project; press Enter to accept the default (the same as the application name):

```

- - - - -
|         |
| --(o)-- |
\ - - - - /
( _'U'_ )
/  A  \
|   ~   |
- ' . ' -
  | ° ' Y

```

Let's create a LoopBack application!

[?] What's the name of your application? loopback-getting-started

[?] Enter name of the directory to contain the project: loopback-getting-started

You can use a different name for the application, but if you do, be sure to substitute your name for "loopback-getting-started" throughout the rest of this tutorial.

The generator will scaffold the application including:

1. Initializing the [project folder structure](#).
2. Creating default JSON files.
3. Creating default JavaScript files.
4. Downloading and installing dependent Node modules (as if you had manually done `npm install`).

## Create models

Now that you've scaffolded the initial project, you're going to create create a *CoffeeShop* model that will automatically have REST API endpoints.

Go into your new application directory, then run the LoopBack [model generator](#):

```
$ cd loopback-getting-started
$ slc loopback:model
```

The generator will prompt for a model name. Enter **CoffeeShop**:

```
[?] Enter the model name: CoffeeShop
```

It will ask if you want to attach the model to any data sources that have already been defined.

At this point, only the default in-memory data source is available. Press **Enter** to select it:

```
...
[?] Select the data-source to attach CoffeeShop to: (Use arrow keys)
  db (memory)
```

Then the generator will prompt you for the base class to use for the model. Since you will eventually connect this model to a persistent data source in a database, press down-arrow to choose **PersistedModel**, then press **Enter**:

```
[?] Select model's base class: (Use arrow keys)
  Model
  PersistedModel
  ACL
  AccessToken
  Application
  Change
  Checkpoint
```

**PersistedModel** is the base object for all models connected to a persistent data source such as a database. See [LoopBack core concepts](#) for an overview of the model inheritance hierarchy.

One of the powerful advantages of LoopBack is that it automatically generates a REST API for your model. The generator will ask whether you want to expose this REST API.

Hit **Enter** again to accept the default and expose the Person model via REST:

```
[?] Expose CoffeeShop via the REST API? (Y/n) Y
```

LoopBack automatically creates a REST route associated with your model using the *plural* of the model name. By default, it pluralizes the name for you (by adding "s"), but you can specify a custom plural form if you wish. See [Exposing models over REST](#) for all the details.

Press **Enter** to accept the default plural form (CoffeeShops):

```
[?] Custom plural form (used to build REST URL):
```

Every model has properties. Right now, you're going to define one property, "name," for the CoffeeShop model.

Select **string** as the property type (press **Enter**, since string is the default choice):

```
Let's add some CoffeeShop properties now.
Enter an empty property name when done.
[?] Property name: name
  invoke    loopback:property
[?] Property type: (Use arrow keys)
string
number
boolean
object
array
date
buffer
geopoint
(other)
```

Each property can be optional or required. Enter **y** to make name required:

```
[?] Required? (y/N)
```

End the model creation process by pressing **Enter** when prompted for the name of the next property.

The model generator will create two files in the application's `common/models` directory that define the model: `coffee-shop.json` and `coffee-shop.js`.



The LoopBack [model generator](#), `slc loopback:model`, automatically converts camel-case model names to lowercase dashed names. For example, if you create a model named "FooBar" with the model generator, it creates files `foo-bar.json` and `foo-bar.js` in `common/models`. However, the model name ("FooBar") will be preserved via the model's name property.

## Check out the project structure



The following describes the application structure as created by the `slc loopback` command. LoopBack does not require that you follow this structure, but if you don't, then you can't use `slc loopback` commands to modify or extend your application.


LoopBack project files and directories are in the *application root directory*. Within this directory the standard LoopBack project structure has three sub-directories:

- `server` - Node application scripts and configuration files.
- `client` - Client JavaScript, HTML, and CSS files.
- `common` - Files common to client and server. The `/models` sub-directory contains all model JSON and JavaScript files.



All your model JSON and JavaScript files go in the `/common/models` directory.

File or directory	Description	How to access in code
<b>Top-level application directory</b>		
<code>package.json</code>	Standard npm package specification. See <a href="#">package.json</a> .  Additionally, the top-level directory contains the stub <code>README.md</code> file, and <code>node_modules</code> directory (for Node dependencies).	N/A
<b>/server directory - Node application files</b>		
<code>server.js</code>	Main application program file.	N/A
<code>config.json</code>	Application settings. See <a href="#">config.json</a> .	<code>app.get('setting-name')</code>
<code>datasources.json</code>	Data source configuration file. See <a href="#">datasources.json</a> . For an example, see <a href="#">Create new data source</a> .	<code>app.datasources['datasource-name']</code>
<code>model-config.json</code>	Model configuration file. See <a href="#">model-config.json</a> . For more information, see <a href="#">Connecting models to data sources</a> .	N/A
<code>middleware.json</code>	Middleware definition file. For more information, see <a href="#">Defining middleware</a> .	N/A
<code>/boot</code> directory	Add scripts to perform initialization and setup. See <a href="#">boot scripts</a> .	Scripts are automatically executed in alphabetical order.
<b>/client directory - Client application files</b>		
<code>README.md</code>	LoopBack generators create empty README file in markdown format.	N/A
Other	Add your HTML, CSS, client JavaScript files.	
<b>/common directory - shared application files</b>		

/models directory	<p>Custom model files:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Model definition JSON files</a>, by convention named <i>model-name.json</i>; for example <i>customer.json</i>.</li> <li>• Custom model scripts by convention named <i>model-name.js</i>; for example, <i>customer.js</i>.</li> </ul> <p>For more information, see <a href="#">Model definition JSON file</a> and <a href="#">Customizing models</a>.</p> <div> <p> The LoopBack <a href="#">model generator</a>, <code>slc loopback:model</code>, automatically converts camel-case model names to lowercase dashed names. For example, if you create a model named "FooBar" with the model generator, it creates files <i>foo-bar.json</i> and <i>foo-bar.js</i> in <i>common/model</i>s. However, the model name ("FooBar") will be preserved via the model's name property.</p> </div>	<p>Node:</p> <pre>myModel = app.models.myModelName</pre>
-------------------	---	--

For all the details of the canonical LoopBack application structure, see [Project layout reference](#).

## Run the application

Start the application:

```
$ node .
...
Browse your REST API at http://0.0.0.0:3000/explorer
Web server listening at: http://0.0.0.0:3000/
```




Running your app with the `node` command is appropriate when you're developing on your local machine. Once you're ready to prepare for moving to production, you can run it with `slc start` to run it under control of StrongLoop Process Manager, that provides options for clustering, logging, monitoring, and much more. See [Operating Node applications](#) for more information on the power of the `slc` command-line tool.

Open your browser to <http://0.0.0.0:3000/> (on some systems, you may need to use <http://localhost:3000> instead). You'll see the default application response that displays some JSON with some status information; for example:

```
{ "started": "2014-11-20T21:59:47.155Z", "uptime": 42.054 }
```

Now open your browser to <http://0.0.0.0:3000/explorer> or <http://localhost:3000/explorer>. You'll see the StrongLoop API Explorer:


**StrongLoop API Explorer**
Token Not Set

Set Access Token

---

CoffeeShops

Show/Hide | List Operations | Expand Operations | Raw

---

Users

Show/Hide | List Operations | Expand Operations | Raw

---

[ BASE URL: <http://0.0.0.0:3000/explorer/resources> , API VERSION: 0.0.0 ]

Through a set of simple steps using LoopBack, you've created a CoffeeShop model, specified its properties and then exposed it through REST.

**Next:** In [Use API Explorer](#), you'll explore the REST API you just created in more depth and exercise some of its operations.

## Use API Explorer



**Prerequisite:** Install StrongLoop software as described in [Installing StrongLoop](#).

**Recommended:** Read [LoopBack core concepts](#).

- [Run API Explorer](#)
- [About LoopBack built-in models](#)
- [Exploring the CoffeeShop model](#)

LoopBack applications come with a built-in API Explorer you can use to test REST API operations during development.

You're probably not the only one who'll use the API you just created. That means you'll need to document your API. Fortunately, LoopBack generates a developer portal / API Explorer for you.



If you followed [Create a simple API](#), keep that app running and skip down to [Run API Explorer](#).

If you're just jumping in, follow the steps below to catch up...

Get the app (in the state following the last article) from GitHub and install all its dependencies:

```
$ git clone https://github.com/strongloop/loopback-getting-started.git
$ cd loopback-getting-started
$ git checkout step1
$ npm install
```

## Run API Explorer

Run the application:

```
$ node .
```

Now go to <http://localhost:3000/explorer>. You'll see the StrongLoop API Explorer showing the two models this application has: **Users** and **Coffee Shops**:

Model	Show/Hide	List Operations	Expand Operations	Raw
CoffeeShops				
Users				

[ BASE URL: <http://0.0.0.0:3000/explorer/resources> , API VERSION: 0.0.0 ]

In addition to the CoffeeShop model that you defined, by default Loopback generates the User model and its endpoints for every application.

## About LoopBack built-in models

Actually, LoopBack creates several other [built-in models](#) for common use cases:

- **Application model** - contains metadata for a client application that has its own identity and associated configuration with the LoopBack server.
- **User model** - register and authenticate users of your app locally or against third-party services.
- **Access control models** - ACL, AccessToken, Scope, Role, and RoleMapping models for controlling access to applications, resources, and methods.


- **Email model** - send emails to your app users using SMTP or third-party services.

The built-in models (except for Email) extend `PersistedModel`, so they automatically have a full complement of create, update, and delete (CRUD) operations.

**i** By default, only the User model is exposed over REST. To expose the other models, change the model's `public` property to `true` in `server/model-config.json`. See [Exposing models](#) for more information. **Use caution:** exposing some of these models over public API may be a security risk.

## Exploring the CoffeeShop model

Right now, you're going to "drill down" on the CoffeeShop model. Click on **CoffeeShops** to show all its API endpoints:


**StrongLoop API Explorer**

Token Not Set
Set Access Token

### CoffeeShops

Show/Hide | List Operations | Expand Operations | Raw

POST	/CoffeeShops	Create a new instance of the model and persist it into the data source
GET	/CoffeeShops	Find all instances of the model matched by filter from the data source
PUT	/CoffeeShops	Update an existing model instance or insert a new one into the data source
PUT	/CoffeeShops/{id}	Update attributes for a model instance and persist it into the data source
HEAD	/CoffeeShops/{id}	Check whether a model instance exists in the data source
GET	/CoffeeShops/{id}	Find a model instance by id from the data source
DELETE	/CoffeeShops/{id}	Delete a model instance by id from the data source
GET	/CoffeeShops/{id}/exists	Check whether a model instance exists in the data source
GET	/CoffeeShops/count	Count instances of the model matched by where from the data source
GET	/CoffeeShops/findOne	Find first instance of the model matched by filter from the data source
POST	/CoffeeShops/update	Update instances of the model matched by where from the data source

### Users

Show/Hide | List Operations | Expand Operations | Raw

[ BASE URL: http://0.0.0.0:3000/explorer/resources , API VERSION: 0.0.0 ]

Scan down the rows of the API endpoints: you can see that they cover all the normal create, read, update, and delete (CRUD) operations, and then some.

Click on the first row, **POST /CoffeeShops** **Create a new instance of the model and persist it into the data source** to expand that operation:

**POST** /CoffeeShops

Create a new instance of the model and persist it into the data source

### Parameters

Parameter	Value	Description	Parameter Type	Data Type
data	<div><div></div><div>Parameter content type: application/json</div></div>	Model instance data	body	<div>Model   Model Schema</div> <div><div><pre>{   "name": "",   "id": 0 }</pre></div><div>Click to set as parameter value</div></div>

First, click here

Then edit JSON there

### Response Messages

HTTP Status Code	Reason	Response Model
200	Request was successful	<div>Model   Model Schema</div> <div><div><pre>{   "name": "",   "id": 0 }</pre></div></div>

Then click to submit request

Try it out!

Follow the instructions in the diagram above.

Click in Model Schema to get a JSON "data template" that you can edit in the **data** field.

Add some text for the `name` property. You don't have to put anything for the `id` property, because LoopBack will automatically manage it to ensure there is always a unique ID for each model instance.

```
{  
  "name": "My Coffee Shop",  
  "id": 0  
}
```

Then click the **Try it out!** button.

You'll see information on the REST request submitted and the application's response (for example):



### Request URL

```
http://0.0.0.0:3000/api/CoffeeShops
```

### Response Body

```
{
  "name": "My Coffee Shop",
  "id": 2
}
```

### Response Code

```
200
```


### Response Headers

```
{
  "Date": "Thu, 20 Nov 2014 22:45:47 GMT",
  "Connection": "keep-alive",
  "X-Powered-By": "Express",
  "Content-Length": "32",
  "Vary": "Accept-Encoding",
  "Content-Type": "application/json; charset=utf-8"
}
```

The **Response Body** field will show the data that you just entered, returned as confirmation that it was added to the data source.


Now click on **GET /CoffeeShops** to expand that endpoint. Click **Try it out!** to retrieve the data you entered for the CoffeeShop model. You should see the record you created using the POST API.

If you are so inclined, try some other requests: You can enter more complicated [queries](#) using the **filter** field to specify a [Where filter](#), [Limit filter](#), and other kinds of filters on the query. See [Querying data](#) for more information.

 You may have noticed the **accessToken** field and **Set Access Token** button at the top right of the API Explorer window. Use these to authenticate a user and "login" to an app so you can perform actions that require authentication. For more information, see [Introduction to User model authentication](#).

**Next:** In [Connect your API to a data source](#), you'll learn how to persist your data model to a database such as MongoDB.

## Connect your API to a data source

 **Prerequisite:** Install StrongLoop software as described in [Installing StrongLoop](#).

**Recommended:** Read [LoopBack core concepts](#).

- [Add a data source](#)
- [Install MySQL connector](#)
- [Configure data source](#)
- [Connect CoffeeShop model to MySQL](#)
- [Add some test data and view it](#)

LoopBack enables you to easily persist your data model to a variety of data sources without having to write code.

You're going to take the app from the previous section and connect it to MySQL.





If you followed the previous steps in the tutorial, go to [Add a data source](#).

If you're just jumping in, follow the steps below to catch up...

Get the app (in the state following the last article) from GitHub and install all its dependencies:

```
$ git clone https://github.com/strongloop/loopback-getting-started.git
$ cd loopback-getting-started
$ git checkout step1
$ npm install
```

## Add a data source

Now you're going to define a data source using the [Data source generator](#):

```
$ slc loopback:datasource
```

The generator will prompt you to name the data source:

```
[?] Enter the data-source name:
```

Enter **mysqlDs** and hit **Enter**.

Next, the generator will prompt you for the type of data source:

```
[?] Select the connector for mysqlDs: (Use arrow keys)
  other
  In-memory db (supported by StrongLoop)
  MySQL (supported by StrongLoop)
  PostgreSQL (supported by StrongLoop)
  Oracle (supported by StrongLoop)
  Microsoft SQL (supported by StrongLoop)
  MongoDB (supported by StrongLoop)
(Move up and down to reveal more choices)
```

Press the down-arrow key to highlight **MySQL**, then hit **Enter**.

The tool adds the data source definition to the `server/datasources.json` file, which will now look as shown below. Notice the "mysqlDs" data source you just added, as well as in-memory data source named "db," which is there by default.

### datasources.json

```
{
  "db": {
    "name": "db",
    "connector": "memory"
  },
  "mysqlDs": {
    "name": "mysqlDs",
    "connector": "mysql"
  }
}
```

## Install MySQL connector

Now add the loopback-connector-mysql module and install the dependencies:

```
$ npm install loopback-connector-mysql --save
```

## Configure data source



If you have a MySQL database server that you can use, please use it. Create a new database called "demo." If you wish, you can use a different database name. Just make sure the `mysqlDs.database` property in `datasources.json` matches it (see below).

If not, you can use the StrongLoop MySQL server running on [demo.strongloop.com](https://demo.strongloop.com). However, be aware that it is a shared resource. There is a small chance that two users may run the script that creates sample data (see [Add some test data and view it](#), below) at the same time and may run into race condition. For this reason, we recommend you use your own MySQL server if you have one.

Next, you need configure the data source to use the desired MySQL server.

Edit `/server/datasources.json` and after the line

```
"connector": "mysql"
```

add `host`, `port`, `database`, `username`, and `password` properties.

**To use the StrongLoop MySQL server:** running on [demo.strongloop.com](https://demo.strongloop.com), then enter the values shown below.

**To use your own MySQL server:** enter the hostname, port number, and login credentials for your server.

### `/server/datasources.json`

```
{
  "db": {
    "name": "db",
    "connector": "memory"
  },
  "mysqlDs": {
    "name": "mysqlDs",
    "connector": "mysql",
    "host": "demo.strongloop.com",
    "port": 3306,
    "database": "demo",
    "username": "demo",
    "password": "L00pBack"
  }
}
```

## Connect CoffeeShop model to MySQL

Now you've created a MySQL data source and you have a CoffeeShop model; you just need to connect them. LoopBack applications use the `model-config.json` file to link models to data sources. Edit `/server/model-config.json` and look for the CoffeeShop entry:

### /server/model-config.json

```
...
  "CoffeeShop": {
    "dataSource": "db",
    "public": true
  }
  ...
```

Change the `dataSource` property from `db` to `mysqlDs`. This attaches the `CoffeeShop` model to the MySQL datasource you just created and configured.

## Add some test data and view it

Now you have a `CoffeeShop` model in LoopBack, how do you create the corresponding table in MySQL database?

You could try executing some SQL statements directly...but LoopBack provides a Node API to do it for you automatically using a process called a *uto-migration*. For more information, see [Creating a database schema from models](#).

The `loopback-getting-started` module contains the `create-sample-models.js` script to demonstrate auto-migration. If you've been following along from the beginning (and didn't just clone this module), then you'll need to copy it from below or [from GitHub](#). Put it in the application's `/server/boot` directory so it will get executed when the application starts.



The auto-migration script below is an example of a *boot script* that LoopBack executes when an application initially starts up. Use boot scripts for initialization and to perform any other logic your application needs to perform when it starts. See [Defining boot scripts](#) for more information.

### /server/boot/create-sample-models.js

```
module.exports = function(app) {
  app.dataSources.mysqlDs.automigrate('CoffeeShop', function(err) {
    if (err) throw err;

    app.models.CoffeeShop.create([
      {name: 'Bel Cafe', city: 'Vancouver'},
      {name: 'Three Bees Coffee House', city: 'San Mateo'},
      {name: 'Caffe Artigiano', city: 'Vancouver'},
    ], function(err, coffeeShops) {
      if (err) throw err;

      console.log('Models created: \n', coffeeShops);
    });
  });
};
```

This will save some test data to the data source.



The boot script containing the automigration command will run *each time* you run your application. Since `automigrate()` first drops tables before trying to create new ones, it won't create duplicate tables.

Now run the application:

```
$ node .
```

In the console, you'll see this:

```
...
Browse your REST API at http://0.0.0.0:3000/explorer
Web server listening at: http://0.0.0.0:3000/
Models created: [ { name: 'Bel Cafe',
  city: 'Vancouver',
  id: 1 },
  { name: 'Three Bees Coffee House',
    city: 'San Mateo',
    id: 3 },
  { name: 'Caffe Artigiano',
    city: 'Vancouver',
    id: 2 } ]
```

You can also use the API Explorer:

1. Browse to <http://0.0.0.0:3000/explorer/> (you may need to use <http://localhost:3000/explorer>, depending on your browser and OS).
2. Click **GET /CoffeeShops** **Find all instance of the model matched by filter...**
3. Click **Try it out!**
4. You'll see the data for the three coffee shops created in the above script.

**Next:** In [Extend your API](#), you'll learn how to add a custom method to your model.

## Extend your API



**Prerequisite:** Install StrongLoop software as described in [Installing StrongLoop](#).

**Recommended:** Read [LoopBack core concepts](#).

- [Add a remote method](#)
- [Try the remote method](#)
- [Running CRUD methods in a remote method](#)

In LoopBack, a Node function attached to a custom REST endpoint is called a *remote method*.

In this section you're going to add a custom remote method to your API.



If you followed the previous steps in the tutorial, skip down to [Add a remote method](#)

If you're just jumping in, follow the steps below to catch up...

Get the app (in the state following the last article) from GitHub and install all its dependencies:

```
$ git clone https://github.com/strongloop/loopback-getting-started.git
$ cd loopback-getting-started
$ git checkout step2
$ npm install
```


## Add a remote method

Follow these steps:

1. Look in your application's `/common/models` directory. You'll notice there are `coffee-shop.js` and `coffee-shop.json` files there.



The LoopBack [model generator](#), `slc loopback:model`, automatically converts camel-case model names to lowercase

 dashed names. For example, if you create a model named "FooBar" with the model generator, it creates files `foo-bar.json` and `foo-bar.js` in `common/models`. However, the model name ("FooBar") will be preserved via the model's name property.

2. Open `coffee-shop.js` in your favorite editor. By default, it contains an empty function:

```
module.exports = function(CoffeeShop) {  
};
```


3. Add the following code to this function to extend the model's behavior with a remote method, so it looks as shown here:

```
module.exports = function(CoffeeShop) {  
  CoffeeShop.status = function(cb) {  
    var currentDate = new Date();  
    var currentHour = currentDate.getHours();  
    var OPEN_HOUR = 6;  
    var CLOSE_HOUR = 20;  
    console.log('Current hour is ' + currentHour);  
    var response;  
    if (currentHour > OPEN_HOUR && currentHour < CLOSE_HOUR) {  
      response = 'We are open for business.';  
    } else {  
      response = 'Sorry, we are closed. Open daily from 6am to 8pm.';  
    }  
    cb(null, response);  
  };  
  CoffeeShop.remoteMethod(  
    'status',  
    {  
      http: {path: '/status', verb: 'get'},  
      returns: {arg: 'status', type: 'string'}  
    }  
  );  
};
```

This defines a simple remote method called "status" that takes no arguments, and checks the time and returns a JSON status message that says either "Open for business" or "Sorry we are closed", depending on the current time.

Of course, in practice you can do much more interesting and complex things with remote methods such as manipulating input data before persisting it to a database. You can also change the route where you call the remote method, and define complex arguments and return values. See [Remote methods](#) for all the details.

4. Save the file.

 If you don't want to expose a remote method to everyone, it's easy to constrain access to it using access control lists (ACLs). See [Adding ACLs to remote methods](#).

## Try the remote method

1. Back in the application root directory, run the app:

```
$ node .
```

2. Go to <http://localhost:3000/explorer> to see API Explorer. Then click on CoffeeShops and you'll see there is a new REST endpoint, `GET /CoffeeShop/status` that calls the remote method.
3. Click **Try it Out!**  
You'll see the result of calling your remote method :

```
{
  "status": "Open for business."
}
```

That's how easy it is to add remote methods with LoopBack!

For more information, see [Remote methods](#).

## Running CRUD methods in a remote method

The `status` remote method is trivial, but a remote method can also access any of the standard model CRUD methods to perform data processes and validation. Here is a simple example (this is not in the loopback-getting-started repository):

```
module.exports = function(CoffeeShop) {
  ...
  CoffeeShop.getName = function(shopId, cb) {
    CoffeeShop.findById( shopId, function (err, instance) {
      response = "Name of coffee shop is " + instance.name;
      cb(null, response);
      console.log(response);
    });
  }
  ...
  CoffeeShop.remoteMethod (
    'getName',
    {
      http: {path: '/getname', verb: 'get'},
      accepts: {arg: 'id', type: 'number', http: { source: 'query' } },
      returns: {arg: 'name', type: 'string'}
    }
  );
}
```

Then, if you access the remote method at, for example:

```
http://0.0.0.0:3000/api/CoffeeShops/getname?id=1
```

You'll get the response:

```
{
  "name": "Name of coffee shop is Bel Cafe"
}
```

**Next:** In [Add a static web page](#), you'll add Express middleware to serve static client assets such as HTML/CSS, images, and JavaScript.

## Add a static web page



**Prerequisite:** Install StrongLoop software as described in [Installing StrongLoop](#).

**Recommended:** Read [LoopBack core concepts](#).

- [Introduction to middleware](#)
- [Change or modify the default root route handler](#)
- [Define static middleware](#)
- [Add an HTML file](#)
- [Run it....!](#)

LoopBack leverages [Express middleware](#) to make it easy to serve up static content such as web pages.

**i** If you followed the previous steps in the tutorial, skip down to [Introduction to middleware](#).  
If you're just jumping in, follow the steps below to catch up...

Get the app (in the state following the last article) from GitHub and install all its dependencies:

```
$ git clone https://github.com/strongloop/loopback-getting-started.git
$ cd loopback-getting-started
$ git checkout step3
$ npm install
```

## Introduction to middleware

**i** LoopBack is built on [Express](#), one of the most popular Node application frameworks. The top-level LoopBack `app` object inherits all the methods and properties of the Express app object. See [Working with LoopBack objects](#).

Before continuing, you need to understand a basic concept that LoopBack inherits from Express: middleware.

*Middleware* is simply a JavaScript function with access to the request object (`req`) representing the HTTP request, the response object (`res`) representing the HTTP response, and the next middleware in line in the request-response cycle of an Express application, commonly denoted by a variable named `next`. Middleware can:

- Execute any code.
- Make changes to the request and the response objects.
- End the request-response cycle.
- Call the next middleware in the stack.

LoopBack middleware is exactly like [Express middleware](#), except that LoopBack adds the concept of *phases*, that enables you to easily set the order in which middleware is called. This avoids one of the tricky aspects of Express: making sure middleware gets executed when it should be.

When you create an application with `slc loopback`, it creates a `server/middleware.json` file that specifies what middleware is executed in which phase. Registering new middleware is as simple as editing this JSON file. Expand this code to see what it looks like:



### server/middleware.json

› Expand

source

```
{
  "initial:before": {
    "loopback#favicon": {}
  },
  "initial": {
    "compression": {}
  },
  "session": {
  },
  "auth": {
  },
  "parse": {
  },
  "routes": {
  },
  "files": {
  },
  "final": {
    "loopback#urlNotFound": {}
  },
  "final:after": {
    "errorhandler": {}
  }
}
```

Each of the top-level keys in `middleware.json` defines a middleware phase: `initial`, `session`, `auth`, and so on, ending with `final`. There are also modifiers to register middleware *before* and *after* a given phase. There's a bit more to it, but that covers the basics. See [Defining middleware](#) for all the details.

## Change or modify the default root route handler



StrongLoop version 2.10.3 made some changes to the standard project scaffolding that affect the default root route handler.

Enter `slc --version` to determine what version you have.

If you created your application with an earlier version, run `slc update` to update your installation and re-create your application. If you don't want to start over, create a new application, then copy `server/middleware.json` and all the files in `server/boot` to your new project.

Applications typically need to serve static content such as HTML and CSS files, client JavaScript files, images, and so on. It's very easy to do this with the default scaffolded LoopBack application. You're going to configure the application to serve any files in the `/client` directory as static assets.

First, you have to disable the default route handler for the root URL. Remember back in [Create a simple API](#) (you have been following along, haven't you?) when you loaded the application root URL, <http://localhost:3000/>, you saw the application respond with a simple status message such as this:

```
{"started": "2014-11-20T21:59:47.155Z", "uptime": 42.054}
```

This happens because by default the scaffolded application has a boot script named `root.js` that sets up route-handling middleware for the root route (`/`):

### server/boot/root.js

```
module.exports = function(server) { // Install a '/' route that returns server status
  var router = server.loopback.Router();
  router.get('/', server.loopback.status());
  server.use(router);
};
```

This code says that for any GET request to the root URI ("/"), the application will return the results of `loopback.status()`.

To make your application serve static content you need to disable this script. **Either delete it or just rename it** to something without a `.js` ending (that ensures the application won't execute it).

## Define static middleware

Next, you need to define static middleware to serve files in the `/client` directory.

Edit `server/middleware.json`. Look for the "files" entry:

### server/middleware.json

```
...
  "files": {
  },
  ...
```

Add the following:

### server/middleware.json

```
...
  "files": {
    "loopback#static": {
      "params": "$!../client"
    }
  },
  ...
```

These lines define *static middleware* that makes the application serve files in the `/client` directory as static content. The `$!` characters indicate that the path is relative to the location of `middleware.json`.

## Add an HTML file

Now, the application will serve any files you put in the `/client` directory as static (client-side) content. So, to see it in action, add an HTML file to `/client`. For example, add a file named `index.html` with this content:

### /client/index.html

```
<head><title>LoopBack</title></head>
<body>
  <h1>LoopBack Rocks!</h1>
  <p>Hello World... </p>
</body>
```

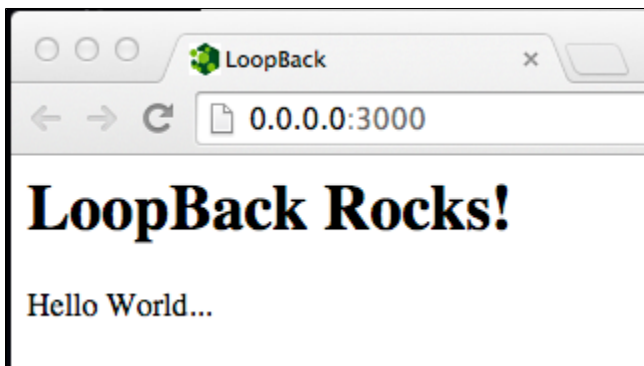
Of course, you can add any static HTML you like—this is just an example.

## Run it....!

Now run the application again:

```
$ node .
```

When you load <http://0.0.0.0:3000/> now instead of the status JSON, you'll see this:



**Next:** In [Add a custom Express route](#), you'll add a simple route handler in the same way you would in an Express application.

## Add a custom Express route



**Prerequisite:** Install StrongLoop software as described in [Installing StrongLoop](#).

**Recommended:** Read [LoopBack core concepts](#).

- [Introducing boot scripts](#)
- [Add a new boot script](#)
- [Run the boot script](#)

Because LoopBack is built on Express, you can add custom routes just as you do in Express.

In this part of the tutorial, you're going to add a new custom route.



If you followed the previous steps in the tutorial, skip down to [Introducing boot scripts](#).

If you're just jumping in, follow the steps below to catch up...

Get the app (in the state following the last article) from GitHub and install all its dependencies:

```
$ git clone https://github.com/strongloop/loopback-getting-started.git
$ cd loopback-getting-started
$ git checkout step4
$ npm install
```

## Introducing boot scripts

When a LoopBack application starts (or "bootstraps"), it runs the scripts in the `/server/boot` directory, known as *boot scripts*. By default, LoopBack loads boot scripts in alphabetical order.

The standard scaffolded LoopBack application created by the [application generator](#) contains the following standard boot scripts (in `/server/boot`) that perform basic initialization:

- `authentication.js` - Enables authentication for the application by calling `app.enableAuth()`.
- `explorer.js` - Enables API Explorer. Delete or change the extension of this file to disable API Explorer.
- `rest-api.js` - Exposes the application's models over REST using `loopback.rest()` middleware.

For more information on boot scripts, see [Defining boot scripts](#).

## Add a new boot script

For example, add a new boot script named `routes.js` in `/server/boot` directory, with this code:

### `/server/boot/routes.js`

```
module.exports = function(app) {
  // Install a "/ping" route that returns "pong"
  app.get('/ping', function(req, res) {
    res.send('pong');
  });
}
```

As an aside, you could have just as well used [Express router middleware](#) instead, like this:

### `/server/boot/routes.js`

```
module.exports = function(app) {
  var router = app.loopback.Router();
  router.get('/ping', function(req, res) {
    res.send('pongaroo');
  });
  app.use(router);
}
```

In fact you can also add routes right in `server.js` using the Express API. For example, add this call to `app.use()` just before the call to `app.start()`:

### server/server.js

```
...
app.use('/express-status', function(req, res, next) {
  res.json({ running: true });
});

// start the server if `$ node server.js`
if (require.main === module) {
  app.start();
}
```

The point is that a LoopBack application can easily do all the things that an Express application can. If you're familiar with Express, this will make LoopBack easier to learn and use.

## Run the boot script

Now, run the application again:

```
$ node .
```

Load <http://0.0.0.0:3000/ping>. You'll see "pong" as the response.

**Next:** Check out [Run in a cluster](#) to see how to run the application in a multi-process cluster.

## Run in a cluster



**Prerequisite:** Install StrongLoop software as described in [Installing StrongLoop](#).

**Recommended:** Read [LoopBack core concepts](#).

- [Start the application](#)
- [Display the application's status](#)
- [Change the cluster size](#)

You can run your application using `slc start` to use [StrongLoop Process Manager](#) features such as clustering, profiling, monitoring, and more.

In this part of the tutorial, you're going to run the application in StrongLoop Process Manager (StrongLoop PM). You'll also change the cluster size and display the application's status.



If you followed the previous steps in the tutorial, skip down to [Start the application](#).

If you're just jumping in, follow the steps below to catch up...

Get the app (in the state following the last article) from GitHub and install all its dependencies:

```
$ git clone https://github.com/strongloop/loopback-getting-started.git
$ cd loopback-getting-started
$ git checkout step4
$ npm install
```

## Start the application

If you've been following the tutorial, up until now, you've been using `node .` to run the application. Running your app with the `node` command is appropriate when you're in development mode. Once you're ready to prepare for deployment, use `slc start` to run it under control of StrongLoop PM. See [Operating Node applications](#) for more information on the power of StrongLoop Process Manager.

In the root directory of your application, enter this command to start a local instance of StrongLoop PM and run the application under its control:

```
$ slc start
Process Manager is attempting to run app `.`.
  To confirm it is started: slc ctl status loopback-getting-started
  To view the last logs: slc ctl log-dump loopback-getting-started
  To see more options: slc ctl -h
  To see metrics, the profilers and other diagnostic features run: slc arc
```

## Display the application's status

Now get a quick status overview with all worker PIDs, cluster IDs, other key information. Enter this command:

```
$ slc ctl
Service ID: 1
Service Name: loopback-getting-started
Environment variables:
  No environment variables defined
Instances:
  Version  Agent version  Cluster size
    4.0.32      1.5.3           4
Processes:
```

ID	PID	WID	Listening Ports	Tracking objects?	CPU profiling?
1.1.73137	73137	0			
1.1.73144	73144	1	0.0.0.0:3001		
1.1.73145	73145	2	0.0.0.0:3001		
1.1.73146	73146	3	0.0.0.0:3001		
1.1.73147	73147	4	0.0.0.0:3001		

## Change the cluster size

By default the Process Manager runs one process per CPU. So, on a four-core system it runs the app in a four-process cluster. You can easily change the cluster size.

Use the `slc ctl set-size` command to change the cluster size. Then display status again, and you'll see only two worker processes running:

```

$ slc ctl set-size loopback-getting-started 2
$ slc ctl
Service ID: 1
Service Name: loopback-getting-started
Environment variables:
  No environment variables defined
Instances:
  Version  Agent version  Cluster size
    4.0.32      1.5.3           2
Processes:
  ID        PID    WID  Listening Ports  Tracking objects?  CPU profiling?
  1.1.73137  73137   0    0.0.0.0:3001    0.0.0.0:3001      0.0.0.0:3001
  1.1.73144  73144   1    0.0.0.0:3001    0.0.0.0:3001      0.0.0.0:3001
  1.1.73145  73145   2    0.0.0.0:3001    0.0.0.0:3001      0.0.0.0:3001

```

**Next:** Check out [Next steps](#) for information on what to read next.

## Next steps

### Getting Started part II

If you want to continue on the tutorial track, continue on to [Getting started part II](#). It covers:

- Using multiple data sources in an single application.
- Relations between models.
- Remote hooks.
- Using access control lists to protect REST endpoints.
- User registration and authentication
- Using the AngularJS SDK

### Learn more

There's so much more to learn about LoopBack!

LoopBack documentation includes lots of [tutorials and examples](#); also read the [StrongLoop blog](#) for great tips and information.



#### StrongLoop Doc Tips


Use the left navigation tree to browse and find doc articles; Click to expand subjects under a topic.

Use the search field at upper right to search the documentation.


Learn more about:

- [Creating an application](#)
- [Managing users](#)
  - [Registering users](#)
  - [Logging in users](#)
  - [Partitioning users with realms](#)
- [Authentication, authorization, and permissions](#)
- [Defining models](#)
  - [Creating models](#)
  - [Customizing models](#)
  - [Attaching models to data sources](#)
  - [Exposing models over REST](#)
  - [Validating model data](#)
  - [Creating model relations](#)
- [Working with data](#)
- [Adding application logic](#)

- [Adding logic to models](#)
- [Defining boot scripts](#)
- [Defining mixins](#)
- [Defining middleware](#)
- [Working with LoopBack objects](#)
- [Using current context](#)
- [Events](#)

 Check out the [LoopBack Developer Forum on Google Groups](#), a place where developers can ask questions, discuss LoopBack, and how they are using it.

## Getting started part II

 This tutorial picks up where [Getting started with LoopBack](#) ended, and it assumes you understand the basic concepts and tasks introduced in the first tutorial.

This tutorial covers:

- Using multiple data sources in a single application.
- Relations between models.
- Remote hooks.
- Using access control lists to protect REST endpoints.
- User registration and authentication
- Using the AngularJS SDK

**Next:** Read [Introducing the Coffee Shop Reviews app](#) to understand the example application that you'll create when you follow the tutorial.

## Introducing the Coffee Shop Reviews app



### Prerequisites:

- Install StrongLoop software as described in [Installing StrongLoop](#)
- Follow [Getting started with LoopBack](#).

**Recommended:** Read [LoopBack core concepts](#).

- [Overview of the application](#)
- [Get the repo](#)
- [Run the application](#)
- [Create your own app](#)

"Coffee Shop Reviews" is a complete small application that illustrates many of LoopBack's basic features and how they work together.

We put it together based on community feedback.

## Overview of the application

**Coffee Shop Reviews** is a website that you can use to post reviews on coffee shops, like Yelp for coffee shops.

The app will persist data to two different datasources: it will store reviewer data in a MySQL database and coffee shop and review data in a MongoDB database.

This application has three models:

- CoffeeShop (defined in [Getting started with LoopBack](#))
- Review
- Reviewer

They are related as follows:

- A CoffeeShop has many reviews



- A CoffeeShop has many reviewers
- A review belongs to a CoffeeShop
- A review belongs to a reviewer
- A reviewer has many reviews

In general, users can create, edit, delete, and read reviews of coffee shops, with the following basic rules and permissions implemented through [ACLs](#):

- Anyone can read reviews, but you must be logged in to create, edit, or delete them.
- Anyone can register as a user; then log in and log out.
- Logged-in users can create new reviews, and edit or delete their own reviews; however they cannot modify the originally chosen CoffeeShop.

## Get the repo

First, clone the repository.

```
$ git clone https://github.com/strongloop/loopback-getting-started-intermediate.git
```

## Run the application

To better understand what's going on, run the Coffee Shop Reviews application:

```
$ cd loopback-getting-started-intermediate
$ npm install
...
$ node .
...
Browse your REST API at http://0.0.0.0:3000/explorer
Web server listening at: http://0.0.0.0:3000/
> models created successfully
```

Now load <http://0.0.0.0:3000/> in your browser. You'll see the application home page:

---

Click on **Log in**. You'll see the login page:

---

Click **Login** to login with the provided email and password. Notice if you change the email or password, you can't login (but the app doesn't display an error – that's left as an exercise for the reader).

After logging in, you'll see the "Add review" page by default:

---

Click **Add Review** to create a new review, **My Reviews** to view only your reviews, or **All Reviews** to view all reviews again. You can only review the three predefined coffee shops; the application does not provide the ability to add a new coffee shop as an administrator yet.

## Create your own app

To understand all the features of the Coffee Shop Reviews app, you're going to recreate it from scratch. The starting point is the app you created in [Getting started with LoopBack](#).

So, if you followed that tutorial, simply change to that directory:

```
$ cd <my-getting-started-app>
```

If you didn't follow that tutorial, you can just clone the repository:

```
$ git clone https://github.com/strongloop/loopback-getting-started.git
$ cd loopback-getting-started
```

**Next:** Continue to [Create new data source](#) to add a new data source that the application will use.

## Create new data source



### Prerequisites:

- Install StrongLoop software as described in [Installing StrongLoop](#)
- Follow [Getting started with LoopBack](#).

**Recommended:** Read [LoopBack core concepts](#).

- [Add a data source](#)
- [Install MongoDB connector](#)
- [Configure data source](#)

You can easily connect a LoopBack application to multiple different data sources.

## Add a data source

You're going to add a MongoDB data source in addition to the MySQL data source created in [Connect your API to a data source](#).

```
$ slc loopback:datasource
```

When prompted, respond as follows:

```
? Enter the data-source name: mongoDs
? Select the connector for mongoDs: MongoDB (supported by StrongLoop)
```

## Install MongoDB connector

```
$ npm install --save loopback-connector-mongodb
```

## Configure data source



If you have a MongoDB database server that you can use, please do so. Create a new database called "getting\_started\_intermediate". If you wish, you can use a different database name. Just make sure the `mongoDs.database` property in `datasources.json` matches it (see below).

If not, you can use the StrongLoop MongoDB server running on [demo.strongloop.com](https://demo.strongloop.com). However, be aware that it is a shared resource. There is a small chance that two users may perform operations that conflict. For this reason, we recommend you use your own MongoDB server if you have one.

Edit `datasources.json` to configure the data source so that it connects to the StrongLoop demo MongoDB server. Add the following JSON after the two existing data source definitions (for "db" and "mysqlDs"):

### server/datasources.json

```
...
"mongoDs": {
  "name": "mongoDs",
  "connector": "mongodb",
  "host": "demo.strongloop.com",
  "port": 27017,
  "database": "getting_started_intermediate",
  "username": "demo",
  "password": "L00pBack"
}
```

**Next:** Continue to [Create new models](#).

## Create new models



### Prerequisites:

- Install StrongLoop software as described in [Installing StrongLoop](#)
- Follow [Getting started with LoopBack](#).

**Recommended:** Read [LoopBack core concepts](#).

- [Define the Review model](#)
- [Define the Reviewer model](#)
- [Update boot script to add data](#)

Creating models with `slc loopback` is quick and easy.

Recall in [Create a simple API](#) step of [Getting started](#) you created a CoffeeShop model.

Now you're going to create two new models, Review and Reviewer, with the `slc loopback` [model generator](#).



If you followed the previous step in the tutorial, go to [Define the Review model](#).

If you're just jumping in, follow the steps below to catch up...

Get the app (in the state following the last article) from GitHub and install all its dependencies:

```
$ git clone https://github.com/strongloop/loopback-getting-started-intermediate.git
$ cd loopback-getting-started-intermediate
$ git checkout step1
$ npm install
```

### Define the Review model

Enter:

```
$ slc loopback:model
```

When prompted, enter or select the following:

- **Model name:** Review
- **Data source:** mongoDs (mongodb)
- **Base class:** Use the down-arrow key to select **PersistedModel**.

- **Expose Reviewer via the REST API?** Press RETURN to accept the default, Yes.
- **Custom plural form (used to build REST URL):** Press RETURN to accept the default, Yes.

Then, follow the prompts to add these properties:

Property name	Property type	Required?
date	date	y
rating	number	n
comments	string	y

To exit the model generator, press RETURN when prompted for property name.

## Define the Reviewer model

Enter:

```
$ slc loopback:model
```

When prompted, enter or select the following:

- **Model name:** Reviewer
- **Data source:** mongoDs (mongodb)
- **Base class:** Use the down-arrow key to select **User**.
- **Expose Reviewer via the REST API?** Press RETURN to accept the default, Yes.
- **Custom plural form (used to build REST URL):** Press RETURN to accept the default, Yes.

Don't add any properties, since they are all inherited from the base User model.

To exit the model generator, press RETURN when prompted for property name.

## Update boot script to add data

Recall back in part I of [Getting started](#), you [added a boot script](#) to create a database table from the model (via auto-migration) and add some data to the database.

Now that you have some new models and a new data source, you need to update this script so it will create data structures in MongoDB and insert data via the new models.

**Copy and paste the code below** into `server/boot/create-sample-models.js`, replacing the existing code.

Then run

```
$ npm install --save async
```

This boot script has several functions:

- `createCoffeeShops()` creates a MySQL table for the CoffeeShop model and adds data to the table. This is what the `create-sample-models.js` script from [Getting started](#) did.
- `createReviewers()` creates the Reviewer data structure in MongoDB using auto-migration and adds data to it.
- `createReviews()` creates the Reviews data structure in MongoDB using auto-migration and adds data to it.

See [Creating a database schema from models](#) for more information on auto-migration.

### server/boot/create-sample-models.js

```
var async = require('async');
module.exports = function(app) {
  //data sources
  var mongoDs = app.dataSources.mongoDs;
```

```

var mysqlDs = app.dataSources.mysqlDs;
//create all models
async.parallel({
  reviewers: async.apply(createReviewers),
  coffeeShops: async.apply(createCoffeeShops),
}, function(err, results) {
  if (err) throw err;
  createReviews(results.reviewers, results.coffeeShops, function(err) {
    console.log('> models created sucessfully');
  });
});
//create reviewers
function createReviewers(cb) {
  mongoDs.automigrate('Reviewer', function(err) {
    if (err) return cb(err);
    var Reviewer = app.models.Reviewer;
    Reviewer.create([
      {email: 'foo@bar.com', password: 'foobar'},
      {email: 'john@doe.com', password: 'johndoe'},
      {email: 'jane@doe.com', password: 'janedoe'}
    ], cb);
  });
}
//create coffee shops
function createCoffeeShops(cb) {
  mysqlDs.automigrate('CoffeeShop', function(err) {
    if (err) return cb(err);
    var CoffeeShop = app.models.CoffeeShop;
    CoffeeShop.create([
      {name: 'Bel Cafe', city: 'Vancouver'},
      {name: 'Three Bees Coffee House', city: 'San Mateo'},
      {name: 'Caffe Artigiano', city: 'Vancouver'},
    ], cb);
  });
}
//create reviews
function createReviews(reviewers, coffeeShops, cb) {
  mongoDs.automigrate('Review', function(err) {
    if (err) return cb(err);
    var Review = app.models.Review;
    var DAY_IN_MILLISECONDS = 1000 * 60 * 60 * 24;
    Review.create([
      {
        date: Date.now() - (DAY_IN_MILLISECONDS * 4),
        rating: 5,
        comments: 'A very good coffee shop.',
        publisherId: reviewers[0].id,
        coffeeShopId: coffeeShops[0].id,
      },
      {
        date: Date.now() - (DAY_IN_MILLISECONDS * 3),
        rating: 5,
        comments: 'Quite pleasant.',
        publisherId: reviewers[1].id,
        coffeeShopId: coffeeShops[0].id,
      },
      {
        date: Date.now() - (DAY_IN_MILLISECONDS * 2),
        rating: 4,

```

```
    comments: 'It was ok.',
    publisherId: reviewers[1].id,
    coffeeShopId: coffeeShops[1].id,
  },
  {
    date: Date.now() - (DAY_IN_MILLISECONDS),
    rating: 4,
    comments: 'I go here everyday.',
    publisherId: reviewers[2].id,
    coffeeShopId: coffeeShops[2].id,
  }
], cb);
```

```
    } } ;  
  }  
};
```

**Next:** [Define model relations](#)

## Define model relations



### Prerequisites:

- Install StrongLoop software as described in [Installing StrongLoop](#)
- Follow [Getting started with LoopBack](#).

**Recommended:** Read [LoopBack core concepts](#).

Individual models are easy to understand and work with. But in reality, models are often connected or related. For applications with multiple models, you typically need to define *relations* between models.

Relations among models enable you to query related models and perform corresponding validations.

- [Introducing model relations](#)
- [Define relations](#)
- [Review the model JSON files](#)



If you followed the previous step in the tutorial, go to [Introducing model relations](#).

If you're just jumping in, follow the steps below to catch up...

Get the app (in the state following the last article) from GitHub and install all its dependencies:

```
$ git clone https://github.com/strongloop/loopback-getting-started-intermediate.git  
$ cd loopback-getting-started-intermediate  
$ git checkout step2  
$ npm install
```

## Introducing model relations



LoopBack supports many different kinds of model relations, including: [BelongsTo](#), [HasMany](#), [HasManyThrough](#), and [HasAndBelongsToMany](#), among others. For more information, see [Creating model relations](#).

In the Coffee Shop Reviews app, the models are related as follows:

- A coffee shop has many reviews.
- A coffee shop has many reviewers.
- A review belongs to a coffee shop.
- A review belongs to a reviewer.
- A reviewer has many reviews.

## Define relations

Now, you're going to define these relationships between the models. In all there are five relations. Once again, you'll use `slc loopback`, but this time you'll use the `relation` sub-command ([relation generator](#)). For each relation, enter:

```
$ slc loopback:relation
```

The tool will prompt you to provide the information required to define the relation, as summarized below.

**A coffee shop has many reviews;** No through model and no foreign key.

```
? Select the model to create the relationship from: CoffeeShop
? Relation type: has many
? Choose a model to create a relationship with: Review
? Enter the property name for the relation: reviews
? Optionally enter a custom foreign key:
? Require a through model? No
```

**A coffee shop has many reviewers;** No through model and no foreign key.

```
? Select the model to create the relationship from: CoffeeShop
? Relation type: has many
? Choose a model to create a relationship with: Reviewer
? Enter the property name for the relation: reviewers
? Optionally enter a custom foreign key:
? Require a through model? No
```

**A review belongs to a coffee shop;** No foreign key.

```
? Select the model to create the relationship from: Review
? Relation type: belongs to
? Choose a model to create a relationship with: CoffeeShop
? Enter the property name for the relation: coffeeShop
? Optionally enter a custom foreign key:
```

**A review belongs to a reviewer;** foreign key is publisherId.

```
? Select the model to create the relationship from: Review
? Relation type: belongs to
? Choose a model to create a relationship with: Reviewer
? Enter the property name for the relation: reviewer
? Optionally enter a custom foreign key: publisherId
```

**A reviewer has many reviews;** foreign key is publisherId.

```
? Select the model to create the relationship from: Reviewer
? Relation type: has many
? Choose a model to create a relationship with: Review
? Enter the property name for the relation: reviews
? Optionally enter a custom foreign key: publisherId
? Require a through model? No
```

## Review the model JSON files

Now, look at `common/models/review.json`. You should see this:



#### common/models/review.json

```
...
"relations": {
  "coffeeShop": {
    "type": "belongsToMany",
    "model": "CoffeeShop",
    "foreignKey": ""
  },
  "reviewer": {
    "type": "belongsToMany",
    "model": "Reviewer",
    "foreignKey": "publisherId"
  }
},
...
```

Likewise, common/models/reviewer.json should have this:

#### common/models/reviewer.json

```
...
"relations": {
  "reviews": {
    "type": "hasMany",
    "model": "Review",
    "foreignKey": "publisherId"
  }
},
...
```

And common/models/coffee-shop.json should have this:

#### common/models/coffee-shop.json

```
...
"relations": {
  "reviews": {
    "type": "hasMany",
    "model": "Review",
    "foreignKey": ""
  },
  "reviewers": {
    "type": "hasMany",
    "model": "Reviewer",
    "foreignKey": ""
  }
},
...
```

**Next:** Continue to [Define access controls](#).

## Define access controls



### Prerequisites:

- Install StrongLoop software as described in [Installing StrongLoop](#)
- Follow [Getting started with LoopBack](#).

**Recommended:** Read [LoopBack core concepts](#).

- [Introducing access controls](#)
- [Define access controls](#)
- [Review the review.json file](#)

Access controls determine which users are allowed to read and write model data or execute methods on the models



If you followed the previous step in the tutorial, go to [Introducing access controls](#).

If you're just jumping in, follow the steps below to catch up...

Get the app (in the state following the last article) from GitHub and install all its dependencies:

```
$ git clone https://github.com/strongloop/loopback-getting-started-intermediate.git
$ cd loopback-getting-started-intermediate
$ git checkout step3
$ npm install
```

## Introducing access controls

LoopBack applications access data through models, so controlling access to data means putting restrictions on models; that is, specifying who or what can read and write the data or execute methods on the models. LoopBack access controls are determined by *access control lists* or ACLs. For more information, see [Controlling data access](#).

You're going to set up access control for the Review model.

The access controls should enforce the following rules:

- Anyone can read reviews, but you must be logged in to create, edit, or delete them.
- Anyone can register as a user; then log in and log out.
- Logged-in users can create new reviews, and edit or delete their own reviews; however they cannot modify the coffee shop for a review.

## Define access controls

Once again, you'll use `slc loopback`, but this time you'll use the `acl` sub-command; for each ACL, enter:

```
$ slc loopback:acl
```

The tool will prompt you to provide the required information, as summarized below.

**Deny everyone all endpoints.** This is often the starting point when defining ACLs, because then you can selectively allow access for specific actions.

```
? Select the model to apply the ACL entry to: Review
? Select the ACL scope: All methods and properties
? Select the access type: All (match all types)
? Select the role: All users
? Select the permission to apply: Explicitly deny access
```

**Now allow everyone to read reviews.**

```
? Select the model to apply the ACL entry to: Review
? Select the ACL scope: All methods and properties
? Select the access type: Read
? Select the role: All users
? Select the permission to apply: Explicitly grant access
```

Now, **allow authenticated users to write a review**; that is, if you're logged in, you can add a review.

```
? Select the model to apply the ACL entry to: Review
? Select the ACL scope: A single method
? Enter the method name: create
? Select the role: Any authenticated user
? Select the permission to apply: Explicitly grant access
```

Now, **enable the author of a review (its "owner") to make any changes to it**.

```
$ slc loopback:acl
? Select the model to apply the ACL entry to: Review
? Select the ACL scope: All methods and properties
? Select the access type: Write
? Select the role: The user owning the object
? Select the permission to apply: Explicitly grant access
```

## Review the review.json file

When you're done, the ACL section in `common/models/review.json` should look like this:

```

...
  "acls": [
    {
      "accessType": "*",
      "principalType": "ROLE",
      "principalId": "$everyone",
      "permission": "DENY"
    },
    {
      "accessType": "READ",
      "principalType": "ROLE",
      "principalId": "$everyone",
      "permission": "ALLOW"
    },
    {
      "accessType": "EXECUTE",
      "principalType": "ROLE",
      "principalId": "$authenticated",
      "permission": "ALLOW",
      "property": "create"
    },
    {
      "accessType": "WRITE",
      "principalType": "ROLE",
      "principalId": "$owner",
      "permission": "ALLOW"
    }
  ],
  ...

```

**Next:** Continue to [Define a remote hook](#).

## Define a remote hook



### Prerequisites:

- Install StrongLoop software as described in [Installing StrongLoop](#)
- Follow [Getting started with LoopBack](#).

**Recommended:** Read [LoopBack core concepts](#).

- [Introducing remote hooks](#)
- [Create the remote hook](#)

A *remote hook* is a function that's executed before or after a remote method.



If you followed the previous step in the tutorial, go to [Introducing remote hooks](#).

If you're just jumping in, follow the steps below to catch up...

Get the app (in the state following the last article) from GitHub and install all its dependencies:

```
$ git clone https://github.com/strongloop/loopback-getting-started-intermediate.git
$ cd loopback-getting-started-intermediate
$ git checkout step4
$ npm install
```

## Introducing remote hooks

A [remote hook](#) is simply a function that gets executed before or after a remote method (either a custom remote method or a built-in CRUD method). In this example, you're going to define a remote hook that is called whenever the `create()` method is called on the Review model; that is, when a new review is created.

You can define two kinds of remote hooks:

- `beforeRemote()` runs before the remote method.
- `afterRemote()` runs after the remote method.

In both cases, you provide two arguments: a string that matches the remote method you want to which you want to "hook" your function, and a callback function. Much of the power of remote hooks is that the string can include wildcards, so it is triggered by any matching method.



LoopBack also provides [operation hooks](#), functions that are executed before or after models perform backend operations such as creating, saving, and updating model data, regardless of how those operations are invoked. In contrast, a remote hook is called only when the exact method you specify is invoked.

## Create the remote hook

Here, you're going to define a remote hook on the review model, specifically `Review.beforeRemote`.

Modify `common/models/review.js`, and add the following code:

### common/models/review.js

```
module.exports = function(Review) {
  Review.beforeRemote('create', function(context, user, next) {
    var req = context.req;
    req.body.date = Date.now();
    req.body.publisherId = req.accessToken.userId;
    next();
  });
};
```

This function is called before a new instance of the Review model is created. The code:

- Inserts the `publisherId` using the access token attached to the request.
- Sets the date of the review instance to the current date.

**Next:** Continue to [Create AngularJS client](#) .

## Create AngularJS client



**Prerequisite:** Install StrongLoop software as described in [Installing StrongLoop](#).

**Recommended:** Read [LoopBack core concepts](#).



To follow this step, you should have a basic understanding of [AngularJS](#).

- [Introducing the AngularJS SDK](#)
- [Generate lb-services.js](#)
- [Copy the other client files](#)
  - [index.html](#)
  - [Main client JavaScript files \(app.js\)](#)
  - [Controllers](#)
  - [Services](#)
  - [Views](#)
- [Run the application](#)

The LoopBack AngularJS SDK automatically creates a client JavaScript API that enables you to make AngularJS calls to your LoopBack models.



If you followed the previous step in the tutorial, go to [Introducing the AngularJS SDK](#).

If you're just jumping in, follow the steps below to catch up...

Get the app (in the state following the last article plus all the client files) from GitHub and install all its dependencies:

```
$ git clone https://github.com/strongloop/loopback-getting-started-intermediate.git
$ cd loopback-getting-started-intermediate
$ git checkout step6
$ npm install
```

## Introducing the AngularJS SDK

[AngularJS](#) is an open-source JavaScript [model–view–controller](#) (MVC) framework for browser-based applications. LoopBack provides an [AngularJS JavaScript SDK](#) to facilitate creating AngularJS clients for your LoopBack API server-side apps. The SDK is installed when you install StrongLoop.

The SDK provides auto-generated AngularJS services, compatible with [ngResource.\\$resource](#), that provide client-side representation of the models and remote methods in the LoopBack server application. The SDK also includes some command-line tools, including `lb-ng` that generates Angular `$resource` services for your LoopBack application, creating in effect a dynamic client that automatically includes client-side APIs to access your LoopBack models and methods. You don't have to manually write any static code.

For more information, see [AngularJS JavaScript SDK](#).

## Generate lb-services.js

To generate the Angular services for a LoopBack application, use the AngularJS SDK `lb-ng` command-line tool. First, create the `client/js/services` directory, if you don't already have it (by using the `mkdir` command, for example), then in the project root directory, enter the `lb-ng` command as follows:

```
$ mkdir -p client/js/services
$ lb-ng server/server.js client/js/services/lb-services.js
```

This command creates `client/js/services/lb-services.js`.

## Copy the other client files



The `lb-ng` tool does the "heavy lifting" of creating the client JavaScript API that works with your LoopBack back-end. However, you still need to create the HTML/CSS and client JavaScript code that actually calls into this AngularJS API and defines the client-side functionality and appearance of your app. In general, creating this part of the app is entirely up to you. This tutorial includes an example of such a client implementation that you can use to understand the process.

If you've been following the entire tutorial (and didn't jump in and clone the project mid-way through), then you'll need to clone it now to get the client files required for this step. Then copy the `client` sub-directory to your project directory:

```
$ git clone https://github.com/strongloop/loopback-getting-started-intermediate.git
$ cp -r loopback-getting-started-intermediate/client <your-app-dir>/client
```

Now let's take a look at what you now have in the `client` directory:

- `index.html`
- **css** - stylesheets
  - `style.css`
- **js** - application JavaScript files
  - `app.js`
  - **controllers** - AngularJS controllers
    - `auth.js`
    - `review.js`
  - **services** - AngularJS services
    - `auth.js`
    - `lb-services.js`
- **vendor** - AngularJS libraries (dependencies)
  - `angular-resource.js`
  - `angular-ui-router.js`
  - `angular.js`
- **views** - HTML view files
  - `all-reviews.html`
  - `forbidden.html`
  - `my-reviews.html`
  - `sign-up-form.html`
  - `login.html`
  - `review-form.html`
  - `sign-up-success.html`

Each file and directory is briefly described below

### **index.html**

The `index.html` file is the only file in the top level of the `/client` directory, and defines the application's main landing page. Open it in your editor:

## client/index.html

[Expand](#)[source](#)

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html lang="en" ng-app="app">
  <head>
    <meta charset="utf-8">
    <title>loopback-getting-started-intermediate</title>
    <link href="css/style.css" rel="stylesheet">
  </head>
  <body>
    <header>
      <h1>Coffee shop reviews</h1>
      <h2 ng-show="currentUser">Hello {{currentUser.email}}</h2>
      <nav>
        <ul>
          <li>
            <a ui-sref="all-reviews" ui-sref-active="active">All reviews</a>
          </li>
          <li ng-hide="currentUser">
            <a ui-sref="sign-up" ui-sref-active="active">Sign up</a>
          </li>
          <li ng-show="currentUser">
            <a ui-sref="my-reviews" ui-sref-active="active">My Reviews</a>
          </li>
          <li ng-show="currentUser">
            <a ui-sref="add-review" ui-sref-active="active">Add Review</a>
          </li>
          <li ng-hide="currentUser">
            <a ui-sref="login" ui-sref-active="active">Log in</a>
          </li>
          <li ng-show="currentUser">
            <a ui-sref="logout" ui-sref-active="active">Log out</a>
          </li>
        </ul>
      </nav>
    </header>
    <main ui-view></main>
    <script src="vendor/angular.js"></script>
    <script src="vendor/angular-resource.js"></script>
    <script src="vendor/angular-ui-router.js"></script>
    <script src="js/app.js"></script>
    <script src="js/services/lb-services.js"></script>
    <script src="js/controllers/auth.js"></script>
    <script src="js/controllers/review.js"></script>
    <script src="js/services/auth.js"></script>
  </body>
</html>
```

Perusing the file, you can see the references to the stylesheet in the `/css` directory and client JavaScript files in the `/vendor` and `/js` directories.

### Main client JavaScript files (app.js)

The `js/app.js` file defines application configurations.



angular

[source](#)

```
.module('app', [
  'ui.router',
  'lbServices'
])
.config(['$stateProvider', '$urlRouterProvider', function($stateProvider,
  $urlRouterProvider) {
  $stateProvider
    .state('add-review', {
      url: '/add-review',
      templateUrl: 'views/review-form.html',
      controller: 'AddReviewController',
      authenticate: true
    })
    .state('all-reviews', {
      url: '/all-reviews',
      templateUrl: 'views/all-reviews.html',
      controller: 'AllReviewsController'
    })
    .state('edit-review', {
      url: '/edit-review/:id',
      templateUrl: 'views/review-form.html',
      controller: 'EditReviewController',
      authenticate: true
    })
    .state('delete-review', {
      url: '/delete-review/:id',
      controller: 'DeleteReviewController',
      authenticate: true
    })
    .state('forbidden', {
      url: '/forbidden',
      templateUrl: 'views/forbidden.html',
    })
    .state('login', {
      url: '/login',
      templateUrl: 'views/login.html',
      controller: 'AuthLoginController'
    })
    .state('logout', {
      url: '/logout',
      controller: 'AuthLogoutController'
    })
    .state('my-reviews', {
      url: '/my-reviews',
      templateUrl: 'views/my-reviews.html',
      controller: 'MyReviewsController',
      authenticate: true
    })
    .state('sign-up', {
      url: '/sign-up',
      templateUrl: 'views/sign-up-form.html',
      controller: 'SignUpController',
    })
    .state('sign-up-success', {
      url: '/sign-up/success',
      templateUrl: 'views/sign-up-success.html'
```

```
    });  
    $urlRouterProvider.otherwise('all-reviews');  
  })  
  .run(['$rootScope', '$state', function($rootScope, $state) {  
    $rootScope.$on('$stateChangeStart', function(event, next) {  
      // redirect to login page if not logged in  
      if (next.authenticate && !$rootScope.currentUser) {  
        event.preventDefault(); //prevent current page from loading  
        $state.go('forbidden');  
      }  
    });  
  }])
```

```

    }
  });
}]);

```

Lines 2 - 4 include dependencies `app`, `ui.router`, and `lbServices`. The latter is the AngularJS services library you generated previously using `lb-ng`.

Lines 61 - 66 define an interceptor that triggers when a state change happens: If the user is not logged in, then redirect to the forbidden page.

The other lines define application states. *States* determine which pages appears when the user navigates, changes URLs, or clicks on a link. Any state for which `authenticate` is `true` requires you to log in first. If you navigate directly to one of these URLs, you will see a forbidden access page (`state = forbidden`, `url = /forbidden`). Each call to `state()` specifies the template to use for the state, the controller to use, and whether authentication is required.

The following table summarizes the states, and how they correspond to controllers, templates, and URLs.

State	URL	Description	Controller	View / Template	Must be logged in?
'add-review'	/add-review	Add a new coffee shop review.	AddReviewController	review-form.html	Yes
'all-reviews'	/all-reviews	List all reviews.	AllReviewsController	all-reviews.html	No
'edit-review'	/edit-review/:id	Edit selected review.	EditReviewController	review-form.html	Yes
'delete-review'	/delete-review/:id	Delete selected review.	DeleteReviewController	None	Yes
'forbidden'	/forbidden	Forbidden URL error. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Notifies user they can't perform the action.</li> <li>• Displays link to login page.</li> </ul>	EditReviewController	forbidden.html	No
'login'	/login	Login  Redirects to add-review page upon successful login	AuthLoginController	login.html	No
'logout'	/logout	Logout <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Notifies user they've logged out.</li> <li>• Display link to the all-reviews page.</li> </ul>	AuthLogoutController	None	No
'my-reviews'	/my-reviews	List only reviews of the logged-in user.	MyReviewsController	my-reviews.html	Yes
'sign-up'	/sign-up	Sign up for account.	SignUpController	sign-up-form.html	No
'sign-up-success'	/sign-up/success	Successful sign-up.  Display link to /all-reviews page.	None	sign-up-success.html	No

## Controllers

In Angular, a *controller* is a JavaScript constructor function that is used to augment the [Angular Scope](#).

When a controller is attached to the DOM via the `ng-controller` directive, Angular will instantiate a new Controller object, using the specified constructor function. A new child scope will be available as an injectable parameter to the controller's constructor function as `$scope`. For more information on controllers, see [Understanding Controllers](#) (AngularJS documentation).

The `client/js/controllers` directory contains two files that define controllers: `auth.js` and `review.js`.

The controller in `auth.js` handles user registration, login, and logout. When the user is logged in, a `currentUser` object is set in the root scope. Other parts of the app check the `currentUser` object when performing actions. When logging out, the `currentUser` object is destroyed.

**js/controllers/auth.js**[Expand](#)

angular

[source](#)

```
.module('app')
.controller('AuthLoginController', ['$scope', 'AuthService', '$state',
  function($scope, AuthService, $state) {
    $scope.user = {
      email: 'foo@bar.com',
      password: 'foobar'
    };
    $scope.login = function() {
      AuthService.login($scope.user.email, $scope.user.password)
        .then(function() {
          $state.go('add-review');
        });
    };
  })
.controller('AuthLogoutController', ['$scope', 'AuthService', '$state',
  function($scope, AuthService, $state) {
    AuthService.logout()
      .then(function() {
        $state.go('all-reviews');
      });
  })
.controller('SignUpController', ['$scope', 'AuthService', '$state',
  function($scope, AuthService, $state) {
    $scope.user = {
      email: 'baz@qux.com',
      password: 'bazqux'
    };
    $scope.register = function() {
      AuthService.register($scope.user.email, $scope.user.password)
        .then(function() {
          $state.transitionTo('sign-up-success');
        });
    };
  })
];
```

The other file, `review.js`, defines controllers for review actions.

[Expand](#)

angular

[source](#)

```
.module('app')
.controller('AllReviewsController', ['$scope', 'Review', function($scope,
  Review) {
    $scope.reviews = Review.find({
      filter: {
        include: [
          'coffeeShop',
          'reviewer'
        ]
      }
    });
  })
];
```

```

.controller('AddReviewController', ['$scope', 'CoffeeShop', 'Review',
  '$state', function($scope, CoffeeShop, Review, $state) {
  $scope.action = 'Add';
  $scope.coffeeShops = [];
  $scope.selectedShop;
  $scope.review = {};
  $scope.isDisabled = false;
  CoffeeShop
    .find()
    .$promise
    .then(function(coffeeShops) {
      $scope.coffeeShops = coffeeShops;
      $scope.selectedShop = $scope.selectedShop || coffeeShops[0];
    });
  $scope.submitForm = function() {
    Review
      .create({
        rating: $scope.review.rating,
        comments: $scope.review.comments,
        coffeeShopId: $scope.selectedShop.id
      })
      .$promise
      .then(function() {
        $state.go('all-reviews');
      });
  };
})

.controller('DeleteReviewController', ['$scope', 'Review', '$state',
  '$stateParams', function($scope, Review, $state, $stateParams) {
  Review
    .deleteById({ id: $stateParams.id })
    .$promise
    .then(function() {
      $state.go('my-reviews');
    });
})

.controller('EditReviewController', ['$scope', '$q', 'CoffeeShop', 'Review',
  '$stateParams', '$state', function($scope, $q, CoffeeShop, Review,
  $stateParams, $state) {
  $scope.action = 'Edit';
  $scope.coffeeShops = [];
  $scope.selectedShop;
  $scope.review = {};
  $scope.isDisabled = true;
  $q
    .all([
      CoffeeShop.find().$promise,
      Review.findById({ id: $stateParams.id }).$promise
    ])
    .then(function(data) {
      var coffeeShops = $scope.coffeeShops = data[0];
      $scope.review = data[1];
      $scope.selectedShop;
      var selectedShopIndex = coffeeShops
        .map(function(coffeeShop) {
          return coffeeShop.id;
        })
        .indexOf($scope.review.coffeeShopId);
      $scope.selectedShop = coffeeShops[selectedShopIndex];
    });
  });

```

```
    });  
    $scope.submitForm = function() {  
        $scope.review.coffeeShopId = $scope.selectedShop.id;  
        $scope.review  
            .save()  
            .then(function(review) {  
                $state.go('all-reviews');  
            });  
    };  
}])  
  
.controller('MyReviewsController', ['$scope', 'Review', '$rootScope',  
    function($scope, Review, $rootScope) {  
        $scope.reviews = Review.find({  
            filter: {  
                where: {  
                    publisherId: $rootScope.currentUser.id  
                },  
                include: [  
                    'coffeeShop',  
                    'reviewer'  
                ]  
            }  
        })  
    }  
]);
```

```

    }
  });
}]);

```

The following table describes the controllers defined in `review.js`.

Controller	Description
AllReviewsController	Performs a <code>Review.find()</code> to fetch reviews. Uses an include filter to add <code>coffeeShop</code> and <code>review</code> models. This is possible due the relations previously defined.
AddReviewController	Coffee shops are populated from the server when the page first loads via <code>CoffeeShop.find()</code> down menu.  When the form is submitted, we create a review and change to the <code>all-reviews</code> page when the promise resolves.
DeleteReviewController	There is no view corresponding to this state when triggered; the corresponding review is deleted by ID. The ID is in the URL.
EditReviewController	Similar to <code>AddReviewController</code> when the page is first loaded.  The app performs two requests at the same time using <code>\$q</code> to get the required models. With these models, it then populates the dropdown menu with the available coffee shops. Once the app has displayed the coffee shops in the dropdown, it selects the coffee shop previously chosen in the original review. Then the app sets <code>coffeeShopId</code> to the selected coffee shop.
MyReviewController	Similar to <code>AllReviewsController</code> , this controller uses a "where" filter to restrict the result set based on the <code>publisherId</code> , where <code>publisherId</code> is set from the currently logged-in user. It then uses an include filter to include <code>coffeeShop</code> and <code>reviewer</code> models.

## Services

Angular *services* are substitutable objects that you connect together using [dependency injection \(DI\)](#). You can use services to organize and share code across your app.

The `js/services` directory contains two AngularJS services libraries: `auth.js` and `lb-services.js`.

You generated the `lb-services.js` previously, and it's described in [Generate lb-services.js](#).

The other file, `auth.js`, provides a simple interface for low-level authentication mechanisms. It uses the `Reviewer` model (that extends the base `User` model) and defines the following services:

- `login`: logs a user in. Loopback automatically manages the authentication token is stored in browser HTML5 localstorage.
- `logout`: logs a user out. Stores the token in browser HTML5 localstorage.
- `register`: registers a new user with the provided email and password, the minimum requirements for creating a new user in LoopBack.

js/services/auth.js

› Expand

```
angular
    .module('app')
    .factory('AuthService', ['Reviewer', '$q', '$rootScope', function(User, $q,
        $rootScope) {
        function login(email, password) {
            return User
                .login({email: email, password: password})
                .$promise
                .then(function(response) {
                    $rootScope.currentUser = {
                        id: response.user.id,
                        tokenId: response.id,
                        email: email
                    };
                });
        }
        function logout() {
            return User
                .logout()
                .$promise
                .then(function() {
                    $rootScope.currentUser = null;
                });
        }
        function register(email, password) {
            return User
                .create({
                    email: email,
                    password: password
                })
                .$promise;
        }
        return {
            login: login,
            logout: logout,
            register: register
        };
    }]);
```

source

## Views

The `client/views` directory contains seven "partial" view templates loaded by `client/index.html` using the [ngView](#) directive. A "partial" is a segment of a template in its own HTML file.

The [table above](#) describes how the views correspond to states and controllers.

## Run the application

Now you can run the Coffee Shop Reviews application:



```
$ node .  
...  
Browse your REST API at http://0.0.0.0:3000/explorer  
Web server listening at: http://0.0.0.0:3000/  
> models created successfully
```

Now load <http://0.0.0.0:3000/> in your browser. You should see the application home page:

You should be able to run the application through its pages, as described in [Introducing the Coffee Shop Reviews app](#).

**Next:** Go to [Deploying your application](#) for an example of deploying your application to production using StrongLoop Process Manager.

## Deploying your application



**Prerequisite:** Install StrongLoop software as described in [Installing StrongLoop](#).

**Recommended:** Read [LoopBack core concepts](#).

- [Running StrongLoop Process Manager](#)
- [Building and deploying with Arc](#)

[StrongLoop Process Manager](#) manages Node applications, providing automatic restart, cluster control, profiling, monitoring and many other features.



If you followed the previous step in the tutorial, go to [Run ning StrongLoop Process Manager](#)

If you're just jumping in, follow the steps below to catch up...

Get the application (in the state following the last article plus all the client files) from GitHub and install all its dependencies:

```
$ git clone https://github.com/strongloop/loopback-getting-started-intermediate.git  
$ cd loopback-getting-started-intermediate  
$ git checkout step7  
$ npm install
```

If you've followed the tutorial this far, you have an idea of how easy it is to create and modify an application. Now, you are ready to build and deploy it with StrongLoop Process Manager.

You'll see how to use both here.

## Running StrongLoop Process Manager



In practice, when you're ready to deploy to production, you would install and run StrongLoop PM on your production host, then use Arc to deploy your app there. For more information, see [Setting up a production host](#)

For the purposes of this tutorial, you'll just run StrongLoop PM locally, then deploy your app to `localhost`. It all works basically the same, but there are few differences when you're actually ready to go to production. You might want to do this, for example, to test your application's behavior under clustered mode for scaling.

Run StrongLoop PM with the following command. By default, StrongLoop PM listens on port 8701. You can change this default with the `-l` option. See [slc pm](#) for more information.

```
$ slc pm
slc pm: StrongLoop PM v3.1.9 (API v5.0.3) listening on port `8701`
slc pm: control listening on path `/loopback-getting-started-intermediate/pmctl`
slc pm: listen on 8701, work base is
`/loopback-getting-started-intermediate/.strong-pm`
```

## Building and deploying with Arc

Next, make sure you are in `loopback-getting-started-intermediate` directory, then start the StrongLoop Arc with the `slc arc` command:

```
$ cd loopback-getting-started-intermediate
$ slc arc
```

StrongLoop Arc will open in your default browser, and you'll see the login page. Arc is free to use, but you must log in. If you haven't registered for an account, click [Register](#) on the bottom right of the **Sign In** page to do so. See [Using Arc](#) for details.

Once you log in, you'll see the StrongLoop Arc launchpad:

---

Then, click **Build & Deploy** to display the Arc Build and Deploy module:

---

Arc provides two ways to build and deploy an application: using a tar file and using a Git archive. You're going to use a tar file, so leave the default **Tar file** selected.

1. Click **Build** to build a tar file for the app. You'll see a progress spinner, and then the message "Successfully built using tar file" when it completes. Arc creates a tar file in the parent directory of your working directory. It will display the name of the .tgz file it creates, in this case: `../loopback-getting-started-intermediate-0.0.1.tgz`.
2. Then, under **Deploy tar file**, enter the following:
  - **Fully qualified path to archive:** the path to the tar file just created, for example: `/Users/rand/loopback-getting-started-intermediate-0.0.1.tgz`.
  - **Hostname:** localhost (for real production deployment, you'd use the remote host name)
  - **Port:** 8701
  - **Processes:** Enter a number less than or equal to the number of processors on the system to which you're deploying; for example, 2.
3. Click **Deploy**.  
You'll see a progress spinner, then when the deployment completes, the message "Successfully deployed using tar file".

You can then load the application home page at <http://localhost:3001/> and the API explorer at <http://localhost:3001/explorer/>.

The app is now deployed to the local Process Manager. If you had set up StrongLoop PM on a remote production host, you'd have a production deployment with clustering and automatic restart.

**Next:** Go to [Learn more](#) for some tips on what to read next.

## Learn more

There's so much more to learn about LoopBack!

LoopBack documentation includes lots of [tutorials and examples](#); also read the [StrongLoop blog](#) for great tips and information.



### StrongLoop Doc Tips

Use the left navigation tree to browse and find doc articles; Click to expand subjects under a topic.

Use the search field at upper right to search the documentation.

Learn more about:

- [Creating an application](#)
- [Managing users](#)
  - [Registering users](#)

- Logging in users
- Partitioning users with realms
- **Authentication, authorization, and permissions**
- **Defining models**
  - Creating models
  - Customizing models
  - Attaching models to data sources
  - Exposing models over REST
  - Validating model data
  - Creating model relations
- **Working with data**
- **Adding application logic**
  - Adding logic to models
  - Defining boot scripts
  - Defining mixins
  - Defining middleware
  - Working with LoopBack objects
  - Using current context
  - Events
- **AngularJS client**
  - Angular example app
  - AngularJS Grunt plugin
  - Generating Angular API docs



Check out the **LoopBack Developer Forum on Google Groups**, a place where developers can ask questions, discuss LoopBack, and how they are using it.

## Creating an application



### Prerequisites

- Install StrongLoop software.
- Read [LoopBack core concepts](#) first.
- Follow [Getting started with LoopBack](#) for a basic introduction to LoopBack.

- Creating a new application
  - Standard project layout
  - Main application script (server.js)

## Creating a new application

As you saw in [Getting Started > Create a simple API](#), the easiest way to create an application is to use `slc loopback`, the [application generator](#).

### Related articles:

#### See also:

- [Creating models](#)
- [Using built-in models](#)



It is possible to create a LoopBack application by coding it from scratch, but `slc loopback` does all the "heavy lifting" to create the basic scaffolding of the [standard project layout](#). You can then customize the application to suit your needs. When you create your application this way, you can continue to use `slc loopback` to add models, data sources, and so on.

In general, the documentation assumes you've created your application using `slc loopback`.

Once you create your application, you may want to configure it, for example: Turn off stack traces, disable API Explorer, and retrieve the values of environment variables. See [Environment-specific configuration](#) for more information.

## Standard project layout

The application generator creates an application with the [standard project layout](#). To summarize:

- **server** directory
  - `server.js` - Main application script; see below.
  - `config.json` - Global application settings, such as the REST API root, host name and port to use, and so on. See [config.json](#).
  - `model-config.json` - Binds models to data sources and specifies whether a model is exposed over REST, among other things. See [model-config.json](#).
  - `datasources.json` - Data source configuration file. See [datasources.json](#).

- `client` directory (empty except for a README stub)
- `common/models` directory - created when you create a model with the [Model generator](#), `slc loopback:model`.
  - A JSON file and a JavaScript file for each model (for example, `my-model.json` and `my-model.js`).

## Main application script (server.js)

This is the main application script in the standard scaffolded application, as created by `slc loopback`.

**1 - 3:** Require LoopBack modules and set up standard objects `loopback`, `app`, and `boot`.

**6:** Initialize (`boot`) the application.

**7+:** Start the application and web server.

```
var loopback = require('loopback');
var boot = require('loopback-boot');
var app = module.exports = loopback();
// Bootstrap the application, configure models,
// datasources and middleware.
// Sub-apps like REST API are mounted via boot scripts.
boot(app, __dirname);
app.start = function() {
  // start the web server
  return app.listen(function() {
    app.emit('started');
    console.log('Web server listening at: %s',
app.get('url'));
  });
};
// start the server if `node server.js`
if (require.main === module) {
  app.start();
}
```

## Using LoopBack tools

LoopBack provides two powerful tools for creating and working with applications:

- The [command-line tool](#) `slc loopback`.
- [StrongLoop Arc](#), a graphical tool.

### The `slc loopback` command-line tool

Use the `slc loopback` command to create and *scaffold* applications. Scaffolding simply means generating the basic code for your application. You can then extend and modify the code as desired for your specific needs.

The `slc loopback` command provides an [Application generator](#) to create a new LoopBack application and a number of sub-generators to scaffold an application, as described in the following table. The commands are listed roughly in the order that you would use them.

Command	See	Description
<code>slc loopback:example</code>	<a href="#">Example generator</a>	Create the <a href="#">LoopBack example app</a> .
<code>slc loopback</code>	<a href="#">Application generator</a>	Create a new LoopBack application.
<code>slc loopback:datasource</code>	<a href="#">Data source generator</a>	Add a new data source to a LoopBack application
<code>slc loopback:model</code>	<a href="#">Model generator</a>	Add a new model to a LoopBack application.

<code>slc loopback:property</code>	Property generator	Add a new property to an existing model.
<code>slc loopback:acl</code>	ACL generator	Add a new access control list (ACL) entry to the LoopBack application.
<code>slc loopback:middleware</code>	Middleware generator	Add a new <a href="#">middleware</a> configuration.
<code>slc loopback:boot-script</code>	Boot script generator	Add a new <a href="#">boot scripts</a> .
<code>slc loopback:swagger</code>	Swagger generator	Generates a fully-functional application that provides the APIs conforming to the <a href="#">Swagger 2.0</a> specification.



The `slc` command has many additional sub-commands not specific to LoopBack for building, deploying, and managing Node applications. See [Operating Node applications](#) for more information and [Command-line reference](#) for the command reference.

## StrongLoop Arc

StrongLoop Arc is a graphical tool for building, deploying, and monitoring LoopBack applications.

**Arc Composer** enables you to:

- **Create and modify models.**  
See [Creating and editing models](#) for more information.
- **Create and modify data sources.**  
See [Creating and editing data sources](#) for more information.
- **Discover models from data sources** that support the discovery API.  
See [Discovering models from a database](#) for more information.
- **Automatically create database schemas** based on your application models (auto-migration).  
See [Migrating a model](#) for more information.

For more information, see [Composing APIs](#).

**Profiler** module enables you to generate and view:

- Application CPU profiles (per process).
- Application heap snapshots (per process), to help diagnose memory leaks.

For more information, see [Profiling with Arc](#).

Click **Profile Settings (full)** to set up Smart Profiling. See [Smart profiling with Arc](#) for more information.

**Build & Deploy** module enables you to build, package, and deploy your Node application to a local or remote system.

For more information, see [Building and deploying with Arc](#).

**Metrics** module enables you to gather and view performance metrics on your application (per process).

For more information, see [Viewing metrics with Arc](#).

**Process Manager** module enables you to manage an application running in clustered mode across multiple server hosts.

For more information, see [Connecting to Process Manager from Arc](#).



**Tracing is available as a private beta feature.**

If you are interested, please contact [sales@strongloop.com](mailto:sales@strongloop.com) for instructions to enable it.

The StrongLoop Arc **Tracing** module enables you to analyze performance and execution of Node applications to discover bottlenecks and trace code execution paths. You can display up to five hours of data to discover how applications perform over time.

You can drill down into specific function calls and execution paths for HTTP and database requests, to see how and where your application is spending time. Tracing provides powerful "flame graph" visualization of an application's function call stack and the corresponding execution times to help you track down where the application spends its time.

For more information, see [Tracing](#).

## Environment-specific configuration

- [Overview](#)

- Example
- Application-wide configuration
  - Turning off stack traces
  - Disabling API Explorer
  - Customizing REST error handling
  - Exclude stack traces from HTTP responses
- Data source configuration
- Getting values from environment variables
  - MacOS and Linux
  - Windows

## Overview

You can set up configurations for specific environments (for example, development, staging, and production) using `config.json` and `datasources.js` on (and their corresponding JavaScript files).

### Example

For an example, see <https://github.com/strongloop/loopback-example-full-stack/tree/master/server>.

For application configuration:

- `config.json`
- `config.local.js`

For data source configuration:

- `datasources.json`
- `datasources.production.js`
- `datasources.staging.js`

## Application-wide configuration

Define application server-side settings in `server/config.json`.

You can override values that are set in `config.json` in:

- `config.local.js` or `config.local.json`
- `config.env.js` or `config.env.json`, where `env` is the value of `NODE_ENV` (typically `development` or `production`); so, for example `config.production.json`.



The additional files can override the top-level keys with value-types (strings, numbers) only. Nested objects and arrays are not supported at the moment.

For example:

### `config.production.js`

```
module.exports = {
  host: process.env.CUSTOM_HOST,
  port: process.env.CUSTOM_PORT
};
```

### Turning off stack traces

By default, stack traces are returned in JSON responses. To turn this off, add this line to `server/config.json`:

### `server/config.json`

```
loopback.rest({disableStackTrace: true})
```





Setting the `NODE_ENV` environment variable to "production" also turns off stack traces in JSON responses.

## Disabling API Explorer

LoopBack [API Explorer](#) is great when you're developing your application, but for security reasons you may not want to expose it in production. To disable API Explorer entirely, if you created your application with the [Application generator](#), simply delete or rename `server/boot/explorer.js`.

## Customizing REST error handling

You can customize the REST error handler by adding the error handler callback function to `server/config.js` as follows:

### server/config.js

```
module.exports = {
  remoting: {
    errorHandler: {
      handler: function(err, req, res, next) {
        // custom error handling logic
        var log = require('debug')('server:rest:errorHandler'); // example
        log(req.method, req.originalUrl, res.statusCode, err);
        next(); // call next() to fall back to the default error handler
      }
    }
  }
};
```

## Exclude stack traces from HTTP responses

To exclude error stack traces from HTTP responses (typical in production), set the `includeStack` option of LoopBack `errorHandler` middleware to `false` in [middleware.json](#).

The standard configuration for development is:

### server/middleware.json

```
...
"final:after": {
  "loopback#errorHandler": {}
}
}
```

For production, exclude stack traces from HTTP responses as follows:

### server/middleware.production.json

```
...
  "final:after": {
    "loopback#errorHandler": {
      "params": {
        "includeStack": false
      }
    }
  }
}
```

## Data source configuration

You can override values set in `datasources.json` in the following files:

- `datasources.local.js` or `datasources.local.json`
- `datasources.env.js` or `datasources.env.json`, where `env` is the value of `NODE_ENV` environment variable (typically development or production); for example, `datasources.production.json`.



The additional files can override the top-level data-source options with string and number values only. You cannot use objects or array values.

Example data sources:

### datasources.json

```
{
  // the key is the datasource name
  // the value is the config object to pass to
  // app.dataSource(name, config).
  db: {
    connector: 'memory'
  }
}
```

### datasources.production.json

```
{
  db: {
    connector: 'mongodb',
    database: 'myapp',
    user: 'myapp',
    password: 'secret'
  }
}
```

## Getting values from environment variables

You can easily set an environment variable when you run an application. The command you use depends on your operating system.

### MacOS and Linux



Use this command to set an environment variable and run an application in one command:

```
$ MY_CUSTOM_VAR="some value" node .
```

or in separate commands:

```
$ export MY_CUSTOM_VAR="some value"
$ node .
```

Then this variable is available to your application as `process.env.MY_CUSTOM_VAR`.

## Windows

On Windows systems, use these commands:

```
C:\> set MY_CUSTOM_VAR="some value"
C:\> node .
```

## Versioning your API

You can easily add versioning to your REST API routes, based on the application "major" version in `package.json`.

Add a file named `config.local.js` in the application's `/server` directory with the following code:

### `/server/config.local.js`

```
var p = require('../package.json');
var version = p.version.split('.').shift();
module.exports = {
  restApiRoot: '/api' + (version > 0 ? '/v' + version : ''),
  host: process.env.HOST || 'localhost',
  port: process.env.PORT || 3000
};
```

This takes the major version number from the `version` property in `package.json` and appends it to the REST API root. If your app's major version is 0, then the REST API root remains the default `/api`.

So, for example, if `version` in `package.json` is 2.0.1, then the built-in model route exposed by default at:

```
GET http://localhost:3000/api/Users
```

is now exposed at:

```
GET http://localhost:3000/api/v2/Users
```



Changing the API root in this way doesn't affect routes set in [request-handling middleware](#) or the route to [API Explorer](#) itself, which remains `http://localhost:3000/explorer`.

## Managing users



### Prerequisites

- [Install StrongLoop software](#).
- Read [LoopBack core concepts](#) first.
- Follow [Getting started with LoopBack](#) for a basic introduction to LoopBack.

- [Overview](#)
- [Creating and authenticating users](#)
- [Understanding the built-in User model](#)
  - [Default access controls](#)
  - [User realms](#)

#### See also:

- [Authentication, authorization, and permissions](#)
- [Third-party login \(Passport\)](#)

## Overview

LoopBack's built-in [User](#) model provides essential user management features such as:

- Registration and confirmation via email.
- Login and logout.
- Creating an access token.
- Password reset.

You can [extend the User model](#) to suit your specific needs, so in most cases, you don't need to create your own User model from scratch.

Watch this video for an introduction to user management in LoopBack:

## Creating and authenticating users

The basic process to create and authenticate users is:

1. Register a new user with the `User.create()` method, inherited from the generic `PersistedModel` object. See [Registering users](#) for more information.
2. Log in a user by calling `User.login()` to get an access token. See [Logging in users](#) for more information.
3. Make subsequent API calls using the access token. Provide the access token in the HTTP header or as a query parameter to the REST API call, as shown in [Making authenticated requests with access tokens](#).

## Understanding the built-in User model

By default, a LoopBack application has a [built-in User model](#) defined by `user.json` (this file is part of the LoopBack framework. Don't modify it; rather, follow the procedure in [Extending built-in models](#)).



For a basic introduction to how the LoopBack user model performs authentication, see [Introduction to User model authentication](#).

## Default access controls

The built-in User model has the following ACL:

```
{
  "name": "User",
  "properties": {
    ...
  },
  "acls": [
    {
      "principalType": "ROLE",
      "principalId": "$everyone",
      "permission": "DENY"
    },
    {
      "principalType": "ROLE",
      "principalId": "$everyone",
      "permission": "ALLOW",
      "property": "create"
    }
  ]
}
```

> [Expand](#)

[source](#)

```
"principalType": "ROLE",
"principalId": "$owner",
"permission": "ALLOW",
"property": "deleteById"
},
{
  "principalType": "ROLE",
  "principalId": "$everyone",
  "permission": "ALLOW",
  "property": "login"
},
{
  "principalType": "ROLE",
  "principalId": "$everyone",
  "permission": "ALLOW",
  "property": "logout"
},
{
  "principalType": "ROLE",
  "principalId": "$owner",
  "permission": "ALLOW",
  "property": "findById"
},
{
  "principalType": "ROLE",
  "principalId": "$owner",
  "permission": "ALLOW",
  "property": "updateAttributes"
},
{
  "principalType": "ROLE",
  "principalId": "$everyone",
  "permission": "ALLOW",
  "property": "confirm"
},
{
  "principalType": "ROLE",
  "principalId": "$everyone",
  "permission": "ALLOW",
  "property": "resetPassword",
  "accessType": "EXECUTE"
```

```
}  
],  
...
```

The above ACL denies all operations to everyone, then selectively allows:

- Anyone to [create a new user](#) (User instance).
- Anyone to [log in](#), [log out](#), [confirm their identity](#), and [reset their own password](#).
- A user to perform `deleteById`, `findById`, and `updateAttributes` on their own User record (instance).



You cannot directly modify built-in models such as the User model with the ACL generator `slc loopback:acl`.

However, you can create a custom model that extends the built-in User model, then use the [ACL generator](#) to define access controls that are added to those of the default User model. For example, you could create a Customer or Client model that [extends the built-in User model](#), and then modify that model's ACL with `slc loopback:acl`.

## User realms

See [Partitioning users with realms](#).

## Registering users

The LoopBack User model provides methods to register new users and confirm their email addresses. You can also use the `loopback-component-passport` module to integrate login with Facebook, Google, and other third-party providers.

- [Registering users with the LoopBack User model](#)
  - [Creating a new user](#)
  - [Adding other registration constraints](#)
  - [Verifying email addresses](#)
- [Registering users through a third-party system](#)

## Registering users with the LoopBack User model

### Creating a new user

Create a user (register a user) by adding a model instance, in the same way as for any other model; email and password are the only required properties.

#### /common/models/user.js

```
module.exports = function(app) {  
  var User = app.models.User;  
  User.create({email: 'foo@bar.com', password: 'bar'}, function(err, user) {  
    console.log(user);  
  });  
  ...  
};
```



You can also do this in a [boot script](#).

Over REST, use the `POST /users` endpoint to create a new user instance, for example:

#### REST

```
curl -X POST -H "Content-Type:application/json" \  
-d '{"email": "me@domain.com", "password": "secret"}' \  
http://localhost:3000/api/users
```

For more information, see [User REST API](#).

### Adding other registration constraints

Typically, you might want to add methods as part of the registration process, for example to see if a given username is available or if an email address is already registered. A good way to do this is to add methods as `beforeRemote` hooks on the `User` object. See [Remote hooks](#) for more information.

### Verifying email addresses

Typically, an application will require users to verify their email addresses before being able to login. This will send an email to the user containing a link to verify their address. Once the user follows the link they will be redirected to web root ( `" /"` ) and will be able to login normally.

To enforce this constraint, set the `emailVerificationRequired` user model property to `true`; in `server/model-config.json`; for example:

More information on Email model:

- [Using the Email model](#)
- [Email connector](#)

#### server/model-config.json

```
...
"user": {
  "dataSource": "db",
  "public": true,
  "options": {
    "emailVerificationRequired": true
  }
}
...
```

Over REST, use the `GET /users/confirm` endpoint to verify a user's email address. For details, see [User REST API](#).

This example creates a [remote hook](#) on the `User` model executed after the `create()` method is called.



The example below assumes you have setup a `MyUser` model and `Mail` datasource.

### /common/models/user.js

```
var config = require('../../server/config.json');
var path = require('path');
module.exports = function(user) {
  //send verification email after registration
  user.afterRemote('create', function(context, user) {
    console.log('> user.afterRemote triggered');
    var options = {
      type: 'email',
      to: user.email,
      from: 'noreply@loopback.com',
      subject: 'Thanks for registering.',
      template: path.resolve(__dirname, '../../server/views/verify.ejs'),
      redirect: '/verified',
      user: user
    };
    user.verify(options, function(err, response) {
      if (err) {
        next(err);
        return;
      }
      console.log('> verification email sent:', response);
      context.res.render('response', {
        title: 'Signed up successfully',
        content: 'Please check your email and click on the verification link '
          + 'before logging in.',
        redirectTo: '/',
        redirectToLinkText: 'Log in'
      });
    });
  });
  ...
}
```

For a complete example, see [user.js](#) in [loopback-faq-user-management](#).



Naming your file with camel-case `MyUser` will create files in "lisp case" `/common/models/my-user.js` + `/common/models/my-user.json`

Then, in your view file (for example, an [EJS template](#)):

### verify.ejs

This is the html version of your email.  
<strong><%= text %></strong>

## Registering users through a third-party system

Use the LoopBack Passport component ([loopback-component-passport](#)) to enable users to register and log in to your application using existing credentials from:

- FaceBook
- Google
- Twitter

For more information, see [Third-party login \(Passport\)](#).

## Logging in users

- [Login with the LoopBack User model](#)
  - [Logging in](#)
  - [Logging out](#)
- [Login using third-party systems](#)
- [Resetting a user's password](#)

### Login with the LoopBack User model

#### Logging in

Login (authenticate) a user by calling the `User.login()` method and providing an object containing `password` and `email` or `username` properties as the first parameter. The method returns an access token.

##### Boot script

```
User.login({username: 'foo', password: 'bar'}, function(err, accessToken) {
  console.log(accessToken);
});
```



`User.login()` has an optional second parameter that is a string or an array of strings. Pass in "user" for this parameter to include the user information. For REST apis, using `?include=user`.

You may also specify how long the access token is valid by providing a `ttl` (time to live) property with a value in **seconds**. For example:

##### Boot script

```
var TWO_WEEKS = 60 * 60 * 24 * 7 * 2;
User.login({
  email: 'me@domain.com',           // must provide email or "username"
  password: 'secret',               // required by default
  ttl: TWO_WEEKS                    // keep the AccessToken alive for at least two
  weeks
}, function (err, accessToken) {
  console.log(accessToken.id);       // => GOkZRwg... the access token
  console.log(accessToken.ttl);      // => 1209600 time to live
  console.log(accessToken.created);  // => 2013-12-20T21:10:20.377Z
  console.log(accessToken.userId);   // => 1
});
```

If a login attempt is unsuccessful, an error will be returned in the following format.

```
{
  "status": 401,                    // or 400 if the credentials object is invalid
  "message": "login failed"        // could also be "realm is required" or "username or
  email is required"
}
```

Over REST, use the `POST /users/login` endpoint; for example:

#### Shell

```
curl -X POST -H "Content-Type:application/json" \
-d '{"email": "me@domain.com", "password": "secret", "ttl": 1209600000}' \
http://localhost:3000/api/users/login
```

The return value is a JSON object with an `id` property that is the access token to be used in subsequent requests; for example:

#### Shell

```
{
  "id": "GOkZRwgZ61q0XXVxvxlB8TS1D6lrG7Vb9V8YwRdfy3YGAN7TM7EnxWHqdbIZfheZ",
  "ttl": 1209600,
  "created": "2013-12-20T21:10:20.377Z",
  "userId": 1
}
```

See [User REST API](#) for more information.

### Logging out

Use the `User.logout()` method to log out a user, providing the user's access token as the parameter.

#### Boot script

```
// login a user and logout
User.login({email: "foo@bar.com", "password": "bar"}, function(err, accessToken) {
  User.logout(accessToken.id, function(err) {
    // user logged out
  });
});

// logout a user (server side only)
User.findOne({email: 'foo@bar.com'}, function(err, user) {
  user.logout();
});
```

Over REST, use the `POST /users/logout` endpoint, again providing the user's access token in the `sid` property of the POST payload.

To destroy access tokens over REST API, use the `POST /users/logout` endpoint.



### Shell

```
ACCESS_TOKEN=6Nb2ti5QEXIoDBS5FQGWiz4poRFiBCMMYJbYXSGHWuulOuy0GTEuGx2VCEVvbpBK
VERB=POST # any verb is allowed

# Authorization Header
curl -X VERB -H "Authorization: $ACCESS_TOKEN" \
http://localhost:3000/api/users/logout

# Query Parameter
curl -X VERB http://localhost:3000/api/users/logout?access_token=$ACCESS_TOKEN
```

See [User REST API](#) for more information.

## Login using third-party systems

Instead of using LoopBack's user system, you can integrate with a third-party system that supports OAuth, such as Google, FaceBook, or Twitter.

For more information, see [Third-party login \(Passport\)](#).

## Resetting a user's password

Use the `User.resetPassword()` method to reset a user's password. This method creates a short-lived access token for temporary login that allows users to change passwords if forgotten.

### Boot script

```
User.resetPassword({
  email: 'foo@bar.com'
}, function () {
  console.log('ready to change password');
});
```

Or, over REST use the `POST /users/reset` endpoint. see [User REST API](#) for more information.

## Partitioning users with realms

By default, the LoopBack User model manages all users in a global namespace. It does not isolate different applications. In some cases, you may want to partition users into multiple namespaces so that different applications have separate users. LoopBack uses *realms* to support:

- Users and applications belonging to a single global realm (or no realm).
- Distributing users and applications to multiple realms. A user or application can belong to only one realm. Each realm can have many users and many applications.
- Each application is a unique realm and each user belongs to an application (via a realm).

Each application or user instance still has a unique ID across realms. When an application/user is signed up, it can be assigned to a realm. The `User.login()` function:

- Honors the realm property from the user credential.
- Allows the realm to be extracted from the prefix of username/email.

Two settings in the User model control the realms:

- `realmRequired` (Boolean): `true` | `false` (default)
- `realmDelimiter` (string): If configured, the email or username can be prefixed as `<realm><realmDelimiter><username or email>`, for example, `myRealm:john` or `myRealm:john@sample.com`. If not present, no prefix will be checked against username or email.

For example,

### server/model-config.json

```
"User": {
  "dataSource": "db",
  "options": {
    "realmRequired": true,
    "realmDelimiter": ":"
  }
},
```

When realms are enabled, you must provide a `realm` property when you call `User.create()`, for example:

```
User.create({
  realm: 'myRealm',
  username: 'john',
  email: 'john@sample.com',
  password: 'my-password'
}, callback);
```

To login a user within a realm, the credentials should include the `realm` property too.

```
User.login({
  realm: 'myRealm',
  username: 'john',
  password: 'my-password'
}, callback);
```

If the `realmDelimiter` is configured (for example, to `:"`), the login allows the realm to be passed in as prefix to the username or email.

```
User.login({
  username: 'myRealm:john',
  password: 'my-password'
}, callback);
```

## Authentication, authorization, and permissions



### Prerequisites

- Install [StrongLoop software](#).
- Read [LoopBack core concepts](#) first.
- Follow [Getting started with LoopBack](#) for a basic introduction to LoopBack.

- [Access control concepts](#)
- [General process](#)
- [Exposing and hiding models, methods, and endpoints](#)
  - [Hiding methods and REST endpoints](#)
  - [Hiding endpoints for related models](#)
  - [Hiding properties](#)

Most applications need to control who (or what) can access data or call services. Typically, this involves requiring users to login to access protected data, or requiring authorization tokens for other applications to access protected data.

For a simple example of implementing LoopBack access control, see the [GitHub](#) |

### See also:

- [Managing users](#)
- [Third-party login \(Passport\)](#) (Facebook, Google, etc.)
- [Access control models](#)
- [Tutorial: access control](#)
- [Security considerations](#)

[oopback-example-access-control](#) repository.

LoopBack apps access data through models (see [Defining models](#)), so controlling access to data means putting restrictions on models; that is, specifying who or what can read/write the data or execute methods on the models.

## Access control concepts

LoopBack's access control system is built around a few core concepts.

Term	Description	Responsibility	Example
Principal	An entity that can be identified or authenticated.	Represents identities of a request to protected resources.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ A user</li><li>■ An application</li><li>■ A role (please note a role is also a principal)</li></ul>
Role	A group of principals with the same permissions.	Organizes principals into groups so they can be used.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Dynamic role:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ \$everyone (for all users)</li><li>■ \$unauthenticated (unauthenticated users)</li><li>■ \$owner (the principal is owner of the model instance)</li></ul></li><li>■ Static role: admin (a defined role for administrators)</li></ul>
RoleMapping	Assign principals to roles	Statically assigns principals to roles.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Assign user with id 1 to role 1</li><li>■ Assign role 'admin' to role 1</li></ul>
ACL	Access control list	Controls if a principal can perform a certain operation against a model.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Deny everyone to access the project model</li><li>■ Allow 'admin' role to execute find() method on the project model</li></ul>

## General process

The general process to implement access control for an application is:

1. **Specify user roles.** Define the user roles that your application requires. For example, you might create roles for anonymous users, authorized users, and administrators.
2. **Define access for each role and model method.** For example, you might enable anonymous users to read a list of banks, but not allow them to do anything else.  
LoopBack models have a set of built-in methods, and each method maps to either the READ or WRITE access type. In essence, this step amounts to specifying whether access is allowed for each role and each Model + access type, as illustrated in the example below.
3. **Implement authentication:** in the application, add code to create (register) new users, login users (get and use authentication tokens), and logout users.

## Exposing and hiding models, methods, and endpoints

To expose a model over REST, set the public property to true in `/server/model-config.json`:

```
...
  "Role": {
    "dataSource": "db",
    "public": false
  },
  ...
```

## Hiding methods and REST endpoints

If you don't want to expose certain CRUD operations, you can easily hide them by calling `disableRemoteMethod()` on the model. For example, following the previous example, by convention custom model code would go in the file `common/models/location.js`. You would add the following lines to "hide" one of the predefined remote methods:

#### common/models/location.js

```
var isStatic = true;
MyModel.disableRemoteMethod('deleteById', isStatic);
```

Now the `deleteById()` operation and the corresponding REST endpoint will not be publicly available.

For a method on the prototype object, such as `updateAttributes()`:

#### common/models/location.js

```
var isStatic = false;
MyModel.disableRemoteMethod('updateAttributes', isStatic);
```

## Hiding endpoints for related models

To disable a REST endpoints for related model methods, use `disableRemoteMethod()`.



For more information, see [Accessing related models](#).

For example, if there are post and tag models, where a post has many tags, add the following code to `/common/models/post.js` to disable the remote methods for the related model and the corresponding REST endpoints:

#### common/models/model.js

```
module.exports = function(Post) {
  Post.disableRemoteMethod('__get__tags', false);
  Post.disableRemoteMethod('__create__tags', false);
  Post.disableRemoteMethod('__destroyById__accessTokens', false); // DELETE
  Post.disableRemoteMethod('__updateById__accessTokens', false); // PUT
};
```

## Hiding properties

To hide a property of a model exposed over REST, define a hidden property. See [Model definition JSON file \(Hidden properties\)](#).

## Introduction to User model authentication

LoopBack provides a full-featured solution for authentication and authorization. Follow the steps here to get an overview of how it works with the built-in User model using StrongLoop API Explorer.

First, if you haven't done so, follow the first steps in [Getting started with LoopBack](#) to download the `loopback-getting-started` application and run it.

Open <http://localhost:3000/explorer> to view StrongLoop API Explorer. Then:

- [Create a new user](#)
- [Login as the new user](#)
- [Set access token](#)

### Create a new user

Click on **POST /Users** to create a new user record:

The operation will expand. Under **Parameters**, click on the **data** field and enter a JSON object with email and password properties, for example:

```
{
  "email": "foo@bar.com",
  "password": "xxx"
}
```

The basic User model validates that email has the standard format of an email address, and the password is not empty.

Click **Try it Out!** to submit the request to the REST API.

You'll see a 200 **Response Code**, and the **Response Body** will show the email address and unique ID of the newly-registered user.

### Login as the new user

Now click on **POST /Users/login** to login as this new user. Copy and past the same JSON containing the email and password you entered previously to the **credentials** field, then click **Try it Out!**:

Now the response will contain the authorization token for the user:

## Set access token

Select and copy the value of the **id** property in the **Response Body** and paste it into the **accessToken** field in the upper right of the API Explorer window:

After you do this, the message will change to **Token Set**. At this point, the user you created is now logged in and authenticated to the application.

You can now execute certain REST operations; for example, click **GET /Users/{id}**, enter 1 in the id field, and click **Try it Out!** to fetch the user model instance data for your own user record:

Certain operations are restricted, even if you are authenticated. For example, you can't view other users' records.

## Controlling data access

- Specifying user roles
  - User access types
- Defining access control
- Using the ACL generator to define access control
  - Example
- Applying access control rules
  - ACL rule precedence
- Debugging

### Specifying user roles

The first step in specifying user roles is to determine what roles your application needs. Most applications will have un-authenticated or anonymous users (those who have not logged in) and authenticated users (those who have logged in). Additionally, many applications will have an administrative role that provides broad access rights. And applications can have any number of additional user roles as appropriate.

For example, the [startkicker](#) app consists of four types of users: `guest`, `owner`, `team member` and `administrator`. Each user type has access to various parts of the app based on their role and the access control lists (ACLs) we define.

### User access types

LoopBack provides a built-in [User](#) model with a corresponding [REST API](#) that inherits all the "CRUD" (create, read, update, and delete) methods of the [PersistedModel](#) object. Each CRUD method of the LoopBack User model maps to either the READ or WRITE access type, as follows:

READ:

- [exists](#) - Boolean method that determines whether a user exists.
- [findById](#) - Find a user by ID.
- [find](#) - Find all users that match specified conditions.
- [findOne](#) - Finds a single user instance that matches specified conditions.
- [count](#) - Returns the number of users that match the specified conditions.

WRITE:

- [create](#) - create a new user.
- [updateAttributes](#) (update) - update a user record.
- [upsert](#) (update or insert) - update or insert a new user record.
- [destroyById](#) (equivalent to [removeById](#) or [deleteById](#)) - delete the user with the specified ID.

For other methods, the default access type is EXECUTE; for example, a custom method maps to the EXECUTE access type.

### Defining access control

Use the [ACL generator](#) to set up access control for an application. Before you do that, though, you must have a clear idea of how you're going to configure access control for your application.

For example, here is how [loopback-example-access-control](#) sets up users and their rights:

- Guest - Guest
  - Role = \$everyone, \$unauthenticated
  - Has access to the "List projects" function, but none of the others
- John - Project owner

- Role = \$everyone, \$authenticated, teamMember, \$owner
- Can access all functions except "View all projects"
- Jane - Project team member
  - Role = \$everyone, \$authenticated, teamMember
  - Can access all functions except "View all projects" and "Withdraw"
- Bob - Administrator
  - Role = \$everyone, \$authenticated, admin
  - Can access all functions except "Withdraw"

Once you've created this kind of specification, you can easily construct `slc loopback:acl` commands to set up access control, as illustrated below.

## Using the ACL generator to define access control

The easiest way to define access control for an app is with the [ACL generator](#). This enables you to create a static definition before runtime. The generator prompts you for all the necessary information:

```
$ slc loopback:acl
```

### Example

For example, here are the answers to prompts to define ACL entries for the [loopback-example-access-control](#) example.

Deny access to all project REST endpoints

- Select the model to apply the ACL entry to: All existing models
- Select the ACL scope: All methods and properties
- Select the access type: All (match all types)
- Select the role: All users
- Select the permission to apply: Explicitly deny access

Allow unrestricted access to GET /api/projects/listProjects

- Select the model to apply the ACL entry to: project
- Select the ACL scope: A single method
- Enter the method name: listProjects
- Select the access type: Execute
- Select the role: All users
- Select the permission to apply: Explicitly grant access

Only allow admin unrestricted access to GET /api/projects

- Select the model to apply the ACL entry to: project
- Select the ACL scope: A single method
- Enter the method name: find
- Select the access type: Read
- Select the role: other
- Enter the role name: admin
- Select the permission to apply: Explicitly grant access

Only allow team members access to GET /api/projects/id

- Select the model to apply the ACL entry to: project
- Select the ACL scope: A single method
- Enter the method name: findById
- Select the access type: Read
- Select the role: other
- Enter the role name: teamMember
- Select the permission to apply: Explicitly grant access

Allow authenticated users to access POST /api/projects/donate

- Select the model to apply the ACL entry to: project
- Select the ACL scope: A single method
- Enter the method name: donate
- Select the access type: Execute
- Select the role: Any authenticated user
- Select the permission to apply: Explicitly grant access

Allow owners access to POST /api/projects/withdraw



- Select the model to apply the ACL entry to: project
- Select the ACL scope: A single method
- Enter the method name: withdraw
- Select the access type: Execute
- Select the role: The user owning the object
- Select the permission to apply: Explicitly grant access

For more information, see [ACL generator](#).

## Applying access control rules

Each incoming request is mapped to an object with three attributes:

- model - The target model name, for example '**order**'
- property - The target method name, for example, '**find**'. You can also specify an array of method names to apply the same constraint to all of them.
- accessType - The access type, '**EXECUTE**', '**READ**', and '**WRITE**'

ACL rules are described as an array of objects, each of which consists of attributes listed at [Model definition JSON file#ACLs](#).

1. model
2. property
3. accessType
4. principalType
  - a. USER
  - b. APP
  - c. ROLE
    - i. custom roles
    - ii. \$owner
    - iii. \$authenticated
    - iv. \$unauthenticated
    - v. \$everyone
5. permission
  - a. DENY
  - b. ALLOW

## ACL rule precedence

A single model may have several ACLs applied to it: The ACL of the base model (or models) and that of the model itself, defined in the [model definition JSON file](#). LoopBack determines the ultimate ACL by *adding* all the applicable ACLs with precedence rules for permission and access type to resolve any conflicts.

Permission precedence is applied in this order:

1. DENY
2. ALLOW
3. DEFAULT

So, for example, a DENY rule for a certain operation and user group will take precedence over an ALLOW rule for the same operation and group.

Access type precedence (in order of specificity) is applied in this order:

1. Type (read, write, replicate, update)
2. Method name
3. Wildcard

In general, a more specific rule will take precedence over a more general rule. For example, a rule that denies access to an operation to authenticated users will take precedence over a rule that denies access to all users.

LoopBack sorts multiple rules by the specifics of matching the request against each rule. It calculates the specifics by checking the access request against each ACL rule by the hierarchical order of attributes.

At each level, the matching yields three points:

- 3: exact match
- 2: wildcard match ('\*')
- -1: no match

Higher-level matches take precedence over lower-level matches. For example, the exact match at model level will outweigh the wildcard match.

For example, consider the following access request:

```
{
  model: 'order',
  property: 'find',
  accessType: 'EXECUTE'
}
```

Assuming the following ACL rules are defined:

```
[
  // Rule #1
  {
    model: '*',
    property: 'find',
    accessType: 'EXECUTE',
    principalType: 'ROLE',
    principalId: '$authenticated',
    permission: 'ALLOW'
  },
  // Rule #2
  {
    model: 'order',
    property: '*',
    accessType: '*',
    principalType: 'ROLE',
    principalId: '$authenticated',
    permission: 'ALLOW'
  },
  // Rule #3
  {
    model: 'order',
    property: 'find',
    accessType: '*',
    principalType: 'ROLE',
    principalId: '$authenticated',
    permission: 'DENY'
  }
]
```

The order of ACL rules will be #3, #2, #1. As a result, the request will be rejected as the permission set by rule #3 is 'DENY' .

## Debugging

Specify a `DEBUG` environment variable with value `loopback:security:*` for the console to log the lookups and checks the server makes as requests come in, useful to understand things from its perspective. Do this in your test environment as there may be quite a lot of output.

## Making authenticated requests

- [Making authenticated requests with access tokens](#)
- [Using current user id as a literal in URLs for REST](#)
- [Deleting access tokens](#)

The basic process for an application to create and authenticate users is:

1. Register a new user with the `User.create()` method, inherited from the generic Model object. See [Registering users](#) for details.
2. Call `User.login()` to request an access token from the client application on behalf of the user. See [Logging in users](#) for details.
3. Invoke an API using the access token. Provide the access token in the HTTP header or as a query parameter to the REST API call, as illustrated below.

## Making authenticated requests with access tokens

Once a user is logged in, LoopBack creates a new `AccessToken` referencing the user. This token is required when making subsequent REST requests for the access control system to validate that the user can invoke methods on a given `Model`.

### shell

```
ACCESS_TOKEN=6Nb2ti5QEXIoDBS5FQGWiz4p0RFiBCMMYJbYXSGHWuulOuy0GTEuGx2VCEVvbpBK

# Authorization Header
curl -X GET -H "Authorization: $ACCESS_TOKEN" \
http://localhost:3000/api/widgets

# Query Parameter
curl -X GET http://localhost:3000/api/widgets?access_token=$ACCESS_TOKEN
```

To use cookies for authentication, add the following to `server.js` (before boot):

### /server/server.js

```
app.use(loopback.token({ model: app.models.accessToken }));
```



The Loopback Angular SDK doesn't support using cookies, and expects you to be using an access token returned from `User.login()`.

## Using current user id as a literal in URLs for REST

To allow the current logged in user id for REST APIs, configure the token middleware with `currentUserLiteral` options.

### /server/server.js

```
app.use(loopback.token({ model: app.models.accessToken, currentUserLiteral: 'me' }));
```

The `currentUserLiteral` defines a special token that can be used in the URL for REST APIs, for example:

```
curl -X GET http://localhost:3000/api/users/me/orders?access_token=$ACCESS_TOKEN
```

Please note the URL will be rewritten to `http://localhost:3000/api/users/<currentLoggedInUserId>/orders?access_token=$ACCESS_TOKEN` by LoopBack.

## Deleting access tokens

A user will be effectively logged out by deleting the access token they were issued at login. This affects only the specified access token; other tokens attached to the user will still be valid.

### /server/boot/script.js

```
var USER_ID = 1;
var ACCESS_TOKEN = '6Nb2ti5QEXIoDBS5FQGWiz4poRFiBCMMYJbYXSGHWuulOuy0GTEuGx2VCEVvbpBK';
// remove just the token
var token = new AccessToken({id: ACCESS_TOKEN});
token.destroy();
// remove all user tokens
AccessToken.destroyAll({
  where: {userId: USER_ID}
});
```

## Defining and using roles

LoopBack enables you to define both static and dynamic roles. Static roles are stored in a data source and are mapped to users. In contrast, dynamic roles aren't assigned to users and are determined during access.

- [Static roles](#)
- [Dynamic roles](#)

### Static roles

Here is an [example](#) defining a new static role and assigning a user to that role.

### /server/boot/script.js

```
User.create([
  {username: 'John', email: 'john@doe.com', password: 'opensesame'},
  {username: 'Jane', email: 'jane@doe.com', password: 'opensesame'},
  {username: 'Bob', email: 'bob@projects.com', password: 'opensesame'}
], function(err, users) {
  if (err) return cb(err);

  //create the admin role
  Role.create({
    name: 'admin'
  }, function(err, role) {
    if (err) cb(err);

    //make bob an admin
    role.principals.create({
      principalType: RoleMapping.USER,
      principalId: users[2].id
    }, function(err, principal) {
      cb(err);
    });
  });
});
```

Now you can use the role defined above in the access controls. For example, add the following to `common/models/project.json` to enable users in the "admin" role to call all REST APIs.

### /common/models/model.json

```
{
  "accessType": "EXECUTE",
  "principalType": "ROLE",
  "principalId": "admin",
  "permission": "ALLOW",
  "property": "find"
}
```

## Dynamic roles

Sometimes static roles aren't flexible enough. LoopBack also enables you to define *dynamic roles* that are defined at run-time.

LoopBack provides the following built-in dynamic roles.

Role object property	String value	Description
Role.OWNER	\$owner	Owner of the object
Role.AUTHENTICATED	\$authenticated	authenticated user
Role.UNAUTHENTICATED	\$unauthenticated	Unauthenticated user
Role.EVERYONE	\$everyone	Everyone

The first example used the "\$owner" dynamic role to allow access to the owner of the requested project model.



To qualify a \$owner, the target model needs to have a belongsTo relation to the User model (or a model extends from User) and property matching the foreign key of the target model instance. The check for \$owner is only performed for a remote method that has 'id' on the path, for example, GET /api/users/:id.

Use `Role.registerResolver()` to set up a custom role handler in a [boot script](#). This function takes two parameters:

1. String name of the role in question.
2. Function that determines if a principal is in the specified role. The function signature must be `function(role, context, callback)`.

For example, here is the role resolver from [loopback-example-access-control](#):

### **/server/boot/script.js**

```
module.exports = function(app) {
  var Role = app.models.Role;
  Role.registerResolver('teamMember', function(role, context, cb) {
    function reject(err) {
      if(err) {
        return cb(err);
      }
      cb(null, false);
    }
    if (context.modelName !== 'project') {
      // the target model is not project
      return reject();
    }
    var userId = context.accessToken.userId;
    if (!userId) {
      return reject(); // do not allow anonymous users
    }
    // check if userId is in team table for the given project id
    context.model.findById(context.modelId, function(err, project) {
      if(err || !project) {
        reject(err);
      }
      var Team = app.models.Team;
      Team.count({
        ownerId: project.ownerId,
        memberId: userId
      }, function(err, count) {
        if (err) {
          return reject(err);
        }
        cb(null, count > 0); // true = is a team member
      });
    });
  });
};
```

Using the dynamic role defined above, we can restrict access of project information to users that are team members of the project.

### **/common/models/model.json**

```
{
  "accessType": "READ",
  "principalType": "ROLE",
  "principalId": "teamMember",
  "permission": "ALLOW",
  "property": "findById"
}
```


## **Accessing related models**

- [Restricting access to related models](#)
- [Querying related models](#)

## Restricting access to related models

When two models have a relationship between them (see [Creating model relations](#)), LoopBack automatically creates a set of *related model methods* corresponding to the API routes defined for the relationship.

In the following list, *modelName* is the name of the related model and *modelNamePlural* is the plural form of the related model name.

 In the method names below, the separators are *double* underscores, `__`.

### belongsTo:

- `__get__relatedModelName`

### hasOne:

- `__create__relatedModelName`
- `__get__relatedModelName`
- `__update__relatedModelName`
- `__destroy__relatedModelName`

### hasMany:

- `__count__relatedModelNamePlural`
- `__create__relatedModelNamePlural`
- `__delete__relatedModelNamePlural`
- `__destroyById__relatedModelNamePlural`
- `__findById__relatedModelNamePlural`
- `__get__relatedModelNamePlural`
- `__updateById__relatedModelNamePlural`

### hasManyThrough:

- `__count__relatedModelNamePlural`
- `__create__relatedModelNamePlural`
- `__delete__relatedModelNamePlural`
- `__destroyById__relatedModelNamePlural`
- `__exists__relatedModelNamePlural` (through only)
- `__findById__relatedModelNamePlural`
- `__get__relatedModelNamePlural`
- `__link__relatedModelNamePlural` (through only)
- `__updateById__relatedModelNamePlural`
- `__unlink__relatedModelNamePlural` (through only)

You can use these related model methods to control access to the related routes. For example, if a **User hasMany projects**, LoopBack creates these routes (among others) and the corresponding related model methods:

- `/api/users/count` - standard method is `count`
- `/api/users/:id/projects` - related model method is `__get__projects`
- `/api/users/:id/projects/count` - related model method is `__count__projects`

To configure access control to such routes, set the permission on the related model methods in the model definition JSON file. For example, the ACL for the User model definition JSON file (`user.json`) for these routes might look like this, for example:

### /common/models/user.json

```
"acls": [{
  "principalType": "ROLE",
  "principalId": "$authenticated",
  "permission": "ALLOW",
  "property": "count"
},
{
  "principalType": "ROLE",
  "principalId": "$owner",
  "permission": "ALLOW",
  "property": "__get__projects"
},
{
  "principalType": "ROLE",
  "principalId": "$authenticated",
  "permission": "ALLOW",
  "property": "__count__projects"
}]
```

## Querying related models



This feature requires LoopBack 2.16.0 or later.

When querying a model, you may also want to return data from its related models.

For example, suppose you have three models: `User`, `Report`, and `LineItem`, where:

- A user can have many reports; that is, there is a [HasMany relation](#) between `User` and `Report` (User hasMany Report).
- A report can have many line items; that is, there is a [HasMany relation](#) between `Report` and `LineItem` (Report hasMany LineItem).

Additionally, the `ReportModel` is configured with the following ACLs so that authenticated users can create new records and users can update their own records:

```
[
  {
    "principalType": "ROLE",
    "principalId": "$everyone",
    "permission": "DENY"
  },
  {
    "principalType": "ROLE",
    "principalId": "$owner",
    "permission": "ALLOW",
    "property": "findById"
  },
  ...
]
```

Assume the `LineItem` model has the same ACL defined.

Now, suppose you want to fetch a model owned by your user and also get at its related models. Here is how you do it with `findById()` using the Node API:



```
Report.findById({
  id:1,
  filter:{ include:'lineitems' }
});
```

Using the REST API:

```
GET /api/Reports/110?filter={"include":["lineItems"]}
```

Example results:

```
{
  "name": "january report - bob",
  "id": 110,
  "userId": 100,
  "lineItemModels": [
    {
      "name": "lunch",
      "id": 111,
      "reportModelId": 110
    },
    {
      "name": "dinner",
      "id": 112,
      "reportModelId": 110
    }
  ]
}
```

## Creating a default admin user

LoopBack does not define a default administrator user, however you can define one when the application starts, as illustrated in the [loopback-example-access-control](#) example. Specifically, the example includes code in `server/boot/sample-models.js` that:

- Creates several users, along with instances of other models
- Defines relations among the models.
- Defines an admin role,
- Adds a role mapping to assign one of the users to the admin role.

Because this script is in `server/boot`, it is executed when the application starts up, so the admin user will always exist once the app initializes.

The following code creates three users named "John," "Jane," and "Bob, then (skipping the code that creates projects, project owners, and project team members) defines an "admin" role, and makes Bob an admin:

### /server/boot/script.js

```
User.create([
  {username: 'John', email: 'john@doe.com', password: 'opensesame'},
  {username: 'Jane', email: 'jane@doe.com', password: 'opensesame'},
  {username: 'Bob', email: 'bob@projects.com', password: 'opensesame'}
], function(err, users) {
  if (err) return debug('%j', err);
  ...
  // Create projects, assign project owners and project team members
  ...
  // Create the admin role
  Role.create({
    name: 'admin'
  }, function(err, role) {
    if (err) return debug(err);
    debug(role);

    // Make Bob an admin
    role.principals.create({
      principalType: RoleMapping.USER,
      principalId: users[2].id
    }, function(err, principal) {
      if (err) return debug(err);
      debug(principal);
    });
  });
});
```

The project model JSON (created by running `slc loopback:acl`, the [ACL generator](#)) file specifies that the admin role has unrestricted access to view projects (`GET /api/projects`):

### /common/models/model.json

```
...
{
  "accessType": "READ",
  "principalType": "ROLE",
  "principalId": "admin",
  "permission": "ALLOW",
  "property": "find"
},
...
```

## Security considerations

- [Model REST APIs](#)
  - [Hiding properties](#)
  - [Disabling API Explorer](#)
- [CORS](#)
- [Mitigating XSS exploits](#)

### Model REST APIs

By default, LoopBack models you create expose a [standard set of HTTP endpoints](#) for create, read, update, and delete (CRUD) operations. The `public` property in `model-config.json` specifies whether to expose the model's REST APIs, for example:

#### **/server/model-config.json**

```
...
  "MyModel": {
    "public": true,
    "dataSource": "db"
  },
  ...
```

To "hide" the model's REST API, simply change `public` to `false`.

### **Hiding properties**

To hide a property of a model exposed over REST, define a hidden property. See [Model definition JSON file \(Hidden properties\)](#).

### **Disabling API Explorer**

LoopBack [API Explorer](#) is great when you're developing your application, but for security reasons you may not want to expose it in production. To disable API Explorer entirely, if you created your application with the [Application generator](#), simply delete or rename `server/boot/explorer.js`.

### **CORS**

By default LoopBack enables [Cross-origin resource sharing](#) (CORS) using the `cors` package. Change the CORS settings in `middleware.json`.

If you are using a JavaScript client, you must also enable CORS on the client side. For example, one way to enable it with AngularJS is:

#### **/client/app.js**

```
var myApp = angular.module('myApp', [
  'myAppApiService']);

myApp.config(['$httpProvider', function($httpProvider) {
  $httpProvider.defaults.useXDomain = true;
  delete $httpProvider.defaults.headers.common['X-Requested-With'];
}]);
```

### **Mitigating XSS exploits**

LoopBack stores the user's access token in a JavaScript object, which may make it susceptible to a cross-site scripting (XSS) security exploit. As a best practice to mitigate such threats, use appropriate Express middleware, for example:

- [Lusca](#)
- [Helmet](#)

See also:

- [Express 3.x `csrf\(\)` function](#).
- [Cookies vs Tokens. Getting auth right with AngularJS](#)

# Tutorial: access control



This article is reproduced from [loopback-example-access-control](#)

## loopback-example-access-control

```
$ git clone https://github.com/strongloop/loopback-example-access-control
$ cd loopback-example-access-control
$ npm install
$ node .
```

In this example, we create “Startkicker” (a basic Kickstarter-like application) to demonstrate authentication and authorization mechanisms in LoopBack. The application consists of four types of users:

- [guest](#)
- [owner](#)
- [team member](#)
- [administrator](#)

Each user type has permission to perform tasks based on their role and the application’s ACL (access control list) entries.

## Prerequisites

### Tutorials

- [Getting started with LoopBack](#)
- [Tutorial series - step 1](#)
- [Tutorial series - step 2](#)
- [Tutorial series - step 3](#)

### Knowledge

- [EJS](#)
- [body-parser](#)
- [JSON](#)
- [LoopBack models](#)
- [LoopBack adding application logic](#)

## Procedure

### Create the application

#### ***Application information***

- Name: `loopback-example-access-control`
- Directory to contain the project: `loopback-example-access-control`

```
$ slc loopback loopback-example-access-control
... # follow the prompts
$ cd loopback-example-access-control
```

### Add the models

## Model information

- Name: `user`
- Datasource: `db (memory)`
- Base class: `User`
- Expose via REST: `No`
- Custom plural form: *Leave blank*
- Properties
  - *None*
- Name: `team`
- Datasource: `db (memory)`
- Base class: `PersistedModel`
- Expose via REST: `No`
- Custom plural form: *Leave blank*
- Properties
  - `ownerId`
  - `Number`
  - `Not required`
  - `memberId`
  - `Number`
  - `Required`
- Name: `project`
- Datasource: `db (memory)`
- Base class: `PersistedModel`
- Expose via REST: `Yes`
- Custom plural form: *Leave blank*
- Properties
  - `name`
  - `String`
  - `Not required`
  - `balance`
  - `Number`
  - `Not required`

*No properties are required for the `user` model because we inherit them from the built-in `User` model by specifying it as the base class.*

```
$ slc loopback:model user
... # follow the prompts, repeat for `team` and `project`
```

## Define the remote methods

Define three remote methods in `project.js`:

- `listProjects`
- `donate`
- `withdraw`

## Create the model relations

### Model relation information

- `user`
- has many
  - `project`
  - Property name for the relation: `projects`
  - Custom foreign key: `ownerId`
  - Require a through model: `No`
  - `team`
  - Property name for the relation: `teams`
  - Custom foreign key: `ownerId`
  - Require a through model: `No`
- `team`
- has many

- user
- Property name for the relation: members
- Custom foreign key: memberId
- Require a through model: No
- project
- belongs to
  - user
  - Property name for the relation: user
  - Custom foreign key: ownerId

## Add model instances

Create a boot script named `sample-models.js`.

This script does the following:

- Creates 3 users (John, Jane, and Bob)
- Creates project 1, sets John as the owner, and adds John and Jane as team members
- Creates project 2, sets Jane as the owner and solo team member
- Creates a role named admin and adds a role mapping to make Bob an admin

## Configure server-side views

*LoopBack comes preconfigured with EJS out-of-box. This means we can use server-side templating by simply setting the proper view engine and a directory to store the views.*

Create a `views` directory to store server-side templates.

```
$ mkdir server/views
```

Add server-side templating configurations to `server.js`.

Create `index.ejs` in the views directory.

Configure `server.js` to use server-side templating. Remember to import the `path` package.

## Add routes

Create `routes.js`. This script does the following:

- Sets the GET `/` route to render `index.ejs`
- Sets the GET `/projects` route to render `projects.ejs`
- Sets the POST `/projects` route to render `projects.ejs` when credentials are valid and renders `index.ejs` when credentials are invalid
- Sets the GET `/logout` route to log the user out

*When you log in successfully, `projects.html` is rendered with the authenticated user's access token embedded into each link.*

## Create the views

Create the `views` directory to store views.

In this directory, create `index.ejs` and `projects.ejs`.

## Create a role resolver

Create `role-resolver.js`.

*This file checks if the context relates to the project model and if the request maps to a user. If these two requirements are not met, the request is denied. Otherwise, we check to see if the user is a team member and process the request accordingly.*

## Create ACL entries

*ACLs are used to restrict access to application REST endpoints.*

### ACL information

- Deny access to all project REST endpoints
- Select the model to apply the ACL entry to: (all existing models)
- Select the ACL scope: All methods and properties
- Select the access type: All (match all types)
- Select the role: All users
- Select the permission to apply: Explicitly deny access
- Allow unrestricted access to GET /api/projects/listProjects
- Select the model to apply the ACL entry to: project
- Select the ACL scope: A single method
- Enter the method name: listProjects
- Select the role: All users
- Select the permission to apply: Explicitly grant access
- Only allow admin unrestricted access to GET /api/projects
- Select the model to apply the ACL entry to: project
- Select the ACL scope: A single method
- Enter the method name: find
- Select the role: other
- Enter the role name: admin
- Select the permission to apply: Explicitly grant access
- Only allow team members access to GET /api/projects/:id
- Select the model to apply the ACL entry to: project
- Select the ACL scope: A single method
- Enter the method name: findById
- Select the role: other
- Enter the role name: teamMember
- Select the permission to apply: Explicitly grant access
- Allow authenticated users to access POST /api/projects/donate
- Select the model to apply the ACL entry to: project
- Select the ACL scope: A single method
- Enter the method name: donate
- Select the role: Any authenticated user
- Select the permission to apply: Explicitly grant access
- Allow owners access to POST /api/projects/withdraw
- Select the model to apply the ACL entry to: project
- Select the ACL scope: A single method
- Enter the method name: withdraw
- Select the role: The user owning the object
- Select the permission to apply: Explicitly grant access

```
$ slc loopback:acl
# follow the prompts, repeat for each ACL listed above
```

## Try the application

Start the server (`node .`) and open `localhost:3000` in your browser to view the app. You will see logins and explanations related to each user type we created:

- Guest Guest
- Role = \$everyone, \$unauthenticated
- Has access to the “List projects” function, but none of the others

- John Project owner
  - Role = \$everyone, \$authenticated, teamMember, \$owner
  - Can access all functions except “View all projects”
  - Jane Project team member
  - Role = \$everyone, \$authenticated, teamMember
  - Can access all functions except “View all projects” and “Withdraw”
  - Bob Administrator
  - Role = \$everyone, \$authenticated, admin
  - Can access all functions except “Withdraw”
- 

- [Next tutorial](#)
- [All tutorials](#)

## Advanced topics: access control

- [Manually enabling access control](#)
- [Defining access control at runtime](#)
  - [Using DataSource createModel\(\) method](#)
  - [Using the ACL create\(\) method](#)
- [Architecture](#)

### Manually enabling access control

If you created your app with `slc loopback`, then you don't need to do anything to enable access control.

Otherwise, if you're adding access control manually, you must call the LoopBack `enableAuth()` method, for example:

```
/server/server.js
```

```
var loopback = require('loopback');
var app = loopback();
app.enableAuth();
```

### Defining access control at runtime

In some applications, you may need to make changes to ACL definitions at runtime. There are two ways to do this:

- Call the DataSource method `createModel()`, providing an ACL specification (in LDL) as an argument.
- The `ACL.create()` method. You can apply this at run-time.

#### Using DataSource `createModel()` method

You can also control access to a model by passing an LDL specification when creating the model with the data source `createModel()` method.



### /server/boot/script.js

```
var Customer = loopback.createModel('Customer', {
  name: {
    type: String,
    // Property level ACLs
    acls: [
      {principalType: ACL.USER, principalId: 'u001', accessType: ACL.WRITE,
permission: ACL.DENY},
      {principalType: ACL.USER, principalId: 'u001', accessType: ACL.ALL,
permission: ACL.ALLOW}
    ]
  }, {
    // By default, access will be denied if no matching ACL entry is found
    defaultPermission: ACL.DENY,
    // Model level ACLs
    acls: [
      {principalType: ACL.USER, principalId: 'u001', accessType: ACL.ALL,
permission: ACL.ALLOW}
    ]
  }
});
```

For more information on LDL, see [LoopBack Definition Language \(LDL\)](#).

### Using the ACL create() method

ACLs defined as part of the model creation are hard-coded into your application. LoopBack also allows you dynamically defines ACLs through code or a dashboard. The ACLs can be saved to and loaded from a database.

### /server/boot/script.js

```
ACL.create({principalType: ACL.USER, principalId: 'u001', model: 'User', property:
ACL.ALL,
  accessType: ACL.ALL, permission: ACL.ALLOW}, function (err, acl) {...});

ACL.create({principalType: ACL.USER, principalId: 'u001', model: 'User', property:
ACL.ALL,
  accessType: ACL.READ, permission: ACL.DENY}, function (err, acl) {...});
```

See [Using built-in models](#) for more information.

## Architecture

The following diagram illustrates the architecture of the LoopBack access control system.

## Defining models



### Prerequisites

- Install [StrongLoop](#) software.
- Read [LoopBack core concepts](#) first.
- Follow [Getting started with LoopBack](#) for a basic introduction to LoopBack.

A *LoopBack model* represents data in backend systems such as databases, and by default has both Node and REST APIs. Additionally, you can add functionality such as validation rules and business logic to models.

Every LoopBack application has a set of predefined [built-in models](#) such as User, Role, and Application. You can [extend built-in models](#) to suit your application's needs.

Additionally, you can [define your own custom models](#) specific to your application:

- Use the `slc loopback:model` [model generator](#) to create custom models from scratch. This creates a [Model definition JSON file](#) that defines your model in LoopBack.
- Use `Datasource.buildModelFromInstance()` to create *dynamic* schema-less models for data sources such as SOAP and REST services. See [Creating models from unstructured data](#) for more information.
- For data sources backed by a relational database, a model typically corresponds to a table. Use [model discovery](#) to create *static*, schema-driven models for database-backed data sources. See [Discovering models from relational databases](#) for more information.

## Creating models

- [Overview](#)
- [Getting a reference to a model in JavaScript](#)
  - [In model JavaScript file](#)
  - [In a boot script](#)

### Overview

You can create LoopBack models in various ways, depending on what kind of data source the model is based on. You can create models:

- [With the model generator](#), `slc loopback:model`.
- [From an existing relational database](#) using *model discovery*. Then you can keep your model synchronized with the database using LoopBack's [schema / model synchronization API](#).
- [By instance introspection](#) for free-form data in NoSQL databases or REST APIs.

All three of these methods create a [Model definition JSON file](#) that defines your model in LoopBack, by convention in a LoopBack project's `common/models` directory; for example, `common/models/Account.json`.

You can also create and customize models programmatically using the [LoopBack API](#), or by manually editing the [Model definition JSON file](#). In most cases, you shouldn't need to use those techniques to create models, but generally will to customize models for your use.

### Getting a reference to a model in JavaScript

The way that you get a reference (or "handle") to a model in JavaScript code depends on where the code is.

#### In model JavaScript file

In the model JavaScript file (for example) the model is passed into the top-level function, so the model object is available directly; for example:

**/common/models/model.js**

```
module.exports = function(Customer) {  
  Customer.create( ... ); // Customer object is available  
  ...  
}
```



#### Promises

LoopBack also supports [Promises](#) in addition to callbacks for CRUD methods of a model and its related models.

#### In a boot script

In a boot script, use the `app.models` object to get a reference to any model; for example:

### /server/boot/script.js

```
module.exports = function(app) {  
  var User = app.models.user;  
  var Role = app.models.Role;  
  var RoleMapping = app.models.RoleMapping;  
  var Team = app.models.Team;  
  ...  
}
```

## Using the model generator

- [Overview](#)
- [Basic use](#)
  - [Adding default values](#)



If you already have a back-end schema (like a database), create models based on it using LoopBack's discovery feature. See [Discovering models from relational databases](#).

### Overview

The easiest way to create a new model is with `slc loopback:model`, the [model generator](#). When creating a new model, the generator will prompt you for the properties in the model. Subsequently, you can add more properties to it using the [Property generator](#).

When you create a model (for example, called "myModel"), the tool:

- Creates `/common/models/myModel.json`, the [Model definition JSON file](#).
- Creates `/common/models/myModel.js`, where you can extend the model programmatically; for example to add remote methods. See [Adding application logic](#) for more information.
- Adds an entry to `/server/model-config.json` for the model, specifying the model's data source. See [model-config.json](#) for more information.

Once you've created your model, you may want to read:

- [Customizing models](#)
- [Attaching models to data sources](#)
- [Exposing models over REST](#)

### Basic use

Use the LoopBack [model generator](#) to create a new model. In your application root directory, enter the command (for example, to create a "books" model):

```
$ slc loopback:model book
```

Then `slc` will prompt you to:

- Choose the data source to which the model will connect. By default, there will be only the in-memory data source (named "db"). When you create additional data sources with `slc loopback:datasource`, the [data source generator](#), they will be listed as options.
- Choose the model's base class, from a list of [built-in models](#) classes and existing custom models in the application.



In general, use `PersistedModel` as the base model when you want to store your data in a database using a connector such as MySQL or MongoDB. Use `Model` as the base for models that don't have CRUD semantics, for example, using connectors such as SOAP and REST.

- Choose whether to expose the model over REST; the default is yes.
- Enter a custom plural form; the default is to use standard plural (for example, "books").
- Add properties to the model; for each property it will prompt you for:

- Name of the property
- Type of the property; see [LoopBack types](#). This sets the `type` property in the [model definition JSON file](#).
- Whether the property is required. This sets the `required` property in the [model definition JSON file](#).

## Adding properties

After you create a model, you can add more properties with the [property generator](#).

```
$ slc loopback:property
```

Then `slc` will prompt you to choose the model to which you want to add the property, along with the other property settings (as before). Then, `slc` will modify the [model definition JSON file](#) accordingly.

### Adding default values

One way to set a default value for a property is to set the "default" property in the models JSON file. You can also set the `defaultFn` property to set the default value to a globally-unique identifier (GUID) or the timestamp.

For more information, see the model JSON file [General property properties](#) section.

## Discovering models from relational databases

- [Overview](#)
  - [Basic procedure](#)
- [Example discovery](#)
- [Additional discovery functions](#)

### Overview

LoopBack makes it simple to create models from an existing relational database. This process is called *discovery* and is supported by the following connectors:

- [MySQL connector](#)
- [PostgreSQL connector](#)
- [Oracle connector](#)
- [SQL Server connector](#)

For NoSQL databases such as MongoDB, use [instance introspection](#) instead.

Data sources connected to relational databases automatically get the asynchronous [Database discovery API](#).



The StrongLoop Arc graphical tool enables you to perform discovery without coding. See [Discovering models from a database](#) for more information.

### Basic procedure

Follow these basic steps:

1. Use a script such as that below to discover the schema.
2. Use `fs.writeFile()` to save the output in `common/models/model-name.json`.
3. Add the new model entry to `server/model-config.json`.
4. Run the app:

```
$ node .
```

5. Use LoopBack Explorer to verify the schema is defined properly.

### Example discovery

For example, consider an Oracle database. First, the code sets up the Oracle data source. Then the call to `discoverAndBuildModels()` creates models from the database tables. Calling it with the `associations: true` option makes the discovery follow primary/foreign key relations.

### /server/bin/script.js

```
var loopback = require('loopback');
var ds = loopback.createDataSource('oracle', {
  "host": "oracle-demo.strongloop.com",
  "port": 1521,
  "database": "XE",
  "username": "demo",
  "password": "L00pBack"
});

// Discover and build models from INVENTORY table
ds.discoverAndBuildModels('INVENTORY', {visited: {}, associations: true},
function (err, models) {
  // Now we have a list of models keyed by the model name
  // Find the first record from the inventory
  models.Inventory.findOne({}, function (err, inv) {
    if(err) {
      console.error(err);
      return;
    }
    console.log("\nInventory: ", inv);
    // Navigate to the product model
    inv.product(function (err, prod) {
      console.log("\nProduct: ", prod);
      console.log("\n ----- ");
    });
  });
});
```

### Additional discovery functions

Some connectors provide discovery capability so that we can use DataSource to discover model definitions from existing database schema. The following APIs enable UI or code to discover database schema definitions that can be used to build LoopBack models.

## /server/bin/script.js

```
// List database tables and/or views
ds.discoverModelDefinitions({views: true, limit: 20}, cb);

// List database columns for a given table/view
ds.discoverModelProperties('PRODUCT', cb);
ds.discoverModelProperties('INVENTORY_VIEW', {owner: 'STRONGLOOP'}, cb);

// List primary keys for a given table
ds.discoverPrimaryKeys('INVENTORY', cb);

// List foreign keys for a given table
ds.discoverForeignKeys('INVENTORY', cb);

// List foreign keys that reference the primary key of the given table
ds.discoverExportedForeignKeys('PRODUCT', cb);

// Create a model definition by discovering the given table
ds.discoverSchema(table, {owner: 'STRONGLOOP'}, cb);
```

## Database discovery API

- [Overview](#)
  - [Synchronous methods](#)
- [Methods](#)
  - [discoverAndBuildModels](#)
  - [discoverModelDefinitions](#)
  - [discoverModelProperties](#)
  - [discoverPrimaryKeys](#)
  - [discoverForeignKeys](#)
  - [discoverExportedForeignKeys](#)
  - [discoverSchemas](#)
- [Example of building models via discovery](#)

See also: [API reference documentation for loopback-datasource-juggler](#).

### Overview

LoopBack provides a unified API to discover model definition information from relational databases. The same discovery API is available when using any of these connectors:

- **Oracle:** [loopback-connector-oracle](#)
- **MySQL:** [loopback-connector-mysql](#)
- **PostgreSQL:** [loopback-connector-postgresql](#)
- **SQL Server:** [loopback-connector-mssql](#)

### Synchronous methods

The methods described below are asynchronous. For Oracle, there are also corresponding synchronous methods that accomplish the same things and return the same results:

- `discoverModelDefinitionsSync(options)`
- `discoverModelPropertiesSync(table, options)`
- `discoverPrimaryKeysSync(table, options)`
- `discoverForeignKeysSync(table, options)`
- `discoverExportedForeignKeysSync(table, options)`

Note there are performance implications in using synchronous methods.

### Methods



In general, *schema/owner* is the name of the table schema. It's a namespace that contains a list of tables. Each database uses slightly different terminology:

- MySQL: databases and schemas are exactly the same thing.
- Oracle: the schema is the user/owner.
- PostgreSQL: a database contains one or more named schemas, which in turn contain tables. The schema defaults to "public".
- MS SQL Server: the schema defaults to "dbo".

## discoverAndBuildModels

Discover and build models from the specified owner/modelName.

```
dataSource.discoverAndBuildModels(modelName [, options] [, cb])
```

### Arguments

Name	Type	Description
modelName	String	The model name.
[options]	Object	Options; see below.
[cb]	Function	The callback function

### Options

Name	Type	Description
owner / schema	String	Database owner or schema name.
relations	Boolean	True if relations (primary key/foreign key) are navigated; false otherwise.
all	Boolean	True if all owners are included; false otherwise.
views	Boolean	True if views are included; false otherwise.

## discoverModelDefinitions

Call `discoverModelDefinitions()` to discover model definitions (table or collection names), based on tables or collections in a data source. This method returns list of table/view names.

```
discoverModelDefinitions(options, cb)
```

### Parameters

Parameter	Description
options	Object with properties described below.
cb	Get a list of table/view names; see example below.

### Options

Property	Type	Description
all	Boolean	If true, include tables/views from all schemas/owners
owner/schema	String	Schema/owner name

views	Boolean	If true, include views.
-------	---------	-------------------------

Example of callback function return value:

```
{type: 'table', name: 'INVENTORY', owner: 'STRONGLOOP' }
{type: 'table', name: 'LOCATION', owner: 'STRONGLOOP' }
{type: 'view', name: 'INVENTORY_VIEW', owner: 'STRONGLOOP' }
```

### Example

For example:

```
datasource.discoverModelDefinitions(function (err, models) {
  models.forEach(function (def) {
    // def.name ~ the model name
    datasource.discoverSchema(def.name, null, function (err, schema) {
      console.log(schema);
    });
  });
});
```

### discoverModelProperties

Call `discoverModelProperties()` to discover metadata on columns (properties) of a database table. This method returns column information for a given table/view.

```
discoverModelProperties(table, options, cb)
```

Parameter	Description
table	The name of a table or view
options	Options object that can have only the "owner/schema" property to specify the owner or schema name.
cb	Callback function to return a list of model property definitions; see example below.

Example return value of callback function:

```
{ owner: 'STRONGLOOP',
  tableName: 'PRODUCT',
  columnName: 'ID',
  dataType: 'VARCHAR2',
  dataLength: 20,
  nullable: 'N',
  type: 'String' }
{ owner: 'STRONGLOOP',
  tableName: 'PRODUCT',
  columnName: 'NAME',
  dataType: 'VARCHAR2',
  dataLength: 64,
  nullable: 'Y',
  type: 'String' }
```

### discoverPrimaryKeys

Call `discoverPrimaryKeys()` to discover primary key definitions in a database.



```
discoverPrimaryKeys(table, options, cb)
```

Parameter	Description
table	The name of a table or view
options	Options object that can have only the "owner/schema" property to specify the owner or schema name.
cb	Callback function to return a list of model property definitions; see example below.

Example return value of callback function:

```
{
  { owner: 'STRONGLOOP',
    tableName: 'INVENTORY',
    columnName: 'PRODUCT_ID',
    keySeq: 1,
    pkName: 'ID_PK' },
  { owner: 'STRONGLOOP',
    tableName: 'INVENTORY',
    columnName: 'LOCATION_ID',
    keySeq: 2,
    pkName: 'ID_PK' },
  ...
}
```

#### discoverForeignKeys

Call `discoverForeignKeys()` to discover foreign key definitions from a database.

```
discoverForeignKeys(table, options, cb)
```

Parameter	Description
table	The name of a table or view
options	Options object that can have only the "owner/schema" property to specify the owner or schema name.
cb	Callback function to return a list of model property definitions; see example below.

Example return value of callback function:

```
{ fkOwner: 'STRONGLOOP',
  fkName: 'PRODUCT_FK',
  fkTableName: 'INVENTORY',
  fkColumnName: 'PRODUCT_ID',
  keySeq: 1,
  pkOwner: 'STRONGLOOP',
  pkName: 'PRODUCT_PK',
  pkTableName: 'PRODUCT',
  pkColumnName: 'ID' }
```

#### discoverExportedForeignKeys

Call `discoverExportedForeignKeys()` to discover foreign key definitions that are exported from a database.

```
discoverExportedForeignKeys(table, options, cb)
```

Parameter	Description
table	The name of a table or view
options	Options object that can have only the "owner/schema" property to specify the owner or schema name.
cb	Callback function to return a list of model property definitions; see example below.

Example return value of callback function:

```
{ fkName: 'PRODUCT_FK',
  fkOwner: 'STRONGLOOP',
  fkTableName: 'INVENTORY',
  fkColumnName: 'PRODUCT_ID',
  keySeq: 1,
  pkName: 'PRODUCT_PK',
  pkOwner: 'STRONGLOOP',
  pkTableName: 'PRODUCT',
  pkColumnName: 'ID' }
```

### discoverSchemas

Use `discoverSchema` to discover LDL models from a database. Starting with one table/view, if the `relations` option is set to true, it follows foreign keys to discover related models.

```
discoverSchema(modelName [, options] [, cb])
```

Properties of options parameter:

Property	Type	Description
modelName	String	Name of model to define
options	Object	
cb	Function	Callback function

### Options

Name	Type	Description
owner / schema	String	Database owner or schema name.
relations	Boolean	If true, the function will follow foreign key relations to discover related tables.
all	Boolean	True to include all owners; false otherwise.
views	Boolean	True to include views; false otherwise.

### Example

**/server/script.js**

```
dataSource.discoverSchema('INVENTORY', {owner: 'STRONGLOOP'}, function (err, schema) {
  ...
})
```

The result is shown below.



**The result below is an example for MySQL** that contains MySQL-specific properties in addition to the regular LDL model options and

properties. The 'mysql' objects contain the MySQL-specific mappings. For other databases, the key 'mysql' would be replaced by the database type, for example 'oracle', and the data type mappings would be different.

#### /common/models/model.json

```
{
  "name": "Inventory",
  "options": {
    "idInjection": false,
    "mysql": {
      "schema": "STRONGLOOP",
      "table": "INVENTORY"
    }
  },
  "properties": {
    "productId": {
      "type": "String",
      "required": false,
      "length": 60,
      "precision": null,
      "scale": null,
      "id": 1,
      "mysql": {
        "columnName": "PRODUCT_ID",
        "dataType": "varchar",
        "dataLength": 60,
        "dataPrecision": null,
        "dataScale": null,
        "nullable": "NO"
      }
    },
    "locationId": {
      "type": "String",
      "required": false,
      "length": 60,
      "precision": null,
      "scale": null,
      "id": 2,
      "mysql": {
        "columnName": "LOCATION_ID",
        "dataType": "varchar",
        "dataLength": 60,
        "dataPrecision": null,
        "dataScale": null,
        "nullable": "NO"
      }
    },
    "available": {
      "type": "Number",
      "required": false,
      "length": null,
      "precision": 10,
      "scale": 0,
      "mysql": {
        "columnName": "AVAILABLE",
        "dataType": "int",
        "dataLength": null,
        "dataPrecision": 10,

```

```
        "dataScale":0,
        "nullable":"YES"
    }
},
"total":{
    "type":"Number",
    "required":false,
    "length":null,
    "precision":10,
    "scale":0,
    "mysql":{
        "columnName":"TOTAL",
        "dataType":"int",
        "dataLength":null,
        "dataPrecision":10,
        "dataScale":0,
        "nullable":"YES"
    }
}
```

```
}  
}  
}
```

### Example of building models via discovery

The following example uses `discoverAndBuildModels()` to discover, build and try the models.

Note that the string arguments to this function are **case-sensitive**; specifically the table name (in the example below, 'account') and the owner (schema) name (in the example below, 'demo').

#### /server/script.js

```
dataSource.discoverAndBuildModels('account', {owner: 'demo'}, function (err, models) {  
  models.Account.find(function (err, act) {  
    if (err) {  
      console.error(err);  
    } else {  
      console.log(act);  
    }  
    dataSource.disconnect();  
  });  
});
```

## Creating models from unstructured data

For unstructured data such as that in NoSQL databases and REST services, you can create models using *instance introspection*. Instance introspection creates a model from a single model instance using `buildModelFromInstance()`.

The following data sources support instance introspection:

- [MongoDB data sources](#)
- [REST data sources](#)
- [SOAP data sources](#)

For example:

### /server/boot/script.js

```
module.exports = function(app) {
  var db = app.dataSources.db;

  // Instance JSON document
  var user = {
    name: 'Joe',
    age: 30,
    birthday: new Date(),
    vip: true,
    address: {
      street: '1 Main St',
      city: 'San Jose',
      state: 'CA',
      zipcode: '95131',
      country: 'US'
    },
    friends: ['John', 'Mary'],
    emails: [
      {label: 'work', id: 'x@sample.com'},
      {label: 'home', id: 'x@home.com'}
    ],
    tags: []
  };

  // Create a model from the user instance
  var User = db.buildModelFromInstance('User', user, {idInjection: true});

  // Use the model for CRUD
  var obj = new User(user);

  console.log(obj.toObject());

  User.create(user, function (err, u1) {
    console.log('Created: ', u1.toObject());
    User.findById(u1.id, function (err, u2) {
      console.log('Found: ', u2.toObject());
    });
  });
};
```


## Customizing models

Once you've created a model with the [model generator](#) (`slc loopback:model`), you can start customizing it. You can customize it using `slc`, by editing the [Model definition JSON file](#), and by adding JavaScript code.

- [Customizing a model with `slc`](#)
- [Customizing a model using JSON](#)
  - [Extending another model](#)
  - [Customizing other model settings](#)
- [Customizing a model with JavaScript code](#)
  - [Change the implementation of built-in methods](#)
    - [Via server boot script](#)

- [Via your model's script](#)

## Customizing a model with slc

 Once you've created a model with the [model generator](#) (`slc loopback:model`), you can't modify the model with the model generator. However, you can customize the model to some degree with other `slc loopback` generators; see below.

You can use `slc` to customize a model after you initially create it; specifically, you can:

- Use `slc loopback:property` to add a property to the model. See [Property generator](#) for more information.
- Use `slc loopback:relation` to add [add relations between models](#). See [Relation generator](#) for more information.
- Use `slc loopback:acl` to add [access control](#) to the model. See [ACL generator](#) for more information.

## Customizing a model using JSON

You can customize a number of aspects of a model by simply editing the [model definition JSON file](#) in `common/models` (for example, `customer.json`), which by default looks like this:


### `common/models/model.json`

```
{
  "name": "myModel",
  "base": "PersistedModel",
  "properties": {
    // Properties listed here depend on your responses to the CLI
  },
  "validations": [],
  "relations": {},
  "acls": [],
  "methods": []
}
```

LoopBack *adds* the settings in the the model JSON file to those of the base model. In most cases, this is straightforward, but for ACL settings there can be complex interactions since some ACL settings take precedence over others. For more information, see [ACL rule precedence](#) for more information.

## Extending another model

You can make a model extend or "inherit from" an existing model, either one of the built-in models such as `User`, or a custom model you've defined in your application. To do this with the [model generator](#) (`slc loopback:model` command), simply choose the desired model when you're prompted to "Select model's base class." Alternatively, you can edit the [Model definition JSON file](#) and set the "base" property to the name of the model you want to extend.

 In general, use `PersistedModel` as the base model when you want to store your data in a database using a connector such as MySQL or MongoDB. Use `Model` as the base for models that don't have CRUD semantics, for example, using connectors such as SOAP and REST.

For example, here is an excerpt from the `customer.json` file from [loopback-example-app](#) that extends the built-in `User` model to define a new `Customer` model:

#### /common/models/model.json

```
{  
  
  "name": "Customer",  
  "base": "User",  
  "idInjection": false,  
  ...  
}
```

In general, you can extend any model this way, not just the built-in models.



Currently you cannot modify a built-in model's required properties. If you need to do this, then create your own custom model as a replacement instead.

You can create custom models that extend from a single base custom model. For example, to define a model called `MyModel` that extends from a custom model you defined called `MyBaseModel`, create `MyModel` using `slc loopback:model`, then edit the JSON file `common/models/MyModel.json` as follows:

#### /common/models/model.json

```
{  
  "name": "Example",  
  "base": "MyBaseModel",  
}
```

You can add new properties when you extend a model, for example:

#### /common/models/model.json

```
{  
  "name": "Customer",  
  "base": "User",  
  "properties": {  
    "favoriteMovie": {  
      "type": "string"  
    }  
  }  
}
```

See [LoopBack types](#) for information on data types supported.

### Customizing other model settings

Here are some of the most important settings you can customize:

- **plural** - set to a custom string value to use, instead of the default standard plural form.
- **strict** - set to true to make the model save only instances that have the predefined set of properties. Any additional properties in a save or update operation are not persisted to the data source. False by default.
- **idInjection** - Whether to automatically add an id property to the model. True by default.
- **http.path** - customized HTTP path of REST endpoints.

See [Model definition JSON file](#) for more information.

### Customizing a model with JavaScript code



The basic way to extend a model programmatically is to edit the model's JavaScript file in the `common/models/` directory. For example, a "customer" model will have a `common/models/customer.js` file (if you create the model using `slc loopback:model`, the [model generator](#)). The script is executed immediately after the model is defined. Treat the script as part of the model definition; use it for model configuration and registration. You could also add model relationships, complex validations, or default functions for certain properties: Basically, anything you cannot do in JSON. However, note that at this point the script doesn't have access to the app instance.

You can also extend a model by adding a [remote method](#) or a [model hook](#).

If you don't want to expose the method over REST, then just omit the `remoteMethod()` call.

See [Adding application logic](#) for more information on customizing a model using JavaScript. See [LoopBack types](#) for information on data types supported.

## Change the implementation of built-in methods

### ***Via server boot script***

When you attach a model to a persistent data source, it becomes a *persisted model* that extends [PersistedModel](#), and LoopBack automatically adds a set of built-in methods for CRUD operations. In some cases, you might want to change the implementation; use a JavaScript file in the `/server/boot` directory to do this. For example, the following code shows how to reimplement `Note.find()` to override the built-in `find()` method

#### ***/server/boot/script.js***

```
module.exports = function(app) {
  var Note = app.models.Note;
  var find = Note.find;
  var cache = {};

  Note.find = function(filter, cb) {
    var key = '';
    if(filter) {
      key = JSON.stringify(filter);
    }
    var cachedResults = cache[key];
    if(cachedResults) {
      console.log('serving from cache');
      process.nextTick(function() {
        cb(null, cachedResults);
      });
    } else {
      console.log('serving from db');
      find.call(Note, function(err, results) {
        if(!err) {
          cache[key] = results;
        }
        cb(err, results);
      });
    }
  }
}
```

### ***Via your model's script***

Use a JavaScript file in the `common/models` directory to do this

### common/models/MyModel.js

```
module.exports = function(MyModel) {
  MyModel.on('dataSourceAttached', function(obj){
    var find = MyModel.find;
    MyModel.find = function(filter, cb) {
      return find.apply(this, arguments);
    };
  });
};
```

#### References:

- <https://github.com/strongloop/loopback/issues/443>
- <https://github.com/strongloop/loopback-datasource-juggler/issues/427>
- <https://github.com/strongloop/loopback/issues/1077>

## Attaching models to data sources

- [Overview](#)
- [Add a data source](#)
- [Add data source credentials](#)
- [Make the model use the data source](#)

### Overview

A data source enables a model to access and modify data in backend system such as a relational database. Data sources encapsulate business logic to exchange data between models and various back-end systems such as relational databases, REST APIs, SOAP web services, storage services, and so on. Data sources generally provide create, retrieve, update, and delete (CRUD) functions.

Models access data sources through *connectors* that are extensible and customizable. In general, application code does not use a connector directly. Rather, the `DataSource` class provides an API to configure the underlying connector.

By default, `slic` creates and uses the [memory connector](#), which is suitable for development. To use a different data source:

1. Use `slic loopback:datasource` to create the new data source and add it to the application's `datasources.json`.
2. Edit `datasources.json` to add the appropriate credentials for the data source.
3. Create a model to connect to the data source or modify an existing model definition to use the connector.

### Add a data source

To add a new data source, use the [Data source generator](#):

#### shell

```
$ slic loopback:datasource
```

It will prompt you for the name of the new data source and the connector to use; for example, MySQL, Oracle, REST, and so on. The tool will then add an entry such as the following to `datasources.json`:

#### /server/datasources.json

```
...
"corp1": {
  "name": "corp1",
  "connector": "mysql"
}
...
```

This example creates a MySQL data source called "corp1". The identifier determines the name by which you refer to the data source and can be any string.

### Add data source credentials

Edit `datasources.json` to add the necessary authentication credentials for the data source; typically hostname, username, password, and database name. For example:

#### /server/datasources.json

```
"corp1": {
  "name": "corp1",
  "connector": "mysql",
  "host": "your-mysql-server.foo.com",
  "user": "db-username",
  "password": "db-password",
  "database": "your-db-name"
}
```

### Make the model use the data source

When you create a new model with the [model generator](#), you can specify the data source you want it to use from among those you've added to the application using the [Data source generator](#) and the default `db` data source (that uses the [memory connector](#)).

To change the data source a model uses after you've created the model, edit the application's `server/model-config.json` and set the `dataSource` property for the model. For example, to make `myModel` use the `corp1` data source:

#### server/model-config.json

```
"myModel": {
  "dataSource": "corp1",
  "public": true
}
```

By default, the model generator creates models to use the `db` data source.

## Exposing models over REST

- [Overview](#)
  - [REST paths](#)
  - [Using the REST Router](#)
  - [Request format](#)
    - [Passing JSON object or array using HTTP query string](#)
  - [Response format](#)
  - [Disabling API Explorer](#)
- [Predefined remote methods](#)
- [Exposing and hiding models, methods, and endpoints](#)

- [Hiding methods and REST endpoints](#)
- [Hiding endpoints for related models](#)
- [Hiding properties](#)

## Overview

LoopBack models automatically have a [standard set of HTTP endpoints](#) that provide REST APIs for create, read, update, and delete (CRUD) operations on model data. The `public` property in `model-config.json` specifies whether to expose the model's REST APIs, for example:

### /server/model-config.json

```
...
  "MyModel": {
    "public": true,
    "dataSource": "db"
  },
  ...
```

To "hide" the model's REST API, simply change `public` to `false`.

## REST paths

By default, the REST APIs are mounted to the plural of the model name; specifically:

- `Model.settings.http.path`
- `Model.settings.plural`, if defined in `models.json`; see [Project layout reference](#) for more information.
- Automatically-pluralized model name (the default). For example, if you have a location model, by default it is mounted to `/locations`.

## Using the REST Router

By default, scaffolded applications expose models over REST using the `loopback.rest` router.



If your application is scaffolded using `slc loopback`, LoopBack will automatically set up REST middleware and register public models. You don't need to do anything additional.

To manually expose a model over REST with the `loopback.rest` router, use the following code, for example:

### /server/server.js

```
var app = loopback();
app.use(loopback.rest());

// Expose the `Product` model
app.model(Product);
```

After this, the `Product` model will have create, read, update, and delete (CRUD) functions working remotely from mobile. At this point, the model is schema-less and the data are not checked.

You can then view generated REST documentation at <http://localhost:3000/explorer>.

LoopBack provides a number of [Built-in models](#) that have REST APIs. See [Built-in models REST API](#) for more information.

## Request format

For POST and PUT requests, the request body can be JSON, XML or urlencoded format, with the Content-Type header set to `application/json`, `application/xml`, or `application/x-www-form-urlencoded`. The Accept header indicates its preference for the response format.

The following is an example HTTP request to create a new note:

```

POST /api/Notes HTTP/1.1
Host: localhost:3000
Connection: keep-alive
Content-Length: 61
Accept: application/json
Content-Type: application/json

{
  "title": "MyNote",
  "content": "This is my first note"
}

```

### Passing JSON object or array using HTTP query string

Some REST APIs take a JSON object or array from the query string. LoopBack supports two styles to encode the object/array value as query parameters.

- The syntax from [node-querystring \(qs\)](#)
- Stringified JSON

For example,

```

http://localhost:3000/api/users?filter[where][username]=john&filter[where][email]=callback@strongloop.com
http://localhost:3000/api/users?filter={"where":{"username":"john","email":"callback@strongloop.com"}}

```

The table below illustrates how to encode the JSON object/array can be encoded in different styles:

JSON object/array for the filter object	qs style	Stringified JSON
<pre>{ where: { username: 'john',   email: 'callback@strongloop.com' } }</pre>	<pre>?filter[where][username]=john &amp; filter[where][email]=callback@strongloop.com</pre>	<pre>?filter={"where": {"username":"john", "email":"callback@strongloop.com"}}</pre>
<pre>{ where: { username: {inq: ['john', 'mary']}} } }</pre>	<pre>?filter[where][username][inq][0]=john &amp;filter[where][username][inq][1]=mary</pre>	<pre>?filter= {"where": {"username":{"inq":["john", "mary"]}}</pre>
<pre>{ include: ['a', 'b'] }</pre>	<pre>?filter[include]=a&amp;filter[include]=b</pre>	<pre>?filter={"include": ["a","b"]}</pre>

### Response format

The response format for all requests is typically a JSON object/array or XML in the body and a set of headers. Some responses have an empty body. For example,

```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Access-Control-Allow-Origin: http://localhost:3000
Access-Control-Allow-Credentials: true
Content-Type: application/json; charset=utf-8
Content-Length: 59
Vary: Accept-Encoding
Date: Fri, 24 Oct 2014 18:02:34 GMT
Connection: keep-alive

{"title":"MyNote","content":"This is my first note","id":1}
```

The HTTP status code indicates whether a request succeeded:

- Status code 2xx indicates success
- Status code 4xx indicates request related issues.
- Status code 5xx indicates server-side problems

The response for an error is in the following JSON format:

- message: String error message.
- stack: String stack trace.
- statusCode: Integer [HTTP status code](#).

For example,

```
{
  "error": {
    "message": "could not find a model with id 1",
    "stack": "Error: could not find a model with id 1\n ...",
    "statusCode": 404
  }
}
```

## Disabling API Explorer

LoopBack [API Explorer](#) is great when you're developing your application, but for security reasons you may not want to expose it in production. To disable API Explorer entirely, if you created your application with the [Application generator](#), simply delete or rename `server/boot/explorer.js`.

## Predefined remote methods

By default, for a model backed by a data source that supports it, LoopBack exposes a REST API that provides all the standard create, read, update, and delete (CRUD) operations.

As an example, consider a simple model called `Location` (that provides business locations) to illustrate the REST API exposed by LoopBack. LoopBack automatically creates a number of Node methods with corresponding REST endpoints, including:

Model (Node) API	HTTP Method	Example Path
<code>create()</code>	POST	<code>/locations</code>
<code>upsert()</code>	PUT	<code>/locations</code>
<code>exists()</code>	GET	<code>/locations/:id/exists</code>
<code>findById()</code>	GET	<code>/locations/:id</code>
<code>find()</code>	GET	<code>/locations</code>
<code>findOne()</code>	GET	<code>/locations/findOne</code>
<code>destroyById()</code> or <code>deleteById()</code>	DELETE	<code>/locations/:id</code>

<code>count()</code>	GET	<code>/locations/count</code>
<code>prototype.updateAttributes()</code>	PUT	<code>/locations/:id</code>
<code>createChangeStream()</code>	POST	<code>/locations/change-stream</code>
<code>updateAll()</code>	POST	<code>/locations/update</code>



The above table provides a partial list of methods and REST endpoints. See the [API documentation](#) for a complete list of all the Node API methods. See [PersistedModel REST API](#) for details on the REST API.

## Exposing and hiding models, methods, and endpoints

To expose a model over REST, set the `public` property to `true` in `/server/model-config.json`:

```
...
  "Role": {
    "dataSource": "db",
    "public": false
  },
  ...
```

### Hiding methods and REST endpoints

If you don't want to expose certain CRUD operations, you can easily hide them by calling `disableRemoteMethod()` on the model. For example, following the previous example, by convention custom model code would go in the file `common/models/location.js`. You would add the following lines to "hide" one of the predefined remote methods:

#### **common/models/location.js**

```
var isStatic = true;
MyModel.disableRemoteMethod('deleteById', isStatic);
```

Now the `deleteById()` operation and the corresponding REST endpoint will not be publicly available.

For a method on the prototype object, such as `updateAttributes()`:

#### **common/models/location.js**

```
var isStatic = false;
MyModel.disableRemoteMethod('updateAttributes', isStatic);
```

### Hiding endpoints for related models

To disable a REST endpoints for related model methods, use `disableRemoteMethod()`.



For more information, see [Accessing related models](#).

For example, if there are `post` and `tag` models, where a `post` has many `tags`, add the following code to `/common/models/post.js` to disable the remote methods for the related model and the corresponding REST endpoints:

### common/models/model.js

```
module.exports = function(Post) {  
  Post.disableRemoteMethod('__get__tags', false);  
  Post.disableRemoteMethod('__create__tags', false);  
  Post.disableRemoteMethod('__destroyById__accessTokens', false); // DELETE  
  Post.disableRemoteMethod('__updateById__accessTokens', false); // PUT  
};
```

## Hiding properties

To hide a property of a model exposed over REST, define a hidden property. See [Model definition JSON file \(Hidden properties\)](#).

## Validating model data

A *schema* imposes restrictions on the model, to ensure (for example) that the model will save data that matches the corresponding database table.

A model can validate data before passing it on to a data store such as a database to ensure that it conforms to the backend schema.

- [Adding a schema to a model](#)
- [Using validation methods](#)
- [Localizing validation messages](#)

## Adding a schema to a model

One way to validate data is to create a model schema; LoopBack will then ensure that data conforms to that schema definition.

For example, suppose your app has a product model. The following code defines a schema and assigns it to the product model. The schema defines two properties: name, a required string property and price, an optional number property.

### common/models/product.js

```
var productSchema = {  
  "name": { "type": "string", "required": true },  
  "price": "number"  
};  
var Product = Model.extend('product', productSchema);
```

If a client tries to save a product with extra properties (for example, *description*), those properties are removed before the app saves the data in the model. Also, since *name* is a required value, the model will *only* be saved if the product contains a value for the *name* property.

## Using validation methods

Every model attached to a persistent data source has validations methods mixed in from [Validatable](#).

Method	Description
<a href="#">validatesAbsenceOf</a>	Validate absence of one or more specified properties. A model should not include a property to be considered valid; fails when validated field not blank.
<a href="#">validatesExclusionOf</a>	Validate exclusion. Require a property value not be in the specified array.
<a href="#">validatesFormatOf</a>	Validate format. Require a model to include a property that matches the given format.
<a href="#">validatesInclusionOf</a>	Validate inclusion in set. Require a value for property to be in the specified array.



<a href="#">validatesLengthOf</a>	<p>Validate length. Require a property length to be within a specified range. Three kinds of validations: "min," "max," and "is." Default error messages are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• min: too short</li> <li>• max: too long</li> <li>• is: length is wrong</li> </ul>
<a href="#">validatesNumericalityOf</a>	<p>Validate numericality. Requires a value for property to be either an integer or number.</p>
<a href="#">validatesPresenceOf</a>	<p>Validate presence of one or more specified properties. Requires a model to include a property to be considered valid; fails when validated field is blank.</p>
<a href="#">validatesUniquenessOf</a>	<p>Validate uniqueness. Ensure the value of the property is unique for the model. Not available for all connectors. Currently supported with these connectors:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In Memory</li> <li>• Oracle</li> <li>• MongoDB</li> </ul>

Use these methods to perform specific data validation; for example:

#### common/models/user.js

```
module.exports = function(user) {
  user.validatesPresenceOf('name', 'email')
  user.validatesLengthOf('password', {min: 5, message: {min: 'Password is too short'}});
  user.validatesInclusionOf('gender', {in: ['male', 'female']});
  user.validatesExclusionOf('domain', {in: ['www', 'billing', 'admin']});
  user.validatesNumericalityOf('age', {int: true});
  user.validatesUniquenessOf('email', {message: 'email is not unique'});
}
```



The validation methods are invoked when you call the `isValid()` method on a model instance, and automatically each time model instance is created or updated. You don't have to call `isValid()` to validate data.

To enforce validation constraints when calling `upsert()`, ensure that `validateUpsert` option is set to `true` in the [model definition JSON file](#). By default, the [model generator](#) sets this property to `true`.

To invoke the validation constraints explicitly, call `isValid()`; for example:

```
user.isValid(function (valid) {
  if (!valid) {
    user.errors // hash of errors {attr: [errmessage, errmessage, ...], attr: ...}
  }
})
```

Another example of defining validation constraints, this time using a regular expression:

#### common/models/user.js

```
var re =
/^(("[^<>()[\]\\. ,;:\s@" ]+)|(\.[^<>()[\]\\. ,;:\s@" ]+)*)(("[^<>()[\]\\. ,;:\s@" ]+)|(\.[^<>()[\]\\. ,;:\s@" ]+)*))@((\[[0-9]{1,3}\.[0-9]{1,3}\.[0-9]{1,3}\.[0-9]{1,3}\)|((\b[a-zA-Z-0-9]+\b)+[a-zA-Z]{2,}))$)/;

UserModel.validatesFormatOf('email', {with: re, message: 'Must provide a valid email'});

if (!(UserModel.settings.realmRequired || UserModel.settings.realmDelimiter)) {
  UserModel.validatesUniquenessOf('email', {message: 'Email already exists'});
  UserModel.validatesUniquenessOf('username', {message: 'User already exists'});
}
```

To add validation to model for creating a new model instance, you *do not* need to call `isValid()`. You can add validation by simply adding the validator calls:

#### common/models/MyModel.js

```
module.exports = function(MyModel) {
  MyModel.validatesLengthOf('name', { min: 5, message: { min: 'Name should be 5+ characters' } });
  ...
};
```

Use `isValid()` as an additional *ad-hoc* way to check validity. You can also call `validate()` or `validateAsync()` with custom validation functions.

## Localizing validation messages

Rather than modifying the error responses returned by the server, you can localize the error message on the client. The validation error response contains error codes in `error.details.codes`, which enables clients to map errors to localized messages.

Here is an example error response:

## error.details.codes

```
{
  "name": "ValidationError",
  "status": 422,
  "message": "The Model instance is not valid. See error object `details` property for more info.",
  "statusCode": 422,
  "details": {
    "context": "user",
    "codes": {
      "password": [
        "presence"
      ],
      "email": [
        "uniqueness"
      ]
    },
    "messages": {
      "password": [
        "can't be blank"
      ],
      "email": [
        "Email already exists"
      ]
    }
  }
}
```

## Creating model relations

- [Overview of model relations](#)
- [Relation options](#)
  - [Scope](#)
  - [Properties](#)
  - [invertProperties](#)
  - [Custom scope methods](#)
- [Exposing REST APIs for related models](#)

### Related articles

- [Creating models](#)
- [Customizing models](#)
- [Creating model relations](#)
- [Querying data](#)
- [Model definition JSON file](#)
- [PersistedModel REST API](#)

## Overview of model relations

Individual models are easy to understand and work with. But in reality, models are often connected or related. When you build a real-world application with multiple models, you'll typically need to define *relations* between models. For example:

- A customer has many orders and each order is owned by a customer.
- A user can be assigned to one or more roles and a role can have zero or more users.
- A physician takes care of many patients through appointments. A patient can see many physicians too.

With connected models, LoopBack exposes as a set of APIs to interact with each of the model instances and query and filter the information based on the client's needs.

You can define the following relations between models:

- [BelongsTo relations](#)
- [HasMany relations](#)
- [HasManyThrough relations](#)
- [HasAndBelongsToMany relations](#)
- [Polymorphic relations](#)
- [Embedded relations](#) (embedsOne and embedsMany)

You can define models relations in JSON in the [Model definition JSON file](#) file or in JavaScript code. The end result is the same.

When you define a relation for a model, LoopBack adds a set of methods to the model, as detailed in the article on each type of relation.

## Relation options

There are three options for most relation types:

- Scope
- Properties
- Custom scope methods

### Scope

The scope property can be an object or function, and applies to all filtering/conditions on the related scope.

The object or returned object (in case of the function call) can have all the usual filter options: `where`, `order`, `include`, `limit`, `offset`, ...

These options are merged into the default filter, which means that the `where` part will be AND-ed. The other options usually override the defaults (standard mergeQuery behavior).

When scope is a function, it will receive the current instance, as well as the default filter object.

For example:

```
// only allow products of type: 'shoe', always include products
Category.hasMany(Product,
  { as: 'shoes',
    scope: { where: { type: 'shoe' },
      include: 'products'
    }
});
Product.hasMany(Image,
  { scope: function(inst, filter) {
    return { type: inst.type };
  }
}); // inst is a category - match category type with product type.
```

### Properties

You can specify the `properties` option in two ways:

- As an object: the keys refer to the instance, the value will be the attribute key on the related model (mapping)
- As a function: the resulting object (key/values) are merged into the related model directly.

For example, the following relation transfers the type to the product, and de-normalizes the category name into `categoryName` on creation:

```
Category.hasMany(Product,
  { as: 'shoes',
    properties: { type: 'type', category: 'categoryName' }
});
```

To accomplish the same thing with a callback function:

```
Product.hasMany(Image,
  { properties: function(inst) { // inst is a category
    return { type: inst.type, categoryName: inst.name };
  }
});
```

### invertProperties

Normally, `properties` are transferred from parent to child, but there are cases where it makes sense to do the opposite. To enable this, use the `invertProperties` option. See an example in [Embedded models \(embed with belongsTo\)](#).

## Custom scope methods

Finally, you can add custom scope methods using the `scopeMethods` property. Again, the option can be either an object or a function (advanced use).



By default custom scope methods are not exposed as remote methods; You must set `functionName.shared = true`.

For example:

```
var reorderFn = function(ids, cb) {
  console.log(this.name); // `this` refers to the RelationDefinition - `images`
  (relation name)
  // Do some reordering here & save cb(null, [3, 2, 1]); };
  // Manually declare remotizing params
  reorderFn.shared = true;
  reorderFn.accepts = { arg: 'ids', type: 'array', http: { source: 'body' } };
  reorderFn.returns = { arg: 'ids', type: 'array', root: true };
  reorderFn.http = { verb: 'put', path: '/images/reorder' };
  Product.hasMany(Image, { scopeMethods: { reorder: reorderFn } });
}
```

## Exposing REST APIs for related models

The following example demonstrates how to access connected models via REST APIs.

### /server/script.js

```
var db = loopback.createDataSource({connector: 'memory'});
Customer = db.createModel('customer', {
  name: String,
  age: Number
});
Review = db.createModel('review', {
  product: String,
  star: Number
});
Order = db.createModel('order', {
  description: String,
  total: Number
});

Customer.scope("youngFolks", {where: {age: {lte: 22}}});
Review.belongsTo(Customer, {foreignKey: 'authorId', as: 'author'});
Customer.hasMany(Review, {foreignKey: 'authorId', as: 'reviews'});
Customer.hasMany(Order, {foreignKey: 'customerId', as: 'orders'});
Order.belongsTo(Customer, {foreignKey: 'customerId'});
```

The code is available at <https://github.com/strongloop/loopback-example-relations-basic>.

If you run the example application, the REST API is available at <http://localhost:3000/api>. The home page at <http://0.0.0.0:3000/> contains the links shown below. Here are the example endpoints and queries:

Endpoint	Description
----------	-------------

/api/customers	List all customers
/api/customers?filter[fields][0]=name	List all customers with the name property only
/api/customers/1	Return customer record for id of 1
/api/customers/youngFolks	List a predefined scope 'youngFolks'
/api/customers/1/reviews	List all reviews posted by a given customer
/api/customers/1/orders	List all orders placed by a given customer
/api/customers?filter[include]=reviews	List all customers including their reviews
/api/customers?filter[include][reviews]=author	List all customers including their reviews which also includes the author
/api/customers?filter[include][reviews]=author&filter[where][age]=21	List all customers whose age is 21, including their reviews which also includes the author
/api/customers?filter[include][reviews]=author&filter[limit]=2	List first two customers including their reviews which also includes the author
/api/customers?filter[include]=reviews&filter[include]=orders	List all customers including their reviews and orders

## Tutorial: model relations

Follow this tutorial to create a web application ([loopback-example-relations](#)) that demonstrates LoopBack model relations. The application's main page consists of links to query and filter data through an exposed REST API.

- [Create application](#)
- [Create models](#)
- [Create the front-end](#)
- [Add sample data](#)
- [Create model relations](#)
- [Try the API](#)

### Create application

Begin by scaffolding the application with `slc loopback`:

```
$ slc loopback
```

You'll see:

```
...
[?] Enter a directory name where to create the project: (.)
```

Enter **loopback-example-relation** as the project name (referred to as the *project root* henceforth). Finish the creation process by following the prompts.

### Create models

You'll use an in-memory database to hold data. [Create a model](#) named `Customer` as follows:

```
$ cd loopback-example-relation
$ slc loopback:model Customer
```

You'll see:

```
[?] Enter the model name: Customer
[?] Select the data-source to attach Customer to: db (memory)
[?] Expose Customer via the REST API? Yes
[?] Custom plural form (used to build REST URL):
Let's add some Customer properties now.
```

Enter an empty property name when done.

```
[?] Property name: name
    invoke    loopback:property
[?] Property type: string
[?] Required? No
```

Let's add another Customer property.

Enter an empty property name when done.

```
[?] Property name: age
    invoke    loopback:property
[?] Property type: number
[?] Required? No
```

Let's add another Customer property.

Enter an empty property name when done.

```
[?] Property name: #leave blank, press enter
```

Follow the prompts to finish creating the model. Repeat for `Review` and `Order` using the following properties:

- `Review`
  - `product`: String
  - `star`: Number
- `Order`
  - `description`: String
  - `total`: Number



You'll see new files `customer.json`, `order.json`, and `review.json` in `/common/models` when you're done.

## Create the front-end

Now create a front-end to make it easier to analyze the data. Install [Embedded JavaScript \(EJS\)](#), by running the following command from the project root:

```
$ npm install --save ejs
```

Then configure the application [view engine](#) by modifying `server/server.js` as follows:

```
...
// -- Mount static files here--
...
app.set('view engine', 'html');
app.engine('html', require('ejs').renderFile);
app.set('json spaces', 2); //pretty print results for easier viewing later
...
```

Next, modify `server/boot/root.js` as follows:

```
module.exports = function(server) {  
  var router = server.loopback.Router();  
  router.get('/', function(req, res) {  
    res.render('index');  
  });  
  server.use(router);  
};
```

Finally, create the `views` directory by running:

```
$ mkdir -p server/views
```

Inside the `views` directory, create `index.html` with the following contents:



› Expand

source

```
<DOCTYPE html>
<html>
  <head>
    <title>loopback-example-relation</title>
  </head>
  <body>
    <h1>loopback-example-relation</h1>
    <p>
      <a href="/explorer">API Explorer</a>
    </p>
    <h2>API</h2>
    <ul>
      <li><a href='/api/customers'>/api/customers</a>
      <li><a
href='/api/customers?filter[fields][name]=true'>/api/customers?filter[fields][name]=true</a>
      <li><a href='/api/customers/1'>/api/customers/1</a>
      <li><a href='/api/customers/youngFolks'>/api/customers/youngFolks</a>
      <li><a href='/api/customers/1/reviews'>/api/customers/1/reviews</a>
      <li><a href='/api/customers/1/orders'>/api/customers/1/orders</a>
      <li><a
href='/api/customers?filter[include]=reviews'>/api/customers?filter[include]=reviews</a>
      <li><a
href='/api/customers?filter[include][reviews]=author'>/api/customers?filter[include][reviews]=author</a>
      <li><a
href='/api/customers?filter[include][reviews]=author&filter[where][age]=21'>/api/customers?filter[include][reviews]=author&filter[where][age]=21</a>
      <li><a
href='/api/customers?filter[include][reviews]=author&filter[limit]=2'>/api/customers?filter[include][reviews]=author&filter[limit]=2</a>
      <li><a
href='/api/customers?filter[include]=reviews&filter[include]=orders'>/api/customers?filter[include]=reviews&filter[include]=orders</a>
    </ul>
  </body>
</html>
```

View what you have so far by entering this command:

```
$ cd loopback-example-relation
$ node .
```

Browse to [localhost:3000](http://localhost:3000) to see the home page. Then click on [API Explorer](#) and you'll see the models you created.



You may notice some of the API endpoints return empty arrays or errors, because the database is empty. In addition, you need to define model relations for some of the API endpoints to work. Don't fret, you'll get to that very soon!

### Add sample data

In `server/boot`, create a script named `create-customers.js` with the following contents:

```

var customers = [
  {name: 'Customer A', age: 21},
  {name: 'Customer B', age: 22},
  {name: 'Customer C', age: 23},
  {name: 'Customer D', age: 24},
  {name: 'Customer E', age: 25}
];

module.exports = function(server) {
  var dataSource = server.dataSources.db;
  dataSource.automigrate('Customer', function(er) {
    if (er) throw er;
    var Model = server.models.Customer;
    //create sample data
    var count = customers.length;
    customers.forEach(function(customer) {
      Model.create(customer, function(er, result) {
        if (er) return;
        console.log('Record created:', result);
        count--;
        if (count === 0) {
          console.log('done');
          dataSource.disconnect();
        }
      });
    });
    //define a custom scope
    Model.scope('youngFolks', {where: {age: {lte: 22 }}});
  });
};

```

Create two more scripts, [create-reviews.js](#) and [create-orders.js](#) in `server/boot`. This sample data will be automatically loaded when you start the application.



`automigrate()` recreates the database table/index if it already exists. In other words, existing tables will be dropped and ALL EXISTING DATA WILL BE LOST. For more information, see [Creating a database schema from models](#). Note also that `Model.scope()` is only in `create-customers.js`.

## Create model relations

You're going to create four relations between the models you just created. The relations will describe that:

- A customer has many reviews (Customer *hasMany* Review).
- A customer has many orders (Customer *hasMany* Order).
- A review belongs to a customer (Review *belongsTo* Customer).
- An order belongs to a customer (Order *belongsTo* Customer).

From the project root, enter the command:

```
$ slc loopback:relation
```

Follow the prompts and create the following relationships:

Customer - *hasMany* Review

- property name for the relation: reviews
- custom foreign key: authorId

Customer - *hasMany* Order

- property name for the relation: orders
- custom foreign key: customerId

Review - *belongsTo* Customer

- property name for the relation: author
- custom foreign key: authorId

Order - *belongsTo* Customer



For any item without *property name for the relation* or *custom foreign key*, just use the defaults. LoopBack will [derive](#) these values automatically when you don't specify one.

When you're done, your `common/models/customer.json` should look like:

› Expand

source

```
{
  "name": "Customer",
  "base": "PersistedModel",
  "properties": {
    "name": {
      "type": "string"
    },
    "age": {
      "type": "number"
    }
  },
  "validations": [],
  "relations": {
    "reviews": {
      "type": "hasMany",
      "model": "Review",
      "foreignKey": "authorId"
    },
    "orders": {
      "type": "hasMany",
      "model": "Order",
      "foreignKey": "customerId"
    }
  },
  "acls": [],
  "methods": []
}
```

`common/models/reviews.json`

should look like:

› Expand

```
{
  "name": "Review",
  "base": "PersistedModel",
  "properties": {
    "product": {
      "type": "string"
    },
    "star": {
      "type": "number"
    }
  },
  "validations": [],
  "relations": {
    "author": {
      "type": "belongsTo",
      "model": "Customer",
      "foreignKey": "authorId"
    }
  },
  "acls": [],
  "methods": []
}
```

source

and common/models/order.json should look like:

› Expand

```
{
  "name": "Order",
  "base": "PersistedModel",
  "properties": {
    "description": {
      "type": "string"
    },
    "total": {
      "type": "number"
    }
  },
  "validations": [],
  "relations": {
    "customer": {
      "type": "belongsTo",
      "model": "Customer",
      "foreignKey": ""
    }
  },
  "acls": [],
  "methods": []
}
```

source

Try the API

Restart application and browse to [localhost:3000](http://localhost:3000). Try out the API with the models and relations you defined. The following table describes many of the API endpoints.

API Endpoint	Description
<a href="#">/api/customers</a>	List all customers
<a href="#">/api/customers?filter[fields][0]=name</a>	List all customers, but only return the name property for each result
<a href="#">/api/customers/1</a>	Look up a customer by ID
<a href="#">/api/customers/youngFolks</a>	List a predefined scope named <i>youngFolks</i>
<a href="#">/api/customers/1/reviews</a>	List all reviews posted by a given customer
<a href="#">/api/customers/1/orders</a>	List all orders placed by a given customer
<a href="#">/api/customers?filter[include]=reviews</a>	List all customers including their reviews
<a href="#">/api/customers?filter[include][reviews]=author</a>	List all customers including their reviews which also include the author
<a href="#">/api/customers?filter[include][reviews]=author&amp;filter[where][age]=21</a>	List all customers whose age is 21, including their reviews which also include the author
<a href="#">/api/customers?filter[include][reviews]=author&amp;filter[limit]=2</a>	List first two customers including their reviews which also include the author
<a href="#">/api/customers?filter[include]=reviews&amp;filter[include]=orders</a>	List all customers including their reviews and orders

## BelongsTo relations

- [Overview](#)
- [Defining a belongsTo relation](#)
- [Methods added to the model](#)

### Overview

A `belongsTo` relation sets up a one-to-one connection with another model, such that each instance of the declaring model "belongs to" one instance of the other model. For example, if your application includes customers and orders, and each order can be placed by exactly one customer.

The declaring model (Order) has a foreign key property that references the primary key property of the target model (Customer). If a primary key is not present, LoopBack will automatically add one.

### Defining a belongsTo relation

Use `slc loopback:relation` to create a relation between two models. The tool will prompt you to enter the name of the model, the name of related model, and other required information. The tool will then modify the [Model definition JSON file](#) (for example, `common/models/customer.json`) accordingly.

For more information, see [Relation generator](#).

For example, here is the model JSON file for the order model in [loopback-example-relations](#):

#### common/models/order.json

```
{
  "name": "Order",
  "base": "PersistedModel",
  ...
  "relations": {
    "customer": {
      "type": "belongsTo",
      "model": "Customer",
      "foreignKey": ""
    }
  },
  ...
}
```

Alternatively, you can define a “belongsTo” relation in code, though in general this is not recommended:

#### common/models/order.js

```
Order.belongsTo(Customer, {foreignKey: 'customerId'});
```

If the declaring model doesn't have a foreign key property, LoopBack will add a property with the same name. The type of the property will be the same as the type of the target model's **id** property.

If you don't specify them, then LoopBack derives the relation name and foreign key as follows:

- Relation name: Camel case of the model name, for example, for the "Customer" model the relation is "customer".
- Foreign key: The relation name appended with 'Id', for example, for relation name "customer" the default foreign key is "customerId".

#### Methods added to the model

Once you define the belongsTo relation, LoopBack automatically adds a method with the relation name to the declaring model class's prototype, for example: `Order.prototype.customer(...)`.

Depending on the arguments, the method can be used to get or set the owning model instance. The results of method calls are cached internally and available via later synchronous calls to the method.

Example method	Description
<pre>order.customer(function(err, customer) {   ... });</pre>	Get the customer for the order asynchronously
<pre>var customer = order.customer();</pre>	Synchronously get the results of a previous get call to customer(...)
<pre>order.customer(customer);</pre>	Set the customer for the order

## HasOne relations

- [Overview](#)
- [Defining a hasOne relation](#)
- [Methods added to the model](#)

### Overview

A hasOne relation sets up a one-to-one connection with another model, such that each instance of the declaring model "has one" instance of the other model. A hasOne relation is a degenerate case of a [hasMany relation](#).

## Defining a hasOne relation

Use `slc loopback:relation` to create a relation between two models. The tool will prompt you to enter the name of the model, the name of related model, and other required information. The tool will then modify the [Model definition JSON file](#) (for example, `common/models/customer.json`) accordingly.

For more information, see [Relation generator](#).

For example, consider two models: `supplier` and `account`.

### **common/models/supplier.json**

```
{
  "name": "supplier",
  "base": "PersistedModel",
  "idInjection": true,
  "properties": {
    "name": {
      "type": "string"
    }
  },
  "validations": [],
  "relations": {
    "supplier_acct": {
      "type": "hasOne",
      "model": "account",
      "foreignKey": "supplierId"
    }
  },
  "acls": [],
  "methods": []
}
```

A supplier has one account, where the foreign key is on the declaring model: `account.supplierId -> supplier.id`.

#### common/models/account.json

```
{
  "name": "account",
  "base": "PersistedModel",
  "idInjection": true,
  "properties": {
    "id": {
      "type": "number",
      "required": true
    },
    "acctmgr": {
      "type": "string"
    },
    "supplierId": {
      "type": "number",
      "required": true
    }
  },
  "validations": [],
  "relations": {},
  "acls": [],
  "methods": []
}
```

Alternatively, you can define a “hasOne” relation in code, though in general this is not recommended:

#### common/models/supplier.js

```
Supplier.hasOne(Account, {foreignKey: 'supplierId', as: 'account'});
```

If the target model doesn't have a foreign key property, LoopBack will add a property with the same name. The type of the property will be the same as the type of the target model's `id` property. Please note the foreign key property is defined on the target model (for example, `Account`).

If you don't specify them, then LoopBack derives the relation name and foreign key as follows:

- Relation name: Camel case of the model name, for example, for the "supplier" model the relation is "supplier".
- Foreign key: The relation name appended with 'Id', for example, for relation name "supplier" the default foreign key is "supplierId".

#### Methods added to the model

Once you define the `hasOne` relation, LoopBack automatically adds a method with the relation name to the declaring model class's prototype, for example: `supplier.prototype.account(...)`.

Example method	Description
<pre>supplier.account(function(err, account) {   ... });</pre>	Find the supplier's account model.
<pre>var supplier = supplier.account.build(data);</pre> <p>Or equivalently:</p> <pre>var account = new account({supplierId:   supplier.id, ...});</pre>	Build a new account for the supplier with the <code>supplierId</code> to be set to the <code>id</code> of the supplier. No persistence is involved.



<pre>supplier.account.create(data, function(err, account) {   ... });</pre> <p>Or, equivalently:</p> <pre>account.create({supplierId: supplier.id, ...}, function(err, account) {   ... });</pre>	Create a new account for the supplier. If there is already an account, an error will be reported.
<pre>supplier.account.destroy(function(err) {   ... });</pre>	Remove the account for the supplier.
<pre>supplier.account.update({balance: 100}, function(err, account) {   ... });</pre>	Update the associated account.

## HasMany relations

### Overview

A `hasMany` relation builds a one-to-many connection with another model. You'll often find this relation on the "other side" of a `belongsTo` relation. This relation indicates that each instance of the model has zero or more instances of another model. For example, in an application with customers and orders, a customer can have many orders, as illustrated in the diagram below.

The target model, **Order**, has a property, **customerId**, as the foreign key to reference the declaring model (Customer) primary key **id**.

### Defining a `hasMany` relation

Use `slc loopback:relation` to create a relation between two models. The tool will prompt you to enter the name of the model, the name of related model, and other required information. The tool will then modify the [Model definition JSON file](#) (for example, `common/models/customer.json`) accordingly.

For more information, see [Relation generator](#).

For example, here is the model JSON file for the customer model in [loopback-example-relations](#):

```
common/models/customer.json
{
  "name": "Customer",
  "base": "PersistedModel",
  ...
  "relations": {
    "reviews": {
      "type": "hasMany",
      "model": "Review",
      "foreignKey": "authorId"
    },
    ...
  }
}
```

Alternatively, you can define the relation in code, though in general this is not recommended:

### common/models/customer.js

```
Customer.hasMany(Review, {as: 'reviews', foreignKey: 'authorId'});
```

If not specified, LoopBack derives the relation name and foreign key as follows:

- **Relation name:** The plural form of the camel case of the model name; for example, for model name "Order" the relation name is "orders".
- **Foreign key:** The camel case of the declaring model name appended with 'Id', for example, for model name "Customer" the foreign key is "customerId".

### Methods added to the model

Once you define a "hasMany" relation, LoopBack adds a method with the relation name to the declaring model class's prototype automatically, for example: `Customer.prototype.orders(...)`.

Example method	Description
<pre>customer.orders([where], function(err, orders) {   ... });</pre>	Find orders for the customer by the filter
<pre>var order = customer.orders.build(data);  Or equivalently:  var order = new Order({customerId:   customer.id, ...});</pre>	Build a new order for the customer with the customerId to be set to the id of the customer. No persistence is involved.
<pre>customer.orders.create(data, function(err, order) {   ... });  Or, equivalently:  Order.create({customerId: customer.id, ...},   function(err, order) {     ...   });</pre>	Create a new order for the customer.
<pre>customer.orders.destroyAll(function(err) {   ... });</pre>	Remove all orders for the customer.
<pre>customer.orders.findById(orderId,   function(err, order) {     ...   });</pre>	Find an order by ID.
<pre>customer.orders.destroy(orderId,   function(err) {     ...   });</pre>	Delete an order by ID.

## HasManyThrough relations

- [Overview](#)
- [Defining a hasManyThrough relation](#)
  - [Defining the foreign key property](#)
  - [keyThrough in JSON](#)
  - [Self through](#)
- [Methods added to the model](#)

## Overview

A `hasManyThrough` relation sets up a many-to-many connection with another model. This relation indicates that the declaring model can be matched with zero or more instances of another model by proceeding through a third model. For example, in an application for a medical practice where patients make appointments to see physicians, the relevant relation declarations might be:

The “through” model, **Appointment**, has two foreign key properties, **physicianId** and **patientId**, that reference the primary keys in the declaring model, **Physician**, and the target model, **Patient**.

## Defining a `hasManyThrough` relation

Use `slc loopback:relation` to create a relation between two models. The tool will prompt you to enter the name of the model, the name of related model, and other required information. The tool will then modify the [Model definition JSON file](#) (for example, `common/models/customerr.json`) accordingly.

For more information, see [Relation generator](#).

To create a `hasManyThrough` relation, respond with **Yes** to the prompt for a “through” model, then specify the model:

```
[?] Require a through model? Yes
[?] Choose a through model: Appointment
```

For example:

```
common/models/physician.json
{
  "name": "Physician",
  "base": "PersistedModel",
  "properties": {
    "name": {
      "type": "string"
    }
  },
  "validations": [],
  "relations": {
    "patients": {
      "type": "hasMany",
      "model": "Patient",
      "foreignKey": "physicianId",
      "through": "Appointment"
    },
    ...
  }
}
```

### common/models/patient.json

```
{
  "name": "Patient",
  "base": "PersistedModel",
  "properties": {
    "name": {
      "type": "string"
    }
  },
  "validations": [],
  "relations": {
    "physicans": {
      "type": "hasMany",
      "model": "Physician",
      "foreignKey": "patientId",
      "through": "Appointment"
    },
  },
  ...
}
```

### common/models/appointment.json

```
{
  "name": "Appointment",
  "base": "PersistedModel",
  "properties": {
    "appointmentDate": {
      "type": "date"
    }
  },
  "validations": [],
  "relations": {
    "physician": {
      "type": "belongsTo",
      "model": "Physician",
      "foreignKey": "physicianId"
    },
    "patient": {
      "type": "belongsTo",
      "model": "Patient",
      "foreignKey": "patientId"
    },
  },
  ...
}
```

You can also define a `hasManyThrough` relation in code, though this is not generally recommended:

### common/models/physician.js

```
...
Appointment.belongsTo(Patient);
Appointment.belongsTo(Physician);

Physician.hasMany(Patient, {through: Appointment});
Patient.hasMany(Physician, {through: Appointment});
// Now the Physician model has a virtual property called patients:
Physician.patients(filter, callback); // Find patients for the physician
Physician.patients.build(data); // Build a new patient
Physician.patients.create(data, callback); // Create a new patient for the physician
Physician.patients.destroyAll(callback); // Remove all patients for the physician
Physician.patients.add(patient, callback); // Add an patient to the physician
Physician.patients.remove(patient, callback); // Remove an patient from the physician
Physician.patients.findById(patientId, callback); // Find an patient by id
```

### Defining the foreign key property

A `hasManyThrough` relation has a `keyThrough` property that indicates the foreign key property (field) name. If not specified, it defaults to the `toModelName` with `Id` appended; for example:

- `Physician.hasMany(Patient, {through: Appointment})` - `keyThrough` defaults to `patientId`.
- `Patient.hasMany(Physician, {through: Appointment})` - `keyThrough` defaults to `physicianId`.

The `keyThrough` properties above will be used to match these `foreignKeys` below:

```
Appointment.belongsTo(Physician, {as: 'foo', foreignKey: 'physicianId'});
Appointment.belongsTo(Patient, {as: 'bar', foreignKey: 'patientId'});
```

You can specify the `keyThrough` property explicitly:

```
Physician.hasMany(Patient, {through: Appointment, foreignKey: 'fooId', keyThrough:
'barId'});
Patient.hasMany(Physician, {through: Appointment, foreignKey: 'barId', keyThrough:
'fooId'});
// keyThroughs above will be used to match foreignKeys below
Appointment.belongsTo(Physician, {as: 'foo'}); // foreignKey defaults to 'fooId'
Appointment.belongsTo(Patient, {as: 'bar'}); // foreignKey defaults to 'barId'
```

### keyThrough in JSON

Here is an example of defining a `hasManyThrough` relation with foreign keys. Consider the following tables:

- `STUDENTS(ID,STUNAME)`: student information
- `COURSES(ID,COURNAME)`: course information
- `COURSTU(COURID,STUID)`: table with foreign keys that handle the many-to-many mapping

You can define the relations in JSON files in `common/models` as follows:

#### common/models/courses.json

```
...
"relations": {
  "students": {
    "type": "hasMany",
    "model": "Students",
    "foreignKey": "courid",
    "through": "Courstu",
    "keyThrough": "stuid"
  }
}
...
```

#### common/models/students.json

```
"relations": {
  "courses": {
    "type": "hasMany",
    "model": "Courses",
    "foreignKey": "stuid",
    "through": "Courstu",
    "keyThrough": "courid"
  }
}
```

### Self through

In some cases, you may want to define a relationship from a model to itself. For example, consider a social media application where users can follow other users. In this case, a user may follow many other users and may be followed by many other users. The code below shows how this might be defined, along with corresponding `keyThrough` properties:

#### common/models/user.js

```
User.hasMany(User, {as: 'followers', foreignKey: 'followeeId', keyThrough:
'followerId', through: Follow});
User.hasMany(User, {as: 'following', foreignKey: 'followerId', keyThrough:
'followeeId', through: Follow});
Follow.belongsTo(User, {as: 'follower'});
Follow.belongsTo(User, {as: 'followee'});
```

### Methods added to the model

Once you define a "hasManyThrough" relation, LoopBack adds methods with the relation name to the declaring model class's prototype automatically, for example: `physician.patients.create(...)`.

Example method	Description
<pre>physician.patients(filter, function(err, patients) {   ... });</pre>	Find patients for the physician.
<pre>var patient = physician.patients.build(data);</pre>	Create a new patient.

<code>physician.patients.create(data, function(err, patient) { ... });</code>	Create a new patient for the physician.
<code>physician.patients.destroyAll(function(err) { ... });</code>	Remove all patients for the physician
<code>physician.patients.add(patient, function(err, patient) { ... });</code>	Add a patient to the physician.
<code>physician.patients.remove(patient, function(err) { ... });</code>	Remove a patient from the physician.
<code>physician.patients.findById(patientId, function(err, patient) { ... });</code>	Find an patient by ID.

These relation methods provide an API for working with the related object (patient in the example above). However, they do not allow you to access both the related object (Patient) and the "through" record (Appointment) in a single call.

For example, if you want to add a new patient and create an appointment at a certain date, you have to make two calls (REST requests):

1. Create the patient via `Patient.create`

```
POST /patients
{
  "name": "Jane Smith"
}
```

2. Create the appointment via `Appointment.create`, setting the `patientId` property to the `id` returned by `Patient.create`.

```
POST /appointments
{
  "patientId": 1,
  "physicianId": 1,
  "appointmentDate": "2014-06-01"
}
```

The following query can be used to list all patients of a given physician, including their appointment date:

```
GET /appointments?filter={"include":["patient"],"where":{"physicianId":2}}
```

Sample response:

```
[
  {
    "appointmentDate": "2014-06-01",
    "id": 1,
    "patientId": 1,
    "physicianId": 1,
    "patient": {
      "name": "Jane Smith",
      "id": 1
    }
  }
]
```

## HasAndBelongsToMany relations

- [Overview](#)
- [Defining a hasAndBelongsToMany relation](#)
  - [Adding a relation via REST API](#)
- [Methods added to the model](#)

### Overview

A `hasAndBelongsToMany` relation creates a direct many-to-many connection with another model, with no intervening model. For example, in an application with assemblies and parts, where each assembly has many parts and each part appears in many assemblies, you could declare the models this way:

### Defining a `hasAndBelongsToMany` relation

Use `slc loopback:relation` to create a relation between two models. The tool will prompt you to enter the name of the model, the name of related model, and other required information. The tool will then modify the [Model definition JSON file](#) (for example, `common/models/customerr.json`) accordingly.

For more information, see [Relation generator](#).

For example, here is an excerpt from a model JSON file for a student model, expressing a `hasAndBelongsToMany` relation between student and class models:

#### **/common/models/student.json**

```
{
  "name": "Student",
  "plural": "Students",
  "relations": {
    "classes": {
      "type": "hasAndBelongsToMany",
      "model": "Class"
    },
    ...
  }
}
```

You can also define a `hasAndBelongsToMany` relation in code, though this is not recommended in general. For example:



### /common/models/student.js

```
Class.hasAndBelongsToMany(Student);
Student.hasAndBelongsToMany(Class);
```

### Adding a relation via REST API

When adding relation through the REST API, a join model must exist before adding relations. For Example in the above example with "Assembly" and "Part" models, to add an instance of "Part" to "Assembly" through the REST API interface an "AssemblyPart" model must exist for it to work.

Most of the time you should add "hasAndBelongsToMany" relations to models on server side using the method:

#### Example method

```
assembly.parts.add(part, function(err) {
  ...
});
```

Thus, if you need to add the relation using REST, first check if the "AssemblyPart" model exists first. Then add the relation using this code:

#### Rest Example Method

```
Assembly.Parts.link({id:assemblyId, fk: partId}, partInstance, function(value,
header) {
  //success
});
```

### Methods added to the model

Once you define a "hasAndBelongsToMany" relation, LoopBack adds methods with the relation name to the declaring model class's prototype automatically, for example: `assembly.parts.create(...)`.

Example method	Description
<pre>assembly.parts(filter, function(err, parts) {   ... });</pre>	Find parts for the assembly.
<pre>var part = assembly.parts.build(data);</pre>	Build a new part.
<pre>assembly.parts.create(data, function(err, part) {   ... });</pre>	Create a new part for the assembly.
<pre>assembly.parts.add(part, function(err) {   ... });</pre>	Add a part to the assembly.
<pre>assembly.parts.remove(part, function(err) {   ... });</pre>	Remove a part from the assembly.

<pre>assembly.parts.findById(partId, function(err, part) {   ... });</pre>	Find a part by ID.
<pre>assembly.parts.destroy(partId, function(err) {   ... });</pre>	Delete a part by ID.

## Polymorphic relations



This documentation is still a work in progress.

LoopBack supports *polymorphic relations* in which a model can belong to more than one other model, on a single association. For example, you might have a Picture model that belongs to either an Author model or a Reader model.

- [HasMany polymorphic relations](#)
- [BelongsTo polymorphic relations](#)
- [HasAndBelongsToMany polymorphic relations](#)
- [HasOne polymorphic relations](#)

The examples below use three example models: Picture, Author, and Reader, where a picture can belong to either an author or reader.

### HasMany polymorphic relations

The usual options apply, for example: as: 'photos' to specify a different relation name/accessor.

#### common/models/author.json

```
{
  "name": "Author",
  "base": "PersistedModel",
  ...
  "relations": {
    "pictures": {
      "type": "hasMany",
      "model": "Picture",
      { "polymorphic": "imageable" }
    }
  }
  ...
}
```

And:

#### common/models/reader.json

```
{
  "name": "Reader",
  "base": "PersistedModel",
  ...
  "relations": {
    "pictures": {
      "type": "hasMany",
      "model": "Picture",
      "polymorphic": {
        "as": "imageable",
        "foreignKey": "imageableId",
        "discriminator": "imageableType"
      }
    }
  }
}
```

Alternatively, you can define the relation in code:

#### common/models/author.js

```
Author.hasMany(Picture, { polymorphic: 'imageable' });
```

And:

#### common/models/reader.js

```
Reader.hasMany(Picture, { polymorphic: { // alternative syntax
  as: 'imageable', // if not set, default to: reference
  foreignKey: 'imageableId', // defaults to 'as + Id'
  discriminator: 'imageableType' // defaults to 'as + Type'
}
});
```

### BelongsTo polymorphic relations

Because you define the related model dynamically, you cannot declare it up front. So instead of passing in the related model (name), you specify the name of the polymorphic relation.

#### common/models/picture.json

```
{ "name": "Picture",
  "base": "PersistedModel",
  ...
  "relations": {
    "author": {
      "type": "belongsTo",
      "model": "Author",
      "polymorphic": {
        "foreignKey": "imageableId",
        "discriminator": "imageableType"
      }
    }
  },
  ...
}
```

Or, in code:

#### common/models/picture.js

```
Picture.belongsTo('imageable', { polymorphic: true });

// Alternatively, use an object for setup:

Picture.belongsTo('imageable', { polymorphic: {
  foreignKey: 'imageableId',
  discriminator: 'imageableType'
} });
```

### HasAndBelongsToMany polymorphic relations

This requires an explicit 'through' model, in this case: `PictureLink`

The relations `Picture.belongsTo(PictureLink)` and `Picture.belongsTo('imageable', { polymorphic: true });` will be setup automatically.

The same is true for the needed properties on `PictureLink`.

#### /common/models/model.js

```
Author.hasAndBelongsToMany(Picture, { through: PictureLink, polymorphic: 'imageable'
});
Reader.hasAndBelongsToMany(Picture, { through: PictureLink, polymorphic: 'imageable'
});

// Optionally, define inverse hasMany relations (invert: true):

Picture.hasMany(Author, { through: PictureLink, polymorphic: 'imageable', invert: true
});
Picture.hasMany(Reader, { through: PictureLink, polymorphic: 'imageable', invert: true
});
```

## HasOne polymorphic relations

As shown here, you can specify `as: 'avatar'` to explicitly set the name of the relation. If not set, it defaults to the polymorphic name.

### /common/models/model.js

```
Picture.belongsTo('imageable', { polymorphic: true });

Author.hasOne(Picture, { as: 'avatar', polymorphic: 'imageable' });
Reader.hasOne(Picture, { polymorphic: { as: 'imageable' } });
```

## Querying related models

- [Overview](#)
- [Inclusion](#)
- [Scope](#)
- [Using filters parameters with included relations](#)

See also [Relation REST API](#).

### Overview

A relation defines the connection between two models by connecting a foreign key property to a primary key property. For each relation type, LoopBack automatically mixes in helper methods to the model class to help navigate and associate the model instances to load or build a data graph.

Often, client applications want to select relevant data from the graph, for example to get user information and recently-placed orders. LoopBack provides a few ways to express such requirements in queries.

The [LoopBack Relations example](#) application provides some examples. For general information on queries, see [Querying data](#).

### Inclusion

To include related models in the response for a query, use the `'include'` property of the query object or use the `include()` method on the model class. The `'include'` can be a string, an array, or an object. For more information, see [Include filter](#).

The following examples illustrate valid formats.

Load all user posts with only one additional request:

### /server/script.js

```
User.find({include: 'posts'}, function() {
  ...
});
```

Or, equivalently:

### /server/script.js

```
User.find({include: ['posts']}, function() {
  ...
});
```

Load all user posts and orders with two additional requests:

### **/server/script.js**

```
User.find({include: ['posts', 'orders']}, function() {  
  ...  
});
```

Load all post owners (users), and all orders of each owner:

### **/server/script.js**

```
Post.find({include: {owner: 'orders'}}, function() {  
  ...  
});
```

Load all post owners (users), and all friends and orders of each owner:

### **/server/script.js**

```
Post.find({include: {owner: ['friends', 'orders']}}, function() {  
  ...  
});
```

Load all post owners (users), all posts (including images), and orders of each owner:

### **/server/script.js**

```
Post.find({include: {owner: [{posts: 'images'} , 'orders']}}, function() {  
  ...  
});
```

The model class also has an `include()` method. For example, the code snippet below will populate the list of user instances with posts:

### **/server/script.js**

```
User.include(users, 'posts', function() {  
  ...  
});
```

## Scope

Scoping enables you to define a query as a method to the target model class or prototype. For example,

#### **/server/boot/script.js**

```
User.scope('top10Vips', {where: {vip: true}, limit: 10});

User.top10Vips(function(err, vips) {
});
```

You can create the same function using a custom method too:

#### **/server/boot/script.js**

```
User.top10Vips = function(cb) {
  User.find({where: {vip: true}, limit: 10}, cb);
}
```

### Using filters parameters with included relations

You can use parameters on filters such as where, order, fields, include filters when querying related models to return the data from the related models.

For example, consider Student, Class, and Teacher models, where a Student hasMany Classes, and a Teacher hasMany Classes.

Find ALL Student and also return ALL their Classes with the Teacher who teaches those Classes and also ALL of the Students enrolled in those Classes...

```
Student.find({"filter": {
  "include": {"relation": "classes", "scope": {"include":
    ["teachers", "students"]}}
})
```

Another example: find a specific teacher and also return ALL their classes and also ALL of the students enrolled in those classes.

```
Teacher.find({"filter": {
  "where": {"id": $state.params.id},
  "include": {"relation": "classes", "scope": {"include":
    ["students"]}}
})
```

## Embedded models and relations

- [Overview](#)
- [EmbedsOne](#)
  - [Define the relation in code](#)
  - [Parameters for the definition](#)
  - [Options](#)
  - [Define the relation in JSON](#)
  - [Helper methods](#)
- [EmbedsMany](#)

**See also:**  
[loopback-example-embedded-relations](#)

- Define the relation in code
- Parameters for the definition
- Options
- Define the relation in JSON
- Helper methods
- EmbedsMany with belongsTo
  - Define the embedsMany relation for Book
  - Define the polymorphic belongsTo relation for Link
- ReferencesMany
  - Parameters for the definition
  - Options
  - Define the relation in code
  - Helper methods
- Transient versus persistent for the embedded model
  - Define a transient data source
  - Use the transient data source for embedded models

## Overview

LoopBack relations enable you to create connections between models and provide navigation/aggregation APIs to deal with a graph of model instances. In addition to the traditional ones, LoopBack also supports the following embedded relations:

- EmbedsOne - a model that embeds another model; for example, a Customer embeds one billingAddress.
- EmbedsMany - a model that embeds many instances of another model; for example, a Customer can have multiple email addresses and each email address is a complex object that contains label and address.
- EmbedsMany with belongsTo - a model that embeds many links to related people, such as an author or a reader.
- ReferencesMany

## EmbedsOne

EmbedsOne is used to represent a model that embeds another model, for example, a Customer embeds one billingAddress.

### Sample embedded model

```
{
  id: 1,
  name: 'John Smith',
  billingAddress: {
    street: '123 Main St',
    city: 'San Jose',
    state: 'CA',
    zipCode: '95124'
  }
}
```

## Define the relation in code

### common/models/customer.js

```
Customer.embedsOne(Address, {
  as: 'address', // default to the relation name - address
  property: 'billingAddress' // default to addressItem
});
```

## Parameters for the definition

- methods - Scoped methods for the given relation
- properties - Properties taken from the parent object
- scope - Default scope
- options - Options
- default - Default value



- property - Name of the property for the embedded item
- as - Name of the relation

### Options

- forceId - force generation of ida for embedded items, default to false
- validate - denote if the embedded items should be validated, default to true
- persistent - denote if the embedded items should be persisted, default to false

### Define the relation in JSON

#### common/models/customer.json

```
{
  "name": "Customer",
  "base": "PersistedModel",
  "idInjection": true,
  "properties": {
    "name": {
      "type": "string"
    }
  },
  "relations": {
    "address": {
      "type": "embedsOne",
      "model": "Address",
      "property": "billingAddress",
      "options": {
        "validate": true,
        "forceId": false
      }
    }
  }
  ...
}
```

### Helper methods

- customer.address()
- customer.address.build()
- customer.address.create()
- customer.address.update()
- customer.address.destroy()
- customer.address.value()

### EmbedsMany

Use an embedsMany relation to indicate that a model can embed many instances of another model, for example, a Customer can have multiple email addresses and each email address is a complex object that contains label and address.

### Sample model instance with many embedded models

```
{
  id: 1,
  name: 'John Smith',
  emails: [
    {
      label: 'work',
      address: 'john@xyz.com'
    },
    {
      label: 'home',
      address: 'john@gmail.com'
    }
  ]
}
```



Treat `embedsMany` as an actual relation, no different from `hasMany`, for example. This means that you cannot just POST the full object with embedded/nested data to create everything all at once. So using the example above to add a Customer and multiple email addresses would require two POST operations, one for the Customer record and one for the multiple email address data.

### Define the relation in code

#### common/models/customer.js

```
Customer.embedsOne(EmailAddress, {
  as: 'emails', // default to the relation name - emailAddresses
  property: 'emailList' // default to emailAddressItems
});
```

### Parameters for the definition

- methods
- properties
- scope
- options
- default
- property
- as

### Options

- `forceId`
- `validate`
- `persistent`

### Define the relation in JSON

### common/models/customer.json

```
{
  "name": "Customer",
  "base": "PersistedModel",
  "idInjection": true,
  "properties": {
    "name": {
      "type": "string"
    }
  },
  "relations": {
    "emails": {
      "type": "embedsMany",
      "model": "EmailAddress",
      "property": "emailList",
      "options": {
        "validate": true,
        "forceId": false
      }
    }
  }
  ...
}
```

#### Helper methods

- customer.emails()
- customer.emails.create()
- customer.emails.build()
- customer.emails.findById()
- customer.emails.destroyById()
- customer.emails.updateById()
- customer.emails.exists()
- customer.emails.add()
- customer.emails.remove()
- customer.emails.get() - alias to findById
- customer.emails.set() - alias to updateById
- customer.emails.unset() - alias to destroyById
- [customer.emails.at\(\)](#)
- customer.emails.value()

#### EmbedsMany with belongsTo

Use an embedsMany with belongsTo relation to indicate a model that can embed many links to other models; for example a book model that embeds many links to related people, such as an author or a reader. Each link belongs to a person and it's polymorphic, since a person can be an Author or a Reader.

### Exampel embedsMany with belongsTo model instance

```
{
  id: 1
  name: 'Book 1',
  links: [
    { notes: 'Note 1',
      id: 1,
      linkedId: 1,
      linkedType: 'Author',
      name: 'Author 1' },
    { notes: 'Note 2',
      id: 2,
      linkedId: 1,
      linkedType: 'Reader',
      name: 'Reader 1' }
  ]
}
```

**Define the embedsMany relation for Book**

#### common/models/book.json

```
{
  "name": "Book",
  "base": "PersistedModel",
  "idInjection": true,
  "properties": {
    "name": {
      "type": "string"
    }
  },
  "validations": [],
  "relations": {
    "people": {
      "type": "embedsMany",
      "model": "Link",
      "scope": {
        "include": "linked"
      }
    }
  },
  "acls": [],
  "methods": []
}
```

**Define the polymorphic belongsTo relation for Link**

#### common/models/link.json

```
{
  "name": "Link",
  "base": "Model",
  "idInjection": true,
  "properties": {
    "id": {
      "type": "number",
      "id": true
    },
    "name": {
      "type": "string"
    },
    "notes": {
      "type": "string"
    }
  },
  "validations": [],
  "relations": {
    "linked": {
      "type": "belongsTo",
      "polymorphic": {
        "idType": "number"
      },
      "properties": {
        "name": "name"
      },
      "options": {
        "invertProperties": true
      }
    }
  },
  "acls": [],
  "methods": []
}
```

#### ReferencesMany

##### Sample referencesMany model instance

```
{
  id: 1,
  name: 'John Smith',
  accounts: [
    "saving-01", "checking-01",
  ]
}
```

#### Parameters for the definition

- methods
- properties
- scope

- options
- default
- property
- as

### **Options**

- forceId
- validate
- persistent

### **Define the relation in code**

#### **common/models/customer.json**

```
{
  "name": "Customer",
  "base": "PersistedModel",
  "idInjection": true,
  "properties": {
    "name": {
      "type": "string"
    }
  },
  "relations": {
    "accounts": {
      "type": "referencesMany",
      "model": "Account",
      "property": "accountIds",
      "options": {
        "validate": true,
        "forceId": false
      }
    }
  }
  ...
}
```

### **Helper methods**

- customer.accounts()
- customer.accounts.create()
- customer.accounts.build()
- customer.accounts.findById()
- customer.accounts.destroy()
- customer.accounts.updateById()
- customer.accounts.exists()
- customer.accounts.add()
- customer.accounts.remove()
- [customer.accounts.at\(\)](#)

### **Transient versus persistent for the embedded model**

#### **Define a transient data source**

#### server/datasources.json

```
{
  ...
  "transient": {
    "name": "transient",
    "connector": "transient"
  }
}
```

***Use the transient data source for embedded models***

#### server/model-config.json

```
{
  ...
  "Customer": {
    "dataSource": "db",
    "public": true
  },
  "Address": {
    "dataSource": "transient",
    "public": false
  },
  "EmailAddress": {
    "dataSource": "transient",
    "public": false
  },
  "Account": {
    "dataSource": "db",
    "public": false
  }
}
```

## Connecting models to data sources

- [Overview](#)
  - [Basic procedure](#)
- [Connectors](#)
- [Installing a connector](#)
- [Creating a data source](#)
  - [Data source properties](#)

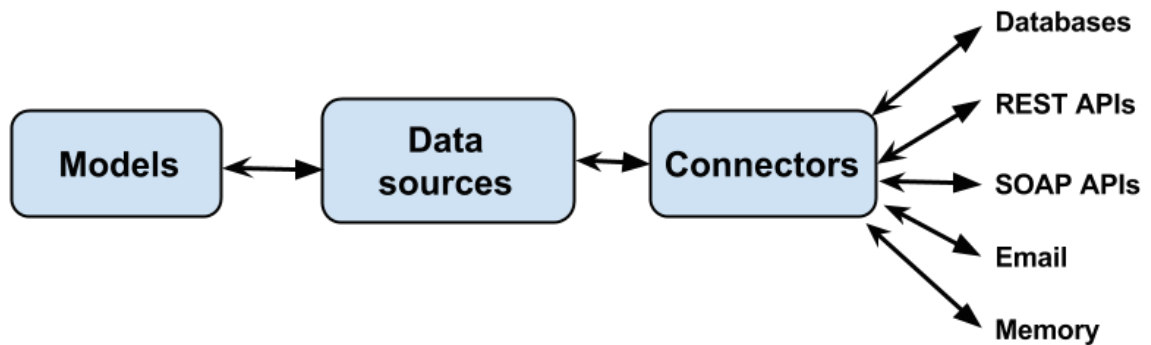
### Overview

LoopBack models connect to backend systems such as databases via *data sources* that provide create, retrieve, update, and delete (CRUD) functions.

LoopBack also generalizes other backend services, such as REST APIs, SOAP web services, and storage services, and so on, as data sources.

Data sources are backed by *connectors* that implement the data exchange logic using

database drivers or other client APIs. In general, applications don't use connectors directly, rather they go through data sources using the [DataSource](#) and [PersistedModel](#) APIs.



## Basic procedure

To connect a model to a data source, follow these steps:

1. Use the [data source generator](#), `slc loopback:datasource`, to create a new data source. For example:

```
$ slc loopback:datasource
? Enter the data-source name: mysql-corp
? Select the connector for mysql: MySQL (supported by StrongLoop)
```

Follow the prompts to name the datasource and select the connector to use. See [Connecting models to data sources](#) for more information. This adds the new data source to `datasources.json`.

2. Edit `server/datasources.json` to add the necessary authentication credentials: typically hostname, username, password, and database name. For example:

```
server/datasources.json

"mysql-corp": {
  "name": "mysql-corp",
  "connector": "mysql",
  "host": "your-mysql-server.foo.com",
  "user": "db-username",
  "password": "db-password",
  "database": "your-db-name"
}
```

For information on the specific properties that each connector supports, see:

- [MongoDB connector](#)
- [MySQL connector](#)
- [Oracle connector](#)
- [PostgreSQL connector](#)
- [Redis connector](#)
- [SQL Server connector](#)

3. Install the corresponding connector with `npm`, for example:


```
$ npm install --save loopback-connector-mysql
```

See [Connectors](#) for the list of connectors.

4. Use the [model generator](#), `slc loopback:model`, to create a model. When prompted for the data source to attach to, select the one



you just created.

 The model generator lists the [memory connector](#), "no data source," and data sources listed in `datasources.json`. That's why you created the data source first in step 1.


```
$ slc loopback:model
? Enter the model name: myModel
? Select the data-source to attach myModel to: mysql (mysql)
? Select model's base class: PersistedModel
? Expose myModel via the REST API? Yes
? Custom plural form (used to build REST URL):
Let's add some test2 properties now.
...
```

You can also create models from an existing database; see [Creating models](#) for more information.

## Connectors

The following LoopBack connectors are available:

Database connectors		
Connector	Module	Installation
<a href="#">Memory connector</a>	Built in to LoopBack	Not required; suitable for development and debugging only.
<a href="#">MongoDB</a>	<a href="#">loopback-connector-mongodb</a>	<code>npm install --save loopback-connector-mongodb</code>
<a href="#">MySQL</a>	<a href="#">loopback-connector-mysql</a>	<code>npm install --save loopback-connector-mysql</code>
<a href="#">Oracle</a>	<a href="#">loopback-connector-oracle</a>	<code>npm install --save loopback-connector-oracle</code>
<a href="#">PostgreSQL</a>	<a href="#">loopback-connector-postgresql</a>	<code>npm install --save loopback-connector-postgresql</code>
<a href="#">SQL Server</a>	<a href="#">loopback-connector-mssql</a>	<code>npm install --save loopback-connector-mssql</code>
Other connectors		
<a href="#">Email connector</a>	Built in to LoopBack	Not required
<a href="#">Push connector</a>	<a href="#">loopback-component-push</a>	<code>npm install --save loopback-component-push</code>
<a href="#">REST</a>	<a href="#">loopback-connector-rest</a>	<code>npm install --save loopback-connector-rest</code>
<a href="#">SOAP</a>	<a href="#">loopback-connector-soap</a>	<code>npm install --save loopback-connector-soap</code>
<a href="#">Storage connector</a>	<a href="#">loopback-component-storage</a>	<code>npm install --save loopback-component-push</code>

 In addition to the connectors listed above that StrongLoop provides, [Community connectors](#) developed and maintained by the LoopBack community enable you to connect to CouchDB, Neo4j, Elasticsearch, and many others. See [Community connectors](#) for more information.

## Installing a connector

Run `npm install --save` for the connector module to add the dependency to `package.json`; for example, to install the Oracle database connector:

```
$ npm install --save loopback-connector-oracle
```

This command adds the following entry to `package.json`:

### /package.json

```
...
  "dependencies": {
    "loopback-connector-oracle": "latest"
  }
...
```

## Creating a data source

Use the [Data source generator](#) to create a new data source:

```
$ slc loopback:datasource
```

Follow the prompts to add the desired data source.

You can also create a data source programmatically; see [Advanced topics: data sources](#) for more information.

## Data source properties

Data source properties depend on the specific data source being used. However, data sources for database connectors (Oracle, MySQL, PostgreSQL, MongoDB, and so on) share a common set of properties, as described in the following table.

Property	Type	Description
connector	String	Connector name; one of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>"memory"</li><li>"loopback-connector-mongodb" or "mongodb"</li><li>"loopback-connector-mysql" or "mysql"</li><li>"loopback-connector-oracle" or "oracle"</li><li>"loopback-connector-postgresql" or "postgresql"</li><li>"loopback-connector-rest" or "rest"</li><li>"loopback-connector-mssql" or "mssql"</li></ul>
database	String	Database name
debug	Boolean	If true, turn on verbose mode to debug database queries and lifecycle.
host	String	Database host name
password	String	Password to connect to database
port	Number	Database TCP port
url	String	Combines and overrides <code>host</code> , <code>port</code> , <code>user</code> , <code>password</code> , and <code>database</code> properties. Only valid with <a href="#">MongoDB connector</a> , <a href="#">PostgreSQL connector</a> , and <a href="#">SQL Server connector</a> .
username	String	Username to connect to database

## Creating a database schema from models

LoopBack *auto-migration* creates a database schema based on your application's models. In relational databases, auto-migration creates a table for each model, and a column in the table for each property in the model. Auto-migration creates tables for all models attached to a data source, including [built-in models](#)

Once you have defined a model, LoopBack can create or update (synchronize) the database schemas accordingly, if you need to adjust the database to match the models. LoopBack provides two ways to synchronize model definitions with table schemas:

- **Auto-migrate:** Automatically create or re-create the table schemas based on the model definitions.
- **Auto-update:** Automatically alter the table schemas based on the model definitions.



Auto-migration will drop an existing table if its name matches a model name. When tables with data exist, use [auto-update](#) to avoid data loss.

## Auto-migrate



StrongLoop Arc enables you to perform auto-migration without coding. For more information, see [Creating and editing models \(Migrating a model\)](#).

The following data sources support auto-migration:

- [Oracle](#)
- [PostgreSQL](#)
- [MySQL](#)
- [SQL Server](#)
- [MongoDB](#)

See also [automigrate\(\)](#) in LoopBack API reference.

Here's an example of auto-migration. Consider this model definition:

### /common/models/model.json

```
var schema_v1 =
{
  "name": "CustomerTest",
  "options": {
    "idInjection": false,
    "oracle": {
      "schema": "LOOPBACK",
      "table": "CUSTOMER_TEST"
    }
  },
  "properties": {
    "id": {
      "type": "String",
      "length": 20,
      "id": 1
    },
    "name": {
      "type": "String",
      "required": false,
      "length": 40
    },
    "email": {
      "type": "String",
      "required": false,
      "length": 40
    },
    "age": {
      "type": "Number",
      "required": false
    }
  }
};
```

Assuming the model doesn't have a corresponding table in the Oracle database, you can create the corresponding schema objects to reflect the model definition using `autoMigrate()`:

### **/common/models/model.js**

```
var ds = require('../data-sources/db')('oracle');
var Customer = require('../models/customer');
ds.createModel(schema_v1.name, schema_v1.properties, schema_v1.options);

ds.automigrate(function () {
  ds.discoverModelProperties('CUSTOMER_TEST', function (err, props) {
    console.log(props);
  });
});
```

This creates the following objects in the Oracle database:

- A table CUSTOMER\_TEST.
- A sequence CUSTOMER\_TEST\_ID\_SEQUENCE for keeping sequential IDs.
- A trigger CUSTOMER\_ID\_TRIGGER that sets values for the primary key.

Now suppose you decide to make some changes to the model. Here is the second version:

### /common/models/model.json

```
var schema_v2 =
{
  "name": "CustomerTest",
  "options": {
    "idInjection": false,
    "oracle": {
      "schema": "LOOPBACK",
      "table": "CUSTOMER_TEST"
    }
  },
  "properties": {
    "id": {
      "type": "String",
      "length": 20,
      "id": 1
    },
    "email": {
      "type": "String",
      "required": false,
      "length": 60,
      "oracle": {
        "columnName": "EMAIL",
        "dataType": "VARCHAR",
        "dataLength": 60,
        "nullable": "Y"
      }
    },
    "firstName": {
      "type": "String",
      "required": false,
      "length": 40
    },
    "lastName": {
      "type": "String",
      "required": false,
      "length": 40
    }
  }
}
```

## MongoDB indexes

Running `autoMigrate()` creates missing indexes but it doesn't modify them if their definitions change. If a model's index definitions change, you must either modify them via the MongoDB shell, or delete them and re-create them. For more information, see the [MongoDB documentation](#).

## Auto-update

If there are existing tables in a database, running `autoMigrate()` will drop and re-create the tables: Therefore, data will be lost. To avoid this problem use `auto-update()`. Instead of dropping tables and recreating them, `autoupdate()` calculates the difference between the LoopBack model and the database table definition and alters the table accordingly. This way, the column data will be kept as long as the property is not deleted from the model.

For example:

See also [autoupdate\(\)](#) in LoopBack API reference.

#### /server/script.js

```
ds.createModel(schema_v2.name, schema_v2.properties, schema_v2.options);
ds.autoupdate(schema_v2.name, function (err, result) {
  ds.discoverModelProperties('CUSTOMER_TEST', function (err, props) {
    console.log(props);
  });
});
```

To check if database changes are required, use the `isActual()` method. It accepts a `callback` argument that receives a Boolean value depending on database state:

- False if the database structure outdated
- True when data source and database is in sync

#### /server/script.js

```
dataSource.isActual(models, function(err, actual) {
  if (!actual) {
    dataSource.autoupdate(models, function(err, result) {
      ...
    });
  }
});
```

## Database connectors

- [Memory connector](#)
- [MongoDB connector](#)
- [MySQL connector](#)
- [Oracle connector](#)
- [PostgreSQL connector](#)
- [Redis connector](#)
- [SQL Server connector](#)

LoopBack provides connectors for popular relational and NoSQL databases. These connectors implement CRUD operations as a common set of methods defined in [PersistedModel](#). When a model is attached to a data source backed by one of the database connectors, the methods from the `PersistedModel` are added to the model class. We sometimes call such models as persisted models. The data access methods on a persisted model are exposed to REST by default. Please see [PersistedModel REST API](#) for the available endpoints.

Persisted models can be connected using relations to provide navigation and aggregation of a data graph formed by related model data. For more information about relations, see [Creating model relations](#). Please note relations are only supported for persisted models.

## Memory connector

- [Overview](#)
- [Creating a data source](#)
  - [Memory connector properties](#)
- [Data persistence](#)

### Overview

LoopBack's built-in memory connector enables you to test your application without connecting to an actual persistent data source such as a database. Although the memory connector is very well tested it is not suitable for production.

The memory connector supports:

- Standard query and create, read, update, and delete (CRUD) operations, so you can test models against an in-memory data source.
- Geo-filtering when using the `find()` operation with an attached model. See [GeoPoint class](#) for more information on geo-filtering.



### Limitations



The memory connector is designed for development and testing of a single-process application without setting up a database. It cannot be used in a cluster as the worker processes will have their own isolated data not shared in the cluster.

You can persist data between application restarts using the file property. See [Data persistence](#) for more information.

## Creating a data source

By default, an application created with the [Application generator](#) has a memory data source defined; for example:

### /server/datasources.json

```
"db": {
  "name": "db",
  "connector": "memory"
}
```

Use the [Data source generator](#) to add a new memory data source to your application.

## Memory connector properties

Property	Type	Description
name	String	Name by which you refer to the data source.
connector	String	Must be "memory" to use the memory connector.
file	String	Path to file where the connector will store data, relative to application root directory.  NOTE: The connector will create the file if necessary, but the directory containing the file must exist.



If you specify the file property, the connector will save data there that will persist when you restart the application. Otherwise, the memory connector does not persist data after an application stops.

## Data persistence

By default, data in the memory connector are transient. When an application using the memory connector exits, all model instances are lost. To maintain data across application restarts, specify a JSON file in which to store the data with the `file` property when creating the data source. For example:

### /server/boot/script.js


```
var memory = loopback.createDataSource({
  connector: loopback.Memory,
  file: "mydata.json"
});
```

When the application exits, the memory connector will then store data in the `mydata.json` file, and when it restarts will load the saved data from that file.


## MongoDB connector

- [Installation](#)
- [Creating a MongoDB data source](#)
  - [Properties](#)
- [Using the MongoDB connector](#)
  - [Using MongoDB operators in update operations](#)
  - [Customize the collection name](#)
  - [Replica set configuration](#)
  - [Handle mongodb server restart](#)
  - [About MongoDB \\_id field](#)

- [MongoDB query examples](#)
  - [Query with logical operators](#) (since v1.2.3)
  - [Case-insensitive query](#)

 The MongoDB connector requires MongoDB 2.6 - 3.x.

## Installation

 The MongoDB connector indirectly uses [bson](#), that requires you to have a standard set of compiler tools on your system. See [Installing compiler tools](#) for details.

In your application root directory, enter:

```
$ npm install loopback-connector-mongodb --save
```

This will install the module from npm and add it as a dependency to the application's [package.json](#) file.

## Creating a MongoDB data source

Use the [Data source generator](#) to add a MongoDB data source to your application. The entry in the application's `/server/datasources.json` will look like this:


### `/server/datasources.json`

```
"mydb": {
  "name": "mydb",
  "connector": "mongodb",
}
```

Edit `datasources.json` to add other properties that enable you to connect the data source to a MongoDB database.

## Properties

Property	Type	Description
connector	String	Connector name, either "loopback-connector-mongodb" or "mongodb"
database	String	Database name
debug	Boolean	If true, turn on verbose mode to debug database queries and lifecycle.
host	String	Database host name or IP address.
password	String	Password to connect to database, if required.
port	Number	Database TCP port
url	String	Connection string URI; see <a href="http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/reference/connection-string/">http://docs.mongodb.org/manual/reference/connection-string/</a> . See <a href="#">Replica set configuration</a> below.
username	String	Username to connect to database, if required.

 Username and password are required only if the MongoDB server has authentication enabled.

For example:



#### /server/datasources.json

```
{
  "mongodb_dev": {
    "name": "mongodb_dev",
    "connector": "mongodb",
    "host": "127.0.0.1",
    "database": "devDB",
    "username": "devUser",
    "password": "devPassword",
    "port": 27017
  },
  "mongodb_staging": {
    "name": "mongodb_staging",
    "connector": "mongodb",
    "host": "127.0.0.1",
    "database": "stagingDB",
    "username": "stagingUser",
    "password": "stagingPassword",
    "port": 27017
  }
}
```

### Using the MongoDB connector



LoopBack currently does not currently support property mapping for MongoDB; you can customize only collection names.

### Using MongoDB operators in update operations

Enable the `allowExtendedOperators` option to include [MongoDB operators](#) in update operations. There are two ways to enable the `allowExtendedOperators` flag: in the [model definition JSON file](#) and as an option passed to the update method.

To set the option in the model definition file, set the property `settings.mongodb.allowExtendedOperators` to `true`. For example:

#### common/models/my-model.json

```
{
  "name": "MyModel",
  "settings": {
    "mongodb": {
      "allowExtendedOperators": true
    }
  }
  ...
}
```

To set the option when calling an update method from code, set it in the options object; for example the following call to `updateAll()` uses the `$rename` operator:

```
User.updateAll(
  { name: 'Al' },
  { '$rename': { name: 'firstname' } },
  { allowExtendedOperators: true }
);
```

### ***Customize the collection name***

You might want to customize the collection name for a LoopBack model. It can be done in the model definition JSON file. In the example below, the Post model will be mapped to the PostCollection collection in MongoDB.

#### **/common/models/model.json**

```
{
  "name": "Post",
  "mongodb": {
    "collection": "PostCollection"
  },
  "properties": {
    ...
  }
}
```

### ***Replica set configuration***

The LoopBack MongoDB connector supports the replica set configuration using the [MongoDB connection string URI format](#). For example, here is a snippet for the data source configuration:

#### **/server/datasources.json**

```
{
  "connector": "mongodb",
  "url": "mongodb://example1.com,example2.com,example3.com/?readPreference=secondary"
}
```

### ***Handle mongodb server restart***

MongoDB has some options to control the `reconnect`.

- `auto_reconnect`: true, // default to true
- `reconnectTries`: 30, // default to 30
- `reconnectInterval`: 1000 // default to 1000ms

By default, after a connection failure, mongodb driver tries to reconnect up to 30 times, once per second. If your server doesn't come back within 30 seconds, the driver gives up. You can bump up the `reconnectTries` or `reconnectInterval`.

Please use the following as an example in `server/datasources.json`:

#### server/datasources.json

```
{
  "accountDB": {
    "name": "accountDB",
    "connector": "mongodb",
    "host": "localhost",
    "port": 27017,
    "server": {
      "auto_reconnect": true,
      "reconnectTries": 100,
      "reconnectInterval": 1000
    },
    "database": "demo"
  }
}
```

## About MongoDB `_id` field

MongoDB uses a specific ID field with BSON `ObjectID` type, named `_id`

The MongoDB connector does not expose the MongoDB `_id` field, to be consistent with other connectors. Instead, it is transparently mapped to the `id` field, which is declared by default in the model if you do not define any `id`.

To access the `_id` property, you must define it explicitly as your model ID, along with its type; For example:

#### /server/script.js

```
var ds = app.dataSources.db;
MyModel = ds.createModel('mymodel', {
  _id: { type: ds.ObjectID, id: true }
});
```

Example with a Number `_id` :

#### /server/script.js

```
MyModel = ds.createModel('mymodel', {
  _id: { type: Number, id: true }
});
```

## MongoDB query examples

### Query with logical operators (since v1.2.3)

MongoDB supports queries with logical operators such as `$and`, `$or`, and `$nor`. See [Logical Query Operators \(MongoDB documentation\)](#) for more information.

To use the logical operators with LoopBack's query filter, use a `where` clause as follows (for example):

### /server/script.js

```
// Find posts that have title = 'My Post' and content = 'Hello'
Post.find({where: {and: [{title: 'My Post'},
                        {content: 'Hello'}]}},
          function (err, posts) {
    ...
  });

// Find posts that either have title = 'My Post' or content = 'Hello'
Post.find({where: {or: [{title: 'My Post'},
                       {content: 'Hello1'}]}},
          function (err, posts) {
    ...
  });

// Find posts that neither have title = 'My Post1' nor content = 'Hello1'
Post.find({where: {nor: [{title: 'My Post1'},
                        {content: 'Hello1'}]}},
          function (err, posts) {
    ...
  });
```

### Case-insensitive query


Since version 1.8.0, the MongoDB connector supports using a regular expression as the value of the `like` operator; this enables case-insensitive queries, for example:

```
var pattern = new RegExp('.*'+query+'.*', "i"); /* case-insensitive RegExp search */
Post.find({ where: {title: { like: pattern} } });
```

Using the REST API:

```
?filter={"where":{"title":{"like":"someth.*","options":"i"}}}
```

## Connecting to MongoDB

 This article is reproduced from [loopback-example-mongodb](#)

### loopback-example-mongodb

Basic instructions:

```
$ git clone https://github.com/strongloop/loopback-example-mongodb.git
$ cd loopback-example-mongodb
$ npm install
```

Then run any script in `server/bin` (for example, `node server/bin/discover-schema.js`).

### Prerequisites

## Tutorials

- [Getting started with LoopBack](#)

## Knowledge

- [LoopBack models](#)

## Procedure

### Create the application

#### Application information

- Name: loopback-example-mongodb
- Directory to contain the project: loopback-example-mongodb

```
$ slc loopback loopback-example-mongodb
... # follow the prompts
$ cd loopback-example-mongodb
```

### Install the connector

```
$ npm install --save loopback-connector-mongodb
```

### Configure the datasource

#### Datasource information

- Datasource: accountDs
- Connector: MongoDB

```
$ slc loopback:datasource accountDs
... # follow the prompts
```

Add the [datasource configurations](#) to `server/datasources.json`.

*We provide a demo server for convenience sake, but feel free to use your own database server.*

### Add a model

#### Model information

- Name: Account
- Datasource: accountDs
- Base class: PersistedModel
- Expose via REST: Yes
- Custom plural form: *Leave blank*
- Properties
  - email
  - String
  - Not required
  - createdAt

- Date
- Not required
- lastModifiedAt
- Date
- Not required

```
$ slc loopback:model Account
... # follow the prompts
```

#### Add a script to migrate data

Create a directory for to store scripts.

```
$ mkdir server/bin
```

Create `automigrate.js` inside the `bin` directory.

`datasource.automigrate()` requires `INSERT` object, `CREATE DDL`, and `DROP DDL` rights to execute properly.

#### Test the script

##### WARNING

`dataSource.automigrate()` creates a new table in the database if it doesn't exist. If the table already exists, it is **destroyed** and **all** existing data is dropped. If you want to keep the existing data, use `datasource.autoupdate()` instead.

```
$ node server/bin/automigrate.js
```

This script creates **two models** in the specified data source.

You can view the newly inserted data using built-in [API explorer](#). Start the application with `slc run` and browse to `localhost:3000/explorer` to inspect the data.

#### Add a script to perform instance introspection

Discovery is the process of reverse engineering a LoopBack model from an existing database schema.

The LoopBack MongoDB connector does not support discovery. However, you can use [instance introspection], which creates LoopBack model from an existing JavaScript object.

See the [instance introspection documentation](#) for more information.

- [Next tutorial](#)
- [All tutorials](#)

## Using MongoLab

If you are using [MongoLab](#) to host your MongoDB database, use the LoopBack `url` property to configure your data source, since the connection string is dynamically generated. For example, the entry in `datasources.json` might look like this:

### /server/datasources.json

```
"mongodb": {
  "defaultForType": "mongodb",
  "connector": "loopback-connector-mongodb",
  "url": "mongodb://localhost:27017/mydb"
}
```

For information on how to get your connection URI, see the [MongoLab documentation](#).

## MySQL connector

- [Installation](#)
- [Creating a MySQL data source](#)
  - [Properties](#)
- [Type mappings](#)
  - [LoopBack to MySQL types](#)
  - [MySQL to LoopBack types](#)
- [Using the datatype field/column option with MySQL](#)
  - [Floating-point types](#)
  - [Fixed-point exact value types](#)
  - [Other types](#)
  - [Enum](#)
- [Discovery methods](#)

### See also:

- [Example application with MySQL connector](#)
- [Discovering models from relational databases](#)
- [Database discovery API](#)



The MySQL connector requires MySQL 5.0+.

## Installation

```
$ npm install loopback-connector-mysql --save
```

This will install the module from npm and add it as a dependency to the application's [package.json](#) file.

## Creating a MySQL data source

Use the [Data source generator](#) to add a MySQL data source to your application. The entry in the application's `/server/datasources.json` will look like this:

### /server/datasources.json

```
"mydb": {
  "name": "mydb",
  "connector": "mysql",
}
```

Edit `datasources.json` to add other properties that enable you to connect the data source to a MySQL database.

## Properties

Property	Type	Description
connector	String	Connector name, either "loopback-connector-mysql" or "mysql"
database	String	Database name
debug	Boolean	If true, turn on verbose mode to debug database queries and lifecycle.

host	String	Database host name
password	String	Password to connect to database
port	Number	Database TCP port
username	String	Username to connect to database

In addition to these properties, you can use additional parameters supported by [node-mysql](#), for example `password` and `collation`. `Collation` currently defaults to `utf8_general_ci`. The `collation` value will also be used to derive the connection charset.

## Type mappings

See [LoopBack types](#) for details on LoopBack's data types.

### LoopBack to MySQL types

LoopBack Type	MySQL Type
String/JSON	VARCHAR
Text	TEXT
Number	INT
Date	DATETIME
Boolean	TINYINT(1)
<a href="#">GeoPoint</a> object	POINT
Enum	ENUM

### MySQL to LoopBack types

MySQL Type	LoopBack Type
CHAR	String
CHAR(1)	Boolean
VARCHAR TINYTEXT MEDIUMTEXT LONGTEXT TEXT ENUM SET	String
TINYBLOB MEDIUMBLOB LONGBLOB BLOB BINARY VARBINARY BIT	Node.js <a href="#">Buffer</a> object
TINYINT SMALLINT INT MEDIUMINT YEAR FLOAT DOUBLE NUMERIC DECIMAL	Number
DATE TIMESTAMP DATETIME	Date



## Using the datatype field/column option with MySQL

loopback-connector-mysql allows mapping of LoopBack model properties to MySQL columns using the 'mysql' property of the property definition. For example:

### /common/models/model.json

```
"locationId": {
  "type": "String",
  "required": true,
  "length": 20,
  "mysql": {
    "columnName": "LOCATION_ID",
    "dataType": "VARCHAR2",
    "dataLength": 20,
    "nullable": "N"
  }
}
```

You can also use the dataType column/property attribute to specify what MySQL column type to use for many loopback-datasource-juggler types. The following type-dataType combinations are supported:

- Number
- integer
- tinyint
- smallint
- mediumint
- int
- bigint

Use the 'limit' option to alter the display width. Example:

```
`{ count : { type: Number, dataType: 'smallInt' } }`
```

### ***Floating-point types***

For Float and Double data types, use the precision and scale options to specify custom precision. Default is (16,8). For example:

```
{ average : { type: Number, dataType: 'float', precision: 20, scale: 4 } }
```

### ***Fixed-point exact value types***

For Decimal and Numeric types, use the precision and scale options to specify custom precision. Default is (9,2). These aren't likely to function as true fixed-point.

Example:

```
{ stdDev : { type: Number, dataType: 'decimal', precision: 12, scale: 8 } }
```

### ***Other types***

Convert String / DataSource.Text / DataSource.JSON to the following MySQL types:

- varchar

- char
- text
- mediumtext
- tinytext
- longtext

Example:

```
{ userName : { type: String, dataType: 'char', limit: 24 }}
```

Example:

```
{ biography : { type: String, dataType: 'longtext' }}
```

Convert JSON Date types to datetime or timestamp

Example:

```
{ startTime : { type: Date, dataType: 'timestamp' }}
```

## Enum

Enums are special. Create an Enum using Enum factory:

```
var MOOD = dataSource.EnumFactory('glad', 'sad', 'mad');
MOOD.SAD; // 'sad'
MOOD(2); // 'sad'
MOOD('SAD'); // 'sad'
MOOD('sad'); // 'sad'
{ mood: { type: MOOD }}
{ choice: { type: dataSource.EnumFactory('yes', 'no', 'maybe'), null: false }}
```

## Discovery methods

LoopBack provides a unified API to create models based on schema and tables in relational databases. The same discovery API is available when using connectors for Oracle, MySQL, PostgreSQL, and SQL Server. For more information, see [Discovering models from relational databases](#) and [Database discovery API](#).

## Connecting to MySQL



This tutorial is reproduced from [loopback-example-mysql](#).

### loopback-example-mysql

Basic instructions:

```
$ git clone https://github.com/strongloop/loopback-example-mysql.git
$ cd loopback-example-mysql
$ npm install
```

Then run any script in `server/bin` (for example, `node server/bin/discover-schema.js`).

## Prerequisites

### Tutorials

- [Getting started with LoopBack](#)

### Knowledge

- [LoopBack models](#)

## Procedure

### Create the application

#### Application information

- Name: `loopback-example-mysql`
- Directory to contain the project: `loopback-example-mysql`

```
$ slc loopback loopback-example-mysql
... # follow the prompts
$ cd loopback-example-mysql
```

### Install the connector

```
$ npm install --save loopback-connector-mysql
```

### Configure the datasource

#### Datasource information

- Datasource: `accountDs`
- Connector: `MySQL`

```
$ slc loopback:datasource accountDs
... # follow the prompts
```

Add the [datasource configurations](#) to `server/datasources.json`.

*We provide a demo server for convenience sake, but feel free to use your own database server.*

### Add a model

#### Model information

- Name: `Account`
- Datasource: `accountDs`
- Base class: `PersistedModel`
- Expose via REST: `Yes`
- Custom plural form: *Leave blank*
- Properties

- email
- String
- Not required
- createdAt
- Date
- Not required
- lastModifiedAt
- Date
- Not required

```
$ slc loopback:model Account
... # follow the prompts
```

#### Add a script to migrate data

Create a directory for to store scripts.

```
$ mkdir server/bin
```

Create `automigrate.js` inside the `bin` directory.

*`datasource.automigrate()` requires INSERT object, CREATE DDL, and DROP DDL rights to execute properly.*

#### Test the script

##### WARNING

*`datasource.automigrate()` creates a new table in the database if it doesn't exist. If the table already exists, it is **destroyed** and **all** existing data is dropped. If you want to keep the existing data, use `datasource.autoupdate()` instead.*

```
$ node server/bin/automigrate.js
```

This script creates two models in the specified data source.

*You can view the newly inserted data using built-in [API explorer](#). Start the application with `slc run` and browse to `localhost:3000/explorer` to inspect the data.*

#### Add a script to discover a schema

*Discovery is the process of reverse engineering a LoopBack model from an existing database schema.*

Create `discover-schema.js` inside the `bin` directory.

#### Test the script

```
$ node server/bin/discover-schema.js
```

You should see:

```
{
  "name": "Account",
  "options": {
    "idInjection": false,
    "mysql": {
      "schema": "loopback-example-mysql",
      "table": "Account"
    }
  },
  "properties": {
    "id": {
      "type": "Number",
      "required": true,
      "length": null,
      "precision": 10,
      "scale": 0,
      "id": 1,
      "mysql": {
        "columnName": "id",
        "dataType": "int",
        "dataLength": null,
        "dataPrecision": 10,
        "dataScale": 0,
        "nullable": "N"
      }
    },
    "email": {
      "type": "String",
      "required": false,
      "length": 1536,
      "precision": null,
      "scale": null,
      "mysql": {
        "columnName": "email",
        "dataType": "varchar",
        "dataLength": 1536,
        "dataPrecision": null,
        "dataScale": null,
        "nullable": "Y"
      }
    },
    "createdat": {
```

```
"type": "Date",
"required": false,
"length": null,
"precision": null,
"scale": null,
"mysql": {
  "columnName": "createdAt",
  "dataType": "datetime",
  "dataLength": null,
  "dataPrecision": null,
  "dataScale": null,
  "nullable": "Y"
},
"lastmodifiedat": {
  "type": "Date",
  "required": false,
  "length": null,
  "precision": null,
  "scale": null,
  "mysql": {
    "columnName": "lastModifiedAt",
    "dataType": "datetime",
    "dataLength": null,
    "dataPrecision": null,
    "dataScale": null,
    "nullable": "Y"
  }
}
```

```
}  
}
```

### Add a script to discover and build models

Create `discover-and-build.js` in the `bin` directory.

### Test the script

```
$ node server/bin/discover-and-build.js
```

You should see:

```
[ { id: 1,  
  email: 'foo@bar.com',  
  createdat: Tue Jan 06 2015 14:09:16 GMT-0800 (PST),  
  lastmodifiedat: Tue Jan 06 2015 14:09:16 GMT-0800 (PST) },  
  { id: 2,  
    email: 'baz@qux.com',  
    createdat: Tue Jan 06 2015 14:09:16 GMT-0800 (PST),  
    lastmodifiedat: Tue Jan 06 2015 14:09:16 GMT-0800 (PST) } ]
```

*Your `createdat` and `lastmodifiedat` dates will be different.*

The resulting objects are fully functional [LoopBack models](#) and thus contain all the features provided by LoopBack such as `find()`, and so on.

- [Next tutorial](#)
- [All tutorials](#)

## Oracle connector

- [Installation](#)
- [Connector properties](#)
  - [Easy Connect](#)
  - [Local and directory naming](#)
    - [sqlnet.ora](#) (specifying the supported naming methods)
    - [tnsnames.ora](#) (mapping aliases to connection strings)
    - [ldap.ora](#) (configuring the LDAP server)
    - [Set up TNS\\_ADMIN environment variable](#)
  - [Connection pooling options](#)
- [Model definition for Oracle](#)
- [Type mapping](#)
  - [JSON to Oracle Types](#)
  - [Oracle Types to JSON](#)
- [Destroying models](#)
- [Auto-migrate / Auto-update](#)
- [Discovery methods](#)

### See also:

- [Example application](#)
- [Database discovery API](#)



The Oracle connector requires Oracle 8.x - 12.x.

## Installation

```
$ npm install loopback-connector-oracle --save
```

See [Installing the Oracle connector](#) for further installation instructions.



On 64-bit Windows systems, the Oracle connector runs only on 64-bit version of Node.js.

## Connector properties

The connector properties depend on [naming methods](#) you use for the Oracle database. LoopBack supports three naming methods:

- Easy connect: host/port/database.
- Local naming (TNS): alias to a full connection string that can specify all the attributes that Oracle supports.
- Directory naming (LDAP): directory for looking up the full connection string that can specify all the attributes that Oracle supports.

### Easy Connect

Easy Connect is the simplest form that provides out-of-the-box TCP/IP connectivity to databases. The data source then has the following settings.

Property	Type	Default	Description
host or hostname	String	localhost	Host name or IP address of the Oracle database server
port	Number	1521	Port number of the Oracle database server
username or user	String		User name to connect to the Oracle database server
password	String		Password to connect to the Oracle database server
database	String	XE	Oracle database listener name

For example:

#### /server/datasources.json

```
{
  "demoDB": {
    "connector": "oracle",
    "host": "oracle-demo.strongloop.com",
    "port": 1521,
    "database": "XE",
    "username": "demo",
    "password": "L00pBack"
  }
}
```

### Local and directory naming

Both local and directory naming require that you place configuration files in a TNS admin directory, such as `/oracle/admin`.

#### sqlnet.ora (specifying the supported naming methods)

```
NAMES.DIRECTORY_PATH=(LDAP,TNSNAMES,EZCONNECT)
```

#### tnsnames.ora (mapping aliases to connection strings)



```
demo1=(DESCRIPTION=(CONNECT_DATA=(SERVICE_NAME=))(ADDRESS=(PROTOCOL=TCP)(HOST=demo.strongloop.com)(PORT=1521)))
```

#### ldap.ora (configuring the LDAP server)

```
DIRECTORY_SERVERS=(localhost:1389)
DEFAULT_ADMIN_CONTEXT="dc=strongloop,dc=com"
DIRECTORY_SERVER_TYPE=OID
```

## Set up TNS\_ADMIN environment variable

For the Oracle connector to pick up the configurations, you must set the environment variable 'TNS\_ADMIN' to the directory containing the .ora files.

```
export TNS_ADMIN=<directory containing .ora files>
```

Now you can use either the TNS alias or LDAP service name to configure a data source:

```
var ds = loopback.createDataSource({
  "tns": "demo", // The tns property can be a tns name or LDAP service name
  "username": "demo",
  "password": "L00pBack"
});
```

Here is an example for datasources.json:

#### /server/datasources.json

```
{
  "demoDB": {
    "connector": "oracle",
    "tns": "demo",
    "username": "demo",
    "password": "L00pBack"
  }
}
```

#### Connection pooling options

Property name	Description	Default value
minConn	Maximum number of connections in the connection pool	1
maxConn	Minimum number of connections in the connection pool	10
incrConn	Incremental number of connections for the connection pool.	1

timeout	Time-out period in seconds for a connection in the connection pool. The Oracle connector will terminate connections in this connection pool that are idle longer than the time-out period.	10
---------	--	----

For example,

#### **/server/datasources.json**

```
{
  "demoDB": {
    "connector": "oracle",
    "minConn": 1,
    "maxConn": 5,
    "incrConn": 1,
    "timeout": 10,
    ...
  }
}
```

### **Model definition for Oracle**

The model definition consists of the following properties:

- name: Name of the model, by default, it's the camel case of the table.
- options: Model level operations and mapping to Oracle schema/table.
- properties: Property definitions, including mapping to Oracle column.

#### **/common/models/model.json**

```
{
  "name": "Inventory",
  "options": {
    "idInjection": false,
    "oracle": {
      "schema": "STRONGLOOP",
      "table": "INVENTORY"
    }
  },
  "properties": {
    "productId": {
      "type": "String",
      "required": true,
      "length": 20,
      "id": 1,
      "oracle": {
        "columnName": "PRODUCT_ID",
        "dataType": "VARCHAR2",
        "dataLength": 20,
        "nullable": "N"
      }
    },
    "locationId": {
      "type": "String",
      "required": true,
      "length": 20,
      "id": 2,
      "oracle": {
        "columnName": "LOCATION_ID",
        "dataType": "VARCHAR2",
        "dataLength": 20,
        "nullable": "N"
      }
    },
    "available": {
      "type": "Number",
      "required": false,
      "length": 22,
      "oracle": {
        "columnName": "AVAILABLE",
        "dataType": "NUMBER",
        "dataLength": 22,
        "nullable": "Y"
      }
    },
    "total": {
      "type": "Number",
      "required": false,
      "length": 22,
      "oracle": {
        "columnName": "TOTAL",
        "dataType": "NUMBER",
        "dataLength": 22,
        "nullable": "Y"
      }
    }
  }
}
```

## Type mapping

See [LoopBack types](#) for details on LoopBack's data types.

### JSON to Oracle Types

LoopBack Type	Oracle Type
String JSON Text default	VARCHAR2  Default length is 1024
Number	NUMBER
Date	DATE
Timestamp	TIMESTAMP(3)
Boolean	CHAR(1)

### Oracle Types to JSON

Oracle Type	LoopBack Type
CHAR(1)	Boolean
CHAR(n) VARCHAR VARCHAR2, LONG VARCHAR NCHAR NVARCHAR2	String
LONG, BLOB, CLOB, NCLOB	Node.js <a href="#">Buffer object</a>
NUMBER INTEGER DECIMAL DOUBLE FLOAT BIGINT SMALLINT REAL NUMERIC BINARY_FLOAT BINARY_DOUBLE UROWID ROWID	Number
DATE TIMESTAMP	Date

## Destroying models

Destroying models may result in errors due to foreign key integrity. Make sure to delete any related models first before calling delete on model's with relationships.

## Auto-migrate / Auto-update

LoopBack *auto-migration* creates a database schema based on your application's models. Auto-migration creates a table for each model, and a column in the table for each property in the model. Once you have defined a model, LoopBack can create or update (synchronize) the database schemas accordingly, if you need to adjust the database to match the models. See [Creating a database schema from models](#) for more information.

After making changes to your model properties call `Model.automigrate()` or `Model.autoupdate()`. Call `Model.automigrate()` only on new models since it will drop existing tables.

LoopBack Oracle connector creates the following schema objects for a given model:

- A table, for example, PRODUCT
- A sequence for the primary key, for example, PRODUCT\_ID\_SEQUENCE
- A trigger to generate the primary key from the sequence, for example, PRODUCT\_ID\_TRIGGER

## Discovery methods

LoopBack provides a unified API to create models based on schema and tables in relational databases. The same discovery API is available when using connectors for Oracle, MySQL, PostgreSQL, and SQL Server. For more information, see [Creating a database schema from models](#).

## Installing the Oracle connector

- [Overview](#)
- [Post installation setup](#)
  - [MacOS X or Linux](#)
  - [Windows](#)
- [Installation from behind a proxy server](#)

### Overview

The Oracle connector depends on [strong-oracle](#) module as the Node.js driver for Oracle databases. Since strong-oracle is a [C++ addon](#), the installation usually requires the presence of C++ development tools to compile and build the module from source code. At runtime, strong-oracle also requires dynamic libraries from [Oracle Database Instant Client](#). To simplify the whole process, we use a helper module [LoopBack Oracle Installer](#) to take care of the binary dependencies. The LoopBack Oracle installer downloads and extracts the prebuilt LoopBack Oracle binary dependencies into the parent module's `node_modules` directory and sets up the environment for the [Oracle Database Instant Client](#).

To install the Oracle connector, use the following command:

#### shell

```
npm install loopback-connector-oracle --save
```



If you need to use the Oracle driver directly, see <https://github.com/strongloop/strong-oracle>

### Post installation setup



Before you run the application, you **MUST** configure the environment variable depending on the target platform to make sure the dynamic libraries from Oracle Instant Client will be available to your Node process.

## MacOS X or Linux

During npm install, the change is made in `$HOME/strong-oracle.rc`.

```
export DYLD_LIBRARY_PATH="$DYLD_LIBRARY_PATH:/Users/<user>/<myapp>/node_modules/loopback-connector-oracle/node_modules/instantclient
export LD_LIBRARY_PATH="$LD_LIBRARY_PATH:/Users/<user>/<myapp>/node_modules/loopback-connector-oracle/node_modules/instantclient" (I
```



#### libaio requirement for Linux

libaio library is required on Linux systems and you might have to install it.

On Ubuntu/Debian:

```
sudo apt-get install libaio1
```

On Fedora/CentOS/RHEL:

```
sudo yum install libaio
```

To activate the strong-oracle settings for your terminal window, add the following statements to `$HOME/.bash_profile` (or `.profile` depending on what shell you use):

#### **~/.bashrc | ~/.bash\_profile**

```
if [ -f ~/strong-oracle.rc ]; then
    source ~/strong-oracle.rc
fi
```

You need to open a terminal window or run `source ~/.bash_profile` to make the change take effect.

#### **Windows**

The change is made to the PATH environment variable for the logged in user. Please note the PATH setting will NOT be effective immediately. You have to activate it using one of the methods below:

1. Log off the current user session and log in.
2. Open Control Panel --> System --> Advanced System Settings --> Environment Variables. Examine the Path under User variables, and click OK to activate it. You need to open a new Command Prompt. Please run 'path' command to verify.

#### **Installation from behind a proxy server**



This feature is supported by loopback-oracle-installer version 1.1.3 or later.

If your system is behind a corporate HTTP/HTTPS proxy to access the internet, you'll need to set the proxy for npm before running 'npm install'. For example,

#### **shell**

```
$ npm config set proxy http://proxy.mycompany.com:8080
$ npm config set https-proxy http://https-proxy.mycompany.com:8080
```

If the proxy url requires username/password, you can use the following syntax:

#### **shell**

```
$ npm config set proxy http://youruser:yourpass@proxy.mycompany.com:8080
$ npm config set https-proxy http://youruser:yourpass@https-proxy.mycompany.com:8080
```

The proxy can also be set as part of the npm command as follows:

```
$ npm --proxy=http://proxy.mycompany.com:8080 install
$ npm --https-proxy=http://https-proxy.mycompany.com:8080 install
```

Please note that npm's default value for [proxy](#) is from the HTTP\_PROXY or http\_proxy environment variable. And the default value for [https-proxy](#) is from the HTTPS\_PROXY, https\_proxy, HTTP\_PROXY, or http\_proxy environment variable. So you can configure the proxy using environment variables too.

Linux or Mac:

#### shell

```
HTTP_PROXY=http://proxy.mycompany.com:8080 npm install
```

Windows:

#### shell

```
set HTTP_PROXY=http://proxy.mycompany.com:8080  
npm install
```

## Connecting to Oracle



This article is reproduced from [loopback-example-oracle](#)

### loopback-example-oracle

Basic instructions:

```
$ git clone https://github.com/strongloop/loopback-example-oracle.git  
$ cd loopback-example-oracle  
$ npm install
```

Then run any script in `server/bin` (for example, `node server/bin/discover-schema.js`).

### Prerequisites

#### Tutorials

- [Getting started with LoopBack](#)

#### Knowledge

- [LoopBack models](#)

### Procedure

#### Create the application

#### Application information

- Name: `loopback-example-oracle`
- Directory to contain the project: `loopback-example-oracle`

```
$ slc loopback loopback-example-oracle
... # follow the prompts
$ cd loopback-example-oracle
```

#### Install the connector

```
$ npm install --save loopback-connector-oracle
```

##### **Automatic PATH modification**

During installation, you will see:

...

...

The node-oracle module and the Oracle specific libraries have been installed in

/Users/sh/repos/loopback-example-database/node\_modules/loopback-connector-oracle/node\_modules/loopback-oracle-installer.

The default bashrc (/etc/bashrc) or user's bash\_profile (~/.bash\_profile) paths have been modified to use this path. If you use a shell other than bash, please remember to set the DYLD\_LIBRARY\_PATH prior to using node.

Example:

```
$ export
DYLD_LIBRARY_PATH="/Users/$USER/repos/loopback-example-database/node_modules/loopback-connector-oracle/node_modules/instantclient:/Users/$USER/repos/loopback-example-database/node_modules/loopback-connector-oracle/node_modules/instantclient"
```

...

This is a **DEPRECATED** feature from LoopBack 1.x (we will remove this message in a future update. Due to concerns raised in the past regarding the "invasiveness" of automatic PATH modification, we now generate a file in your home directory named strong-oracle.rc instead. This file is meant to be sourced into your startup file (.bashrc, .bash\_profile, etc) **manually**.

Add the following to your startup file (.bashrc, .bash\_profile, etc)

```
$ source $HOME/strong-oracle.rc
```

#### Configure the datasource

##### **Datasource information**

- Datasource: accountDs
- Connector: Oracle

```
$ slc loopback:datasource accountDs
... # follow the prompts
```

Add the [datasource configurations](#) to



`server/datasources.json`.

*We provide a demo server for convenience sake, but feel free to use your own database server.*

## Add a model

### Model information

- Name: Account
- Datasource: accountDs
- Base class: PersistedModel
- Expose via REST: Yes
- Custom plural form: *Leave blank*
- Properties
  - email
  - String
  - Not required
  - createdAt
  - Date
  - Not required
  - lastModifiedAt
  - Date
  - Not required

```
$ slc loopback:model Account
... # follow the prompts
```

## Add a script to migrate data

Create a directory for to store scripts.

```
$ mkdir server/bin
```

Create `automigrate.js` inside the `bin` directory.

*`datasource.automigrate()` requires INSERT object, CREATE DDL, and DROP DDL rights to execute properly.*

### Test the script

#### WARNING

*`datasource.automigrate()` creates a new table in the database if it doesn't exist. If the table already exists, it is **destroyed** and **all** existing data is dropped. If you want to keep the existing data, use `datasource.autoupdate()` instead.*

```
$ node server/bin/automigrate.js
```

This script creates two models in the specified data source.

*You can view the newly inserted data using built-in [API explorer](#). Start the application with `slc run` and browse to `localhost:3000/explorer` to inspect the data.*

### Add a script to discover a schema

*Discovery is the process of reverse engineering a LoopBack model from an existing database schema.*

Create `discover-schema.js` inside the `bin` directory.

### Test the script

```
$ node server/bin/discover-schema.js
```

You should see:

```
{
  "name": "Account",
  "options": {
    "idInjection": false,
    "oracle": {
      "schema": "loopback-example-oracle",
      "table": "Account"
    }
  },
  "properties": {
    "id": {
      "type": "Number",
      "required": true,
      "length": null,
      "precision": 10,
      "scale": 0,
      "id": 1,
      "oracle": {
        "columnName": "id",
        "dataType": "int",
        "dataLength": null,
        "dataPrecision": 10,
        "dataScale": 0,
        "nullable": "N"
      }
    },
    "email": {
      "type": "String",
      "required": false,
      "length": 1536,
      "precision": null,
      "scale": null,
```

```
"oracle": {
  "columnName": "email",
  "dataType": "varchar",
  "dataLength": 1536,
  "dataPrecision": null,
  "dataScale": null,
  "nullable": "Y"
},
"createdat": {
  "type": "Date",
  "required": false,
  "length": null,
  "precision": null,
  "scale": null,
  "oracle": {
    "columnName": "createdAt",
    "dataType": "datetime",
    "dataLength": null,
    "dataPrecision": null,
    "dataScale": null,
    "nullable": "Y"
  }
},
"lastmodifiedat": {
  "type": "Date",
  "required": false,
  "length": null,
  "precision": null,
  "scale": null,
  "oracle": {
    "columnName": "lastModifiedAt",
    "dataType": "datetime",
    "dataLength": null,
    "dataPrecision": null,
    "dataScale": null,
    "nullable": "Y"
  }
}
```

```
}  
}
```

### Add a script to discover and build models

Create `discover-and-build.js` in the `bin` directory.

### Test the script

```
$ node server/bin/discover-and-build.js
```

You should see:

```
[ { id: 1,  
  email: 'foo@bar.com',  
  createdat: Tue Jan 06 2015 14:09:16 GMT-0800 (PST),  
  lastmodifiedat: Tue Jan 06 2015 14:09:16 GMT-0800 (PST) },  
  { id: 2,  
    email: 'baz@qux.com',  
    createdat: Tue Jan 06 2015 14:09:16 GMT-0800 (PST),  
    lastmodifiedat: Tue Jan 06 2015 14:09:16 GMT-0800 (PST) } ]
```

*Your `createdat` and `lastmodifiedat` dates will be different.*

The resulting objects are fully functional [LoopBack models](#) and thus contain all the features provided by LoopBack such as `find()`, and so on.

- [Next tutorial](#)
- [All tutorials](#)

## PostgreSQL connector

- [Installation](#)
- [Creating a data source](#)
  - [Properties](#)
  - [Connecting to UNIX domain socket](#)
- [Defining models](#)
  - [Destroying models](#)
  - [Auto-migrate and auto-update](#)
- [Type mapping](#)
  - [LoopBack to PostgreSQL types](#)
  - [PostgreSQL types to LoopBack](#)
- [Discovery methods](#)

See also:

- [Example application - with PostgreSQL connector](#)
- [Database discovery API](#)



The PostgreSQL connector requires PostgreSQL 8.x or 9.x.

### Installation

```
$ npm install loopback-connector-postgresql --save
```

This will install the module from npm and add it as a dependency to the application's `package.json` file.

### Creating a data source

Use the [Data source generator](#) to add a PostgreSQL data source to your application.

The entry in the application's `server/datasources.json` will look like this:

```
/server/datasources.json  
  
"mydb": {  
  "name": "mydb",  
  "connector": "postgresql"  
}
```

Edit `datasources.json` to add other properties that enable you to connect the data source to a PostgreSQL database.

### Properties

Property	Type	Description
connector	String	Connector name, either "loopback-connector-postgresql" or "postgresql"
database	String	Database name
debug	Boolean	If true, turn on verbose mode to debug database queries and lifecycle.
host	String	Database host name
password	String	Password to connect to database
port	Number	Database TCP port
url	String	Use instead of the host, port, user, password, and database properties. For example: 'postgres://test:mypassword@localhost:5432/dev'.
username	String	Username to connect to database



By default, the 'public' schema is used for all tables.

### Connecting to UNIX domain socket

A common PostgreSQL configuration is to connect to the UNIX domain socket `/var/run/postgresql/.s.PGSQL.5432` instead of using the TCP/IP port. For example:

```

{
  "postgres": {
    "host": "/var/run/postgresql/",
    "port": "5432",
    "database": "dbname",
    "username": "dbuser",
    "password": "dbpassword",
    "name": "postgres",
    "debug": true,
    "connector": "postgresql"
  }
}

```

## Defining models

The model definition consists of the following properties.

Property	Default	Description
name	Camel-case of the database table name	Name of the model.
options	N/A	Model level operations and mapping to PostgreSQL schema/table
properties	N/A	Property definitions, including mapping to PostgreSQL column

For example:

### /common/models/model.json

```

{
  "name": "Inventory",
  "options": {
    "idInjection": false,
    "postgresql": {
      "schema": "strongloop",
      "table": "inventory"
    }
  },
  "properties": {
    "id": {
      "type": "String",
      "required": false,
      "length": 64,
      "precision": null,
      "scale": null,
      "postgresql": {
        "columnName": "id",
        "dataType": "character varying",
        "dataLength": 64,
        "dataPrecision": null,
        "dataScale": null,
        "nullable": "NO"
      }
    },
    "productId": {
      "type": "String",
      "required": false,
      "length": 20,

```

```
"precision": null,
"scale": null,
"id": 1,
"postgresql": {
  "columnName": "product_id",
  "dataType": "character varying",
  "dataLength": 20,
  "dataPrecision": null,
  "dataScale": null,
  "nullable": "YES"
}
},
"locationId": {
  "type": "String",
  "required": false,
  "length": 20,
  "precision": null,
  "scale": null,
  "id": 1,
  "postgresql": {
    "columnName": "location_id",
    "dataType": "character varying",
    "dataLength": 20,
    "dataPrecision": null,
    "dataScale": null,
    "nullable": "YES"
  }
},
"available": {
  "type": "Number",
  "required": false,
  "length": null,
  "precision": 32,
  "scale": 0,
  "postgresql": {
    "columnName": "available",
    "dataType": "integer",
    "dataLength": null,
    "dataPrecision": 32,
    "dataScale": 0,
    "nullable": "YES"
  }
},
"total": {
  "type": "Number",
  "required": false,
  "length": null,
  "precision": 32,
  "scale": 0,
  "postgresql": {
    "columnName": "total",
    "dataType": "integer",
    "dataLength": null,
    "dataPrecision": 32,
    "dataScale": 0,
    "nullable": "YES"
  }
}
```

```
}  
}  
}}
```

### Destroying models

If you destroy models, you may get errors due to foreign key integrity. Make sure to delete any related models first before calling `delete()` on models that have relationships.

### Auto-migrate and auto-update

After making changes to your model properties, you must call `Model.automigrate()` or `Model.autoupdate()`. Call `Model.automigrate()` only on new models since it will drop existing tables. These methods will

- Define a primary key for the properties whose `id` property is true (or a positive number).
- Create a column with 'SERIAL' type if the `generated` property of the `id` property is true.

See [Creating a database schema from models](#) for more information.

### Type mapping

See [LoopBack types](#) for details on LoopBack's data types.

### LoopBack to PostgreSQL types

LoopBack Type	PostgreSQL Type
String JSON Text Default	VARCHAR2  Default length is 1024
Number	INTEGER
Date	TIMESTAMP WITH TIME ZONE
Boolean	BOOLEAN

### PostgreSQL types to LoopBack

PostgreSQL Type	LoopBack Type
BOOLEAN	Boolean
VARCHAR CHARACTER VARYING CHARACTER CHAR TEXT	String
BYTEA	Node.js <a href="#">Buffer</a> object
SMALLINT INTEGER BIGINT DECIMAL NUMERIC REAL DOUBLE SERIAL BIGSERIAL	Number
DATE TIMESTAMP TIME	Date



## Discovery methods

LoopBack provides a unified API to create models based on schema and tables in relational databases. The same discovery API is available when using connectors for Oracle, MySQL, PostgreSQL, and SQL Server. For more information, see [Database discovery API](#).

## Connecting to PostgreSQL



This article is reproduced from [loopback-example-postgresql](#)

### loopback-example-postgresql

Basic instructions:

```
$ git clone https://github.com/strongloop/loopback-example-postgresql.git
$ cd loopback-example-postgresql
$ npm install
```

Then run any script in `server/bin` (for example, `node server/bin/discover-schema.js`).

### Prerequisites

- Follow [Getting started with LoopBack](#)
- Read [LoopBack models](#)

### Create the application

Enter this to create a new application:

```
$ slc loopback loopback-example-postgresql
$ cd loopback-example-postgresql
```

Follow the prompts to use the following:

- Name: `loopback-example-postgresql`
- Directory to contain the project: `loopback-example-postgresql`

### Install the connector

```
$ npm install --save loopback-connector-postgresql
```

### Configure the data source

Enter this to create a new data source:

```
$ slc loopback:datasource accountDs
```

Follow the prompts to use the following:

- Datasource: `accountDs`

- Connector: PostgreSQL

Add the `datasource` configurations to `server/datasources.json`.

NOTE: StrongLoop provides a demo server for convenience sake, but feel free to use your own database server.

### ***Add a model***

Enter the following to create a model:

```
$ slc loopback:model Account
```

Follow the prompts to use the following:

- Name: `Account`
- Datasource: `accountDs`
- Base class: `PersistedModel`
- Expose via REST: `yes`
- Custom plural form: *Leave blank*
- Properties
  - `email`
  - `String`
  - Not required
  - `createdAt`
  - `Date`
  - Not required
  - `lastModifiedAt`
  - `Date`
  - Not required

### ***Add a script to migrate data***

Create a directory for to store scripts.

```
$ mkdir server/bin
```

Create `automigrate.js` inside the `bin` directory.

NOTE: `datasource.automigrate()` requires INSERT object, CREATE DDL, and DROP DDL rights to execute properly.

#### **Test the script**

**WARNING:** `datasource.automigrate()` creates a new table in the database if it doesn't exist. If the table already exists, it is **destroyed** and **all** existing data is dropped. If you want to keep the existing data, use `datasource.autoupdate()` instead.

```
$ node server/bin/automigrate.js
```

This script creates **two models** in the **specified data source**.

You can view the newly inserted data using built-in [API explorer](#). Start the application with `node .` and browse to `localhost:3000/explorer` to inspect the data.

### ***Add a script to discover a schema***

*Discovery* is the process of reverse engineering a LoopBack model from an existing database schema.

Create `discover-schema.js` inside the `bin` directory.

### Test the script

```
$ node server/bin/discover-schema.js
```

You should see:

```
{
  "name": "Account",
  "options": {
    "idInjection": false,
    "postgresql": {
      "schema": "public",
      "table": "account"
    }
  },
  "properties": {
    "email": {
      "type": "String",
      "required": false,
      "length": 1024,
      "precision": null,
      "scale": null,
      "postgresql": {
        "columnName": "email",
        "dataType": "character varying",
        "dataLength": 1024,
        "dataPrecision": null,
        "dataScale": null,
        "nullable": "YES"
      }
    },
    "createdat": {
      "type": "String",
      "required": false,
      "length": null,
      "precision": null,
      "scale": null,
      "postgresql": {
        "columnName": "createdat",
        "dataType": "timestamp with time zone",
        "dataLength": null,
        "dataPrecision": null,

```

```
        "dataScale": null,
        "nullable": "YES"
    }
},
"lastmodifiedat": {
    "type": "String",
    "required": false,
    "length": null,
    "precision": null,
    "scale": null,
    "postgresql": {
        "columnName": "lastmodifiedat",
        "dataType": "timestamp with time zone",
        "dataLength": null,
        "dataPrecision": null,
        "dataScale": null,
        "nullable": "YES"
    }
},
"id": {
    "type": "Number",
    "required": true,
    "length": null,
    "precision": 32,
    "scale": 0,
    "id": 1,
    "postgresql": {
        "columnName": "id",
        "dataType": "integer",
        "dataLength": null,
        "dataPrecision": 32,
        "dataScale": 0,
        "nullable": "NO"
    }
}
```

```
}  
}
```

### Add a script to discover and build models

Create `discover-and-build.js` in the `bin` directory.

#### Test the script

```
$ node server/bin/discover-and-build.js
```

You should see:

```
[ { email: 'foo@bar.com',  
  createdat: Tue Jan 13 2015 11:51:00 GMT-0800 (PST),  
  lastmodifiedat: Tue Jan 13 2015 11:51:00 GMT-0800 (PST),  
  id: 1 },  
  { email: 'baz@qux.com',  
    createdat: Tue Jan 13 2015 11:51:00 GMT-0800 (PST),  
    lastmodifiedat: Tue Jan 13 2015 11:51:00 GMT-0800 (PST),  
    id: 2 } ]
```

NOTE: Your `createdat` and `lastmodifiedat` dates will be different.

The resulting objects are fully functional [LoopBack models](#) and thus contain all the features provided by LoopBack such as [find\(\)](#), etc.

- [Next tutorial](#)
- [All tutorials](#)

## Redis connector



**StrongLoop Labs**

This project provides early access to advanced or experimental functionality. It may lack usability, completeness, documentation, and robustness, and may be outdated.

However, StrongLoop supports this project: Paying customers can open issues using the StrongLoop customer support system (Zendesk). Community users, please report bugs on GitHub.

For more information, see [StrongLoop Labs](#).

- [Installation](#)
- [Creating a Redis data source](#)
  - [Properties](#)



The Redis connector requires Redis 3.0.3+.

### Installation

```
$ npm install loopback-connector-redis --save
```

This will install the module and add it as a dependency to the application's `package.json` file.

### Creating a Redis data source

Use the [data source generator](#) to add a Redis data source to your application. When prompted for the connector, choose **other**, then enter **redis** for the connector name. The entry in the application's `server/datasources.json` will look like this:

```
server/datasources.json

"redisDS": {
  "name": "redisDS",
  "connector": "redis",
}
```

Edit `datasources.json` to add other properties that enable you to connect the data source to a Redis database.

### Properties

Property	Type	Description
connector	String	Connector name, either "loopback-connector-redis" or "redis"
database	String	Database name
host	String	Database host name
password	String	Password to connect to database
port	Number	Database TCP port
url	String	Use instead host and port properties.
username	String	Username to connect to database

## SQL Server connector

- [Installation](#)
- [Creating a SQL Server data source](#)
  - [Connector settings](#)
- [Defining models](#)
  - [Auto migrating and auto-updating](#)
  - [Destroying models](#)
- [Type mapping](#)
  - [LoopBack to SQL Server types](#)
  - [SQL Server to LoopBack types](#)
- [Discovery methods](#)

See also:

- [Example application \(GitHub\)](#)
- [Database discovery API](#)



The SQL Server connector requires SQL Server 2005+.

### Installation

In your application root directory, enter:

```
$ npm install loopback-connector-mssql --save
```

This will install the module from npm and add it as a dependency to the application's `package.json` file.


Creating a SQL Server data source

Use the [Data source generator](#) to add a SQL Server data source to your application. The generator will add the following entry to the `/server/datasources.json` file:

```
/server/datasources.json

"sqlserverdb": {
  "name": "sqlserverdb",
  "connector": "mssql"
}
```

Edit `datasources.json` to add other properties that enable you to connect the data source to a SQL Server database.

 To connect to a SQL Server instance running in Azure, you must specify a qualified user name with hostname, and add to the following to the data source declaration:

```
"options": {
  "encrypt": true
}
```

Connector settings

To configure the data source to use your MS SQL Server database, edit `datasources.json` and add the following settings as appropriate. The MSSQL connector uses [node-mssql](#) as the driver. For more information about configuration parameters, see [node-mssql documentation](#).

Property	Type	Default	Description
connector	String		Either "loopback-connector-mssql" or "mssql"
database	String		Database name
debug	Boolean		If true, turn on verbose mode to debug database queries and lifecycle.
host	String	localhost	Database host name
password	String		Password to connect to database
port	Number	1433	Database TCP port
schema	dbo	Database schema	
url	String		Use instead of the host, port, user, password, and database properties. For example: 'mssql://test:mypassword@localhost:1433/dev'.
user	String		Qualified username with host name, for example "user@your.sqlserver.dns.host".

For example:

### /server/datasources.json

```
...
"accountDB": {
  "connector": "mssql",
  "host": "demo.strongloop.com",
  "port": 1433,
  "database": "demo",
  "username": "demo",
  "password": "L00pBack"
}
...
```

Alternatively you can use a single 'url' property that combines all the database configuration settings, for example:

```
"accountDB": {
  "url": "mssql://test:mypassword@localhost:1433/demo?schema=dbo"
}
```

The application will automatically load the data source when it starts. You can then refer to it in code, for example:

### /server/boot/script.js

```
var app = require('./app');
var dataSource = app.dataSources.accountDB;
```

Alternatively, you can create the data source in application code; for example:

### /server/script.js

```
var DataSource = require('loopback-datasource-juggler').DataSource;
var dataSource = new DataSource('mssql', config);
config = { ... }; // JSON object as specified above in "Connector settings"
```

## Defining models

The model definition consists of the following properties:

- name: Name of the model, by default, it's the camel case of the table
- options: Model level operations and mapping to Microsoft SQL Server schema/table
- properties: Property definitions, including mapping to Microsoft SQL Server columns

For example:

### /common/models/model.json

```
{ "name": "Inventory",
  "options": {
    "idInjection": false,
    "mssql": {
      "schema": "strongloop",
      "table": "inventory"
```

> [Expand](#)

[source](#)



```
    }
  }, "properties": {
    "id": {
      "type": "String",
      "required": false,
      "length": 64,
      "precision": null,
      "scale": null,
      "mssql": {
        "columnName": "id",
        "dataType": "varchar",
        "dataLength": 64,
        "dataPrecision": null,
        "dataScale": null,
        "nullable": "NO"
      }
    },
    "productId": {
      "type": "String",
      "required": false,
      "length": 64,
      "precision": null,
      "scale": null,
      "id": 1,
      "mssql": {
        "columnName": "product_id",
        "dataType": "varchar",
        "dataLength": 64,
        "dataPrecision": null,
        "dataScale": null,
        "nullable": "YES"
      }
    },
    "locationId": {
      "type": "String",
      "required": false,
      "length": 64,
      "precision": null,
      "scale": null,
      "id": 1,
      "mssql": {
        "columnName": "location_id",
        "dataType": "varchar",
        "dataLength": 64,
        "dataPrecision": null,
        "dataScale": null,
        "nullable": "YES"
      }
    },
    "available": {
      "type": "Number",
      "required": false,
      "length": null,
      "precision": 10,
      "scale": 0,
      "mssql": {
        "columnName": "available",
        "dataType": "int",
        "dataLength": null,
```

```
        "dataPrecision": 10,  
        "dataScale": 0,  
        "nullable": "YES"  
    }  
},  
"total": {  
    "type": "Number",  
    "required": false,  
    "length": null,  
    "precision": 10,  
    "scale": 0,  
    "mssql": {  
        "columnName": "total",  
        "dataType": "int",  
        "dataLength": null,  
        "dataPrecision": 10,  
        "dataScale": 0,  
        "nullable": "YES"
```

```
}  
}  
}}
```

### Auto migrating and auto-updating

After making changes to model properties you must call `Model.automigrate()` or `Model.autoupdate()`. Call `Model.automigrate()` only on a new model, since it will drop existing tables. See [Creating a database schema from models](#) for more information.

For each model, the LoopBack SQL Server connector creates a table in the 'dbo' schema in the database.

### Destroying models

Destroying models may result in errors due to foreign key integrity. First delete any related models first calling delete on models with relationships.

### Type mapping

See [LoopBack types](#) for details on LoopBack's data types.

### LoopBack to SQL Server types

LoopBack Type	SQL Server Type
Boolean	BIT
Date	DATETIME
GeoPoint	FLOAT
Number	INT
String	NVARCHAR
JSON	

### SQL Server to LoopBack types


SQL Server Type	LoopBack Type
BIT	Boolean
BINARY VARBINARY IMAGE	Node.js <a href="#">Buffer object</a>
DATE DATETIMEOFFSET DATETIME2 SMALLDATETIME DATETIME TIME	Date
POINT	<a href="#">GeoPoint</a>
BIGINT NUMERIC SMALLINT DECIMAL SMALLMONEY INT TINYINT MONEY FLOAT REAL	Number

CHAR VARCHAR TEXT NCHAR NVARCHAR NTEXT CHARACTER VARYING CHARACTER	String
---	--------

## Discovery methods

LoopBack provides a unified API to create models based on schema and tables in relational databases. The same discovery API is available when using connectors for Oracle, MySQL, PostgreSQL, and SQL Server. For more information, see [Database discovery API](#).

## Connecting to Microsoft SQL Server

 This article is reproduced from [loopback-example-mssql](#)

### loopback-example-mssql

#### Prerequisites:

- Follow [Getting started with LoopBack](#).
- Understand [LoopBack models](#).

#### Quick start:

```
$ git clone https://github.com/strongloop/loopback-example-mssql.git
$ cd loopback-example-mssql
$ npm install
```

Then run any script in `server/bin` (for example `node server/bin/discover-schema.js`).

#### Create the application

##### *Application information*

- Name: `loopback-example-mssql`
- Directory to contain the project: `loopback-example-mssql`

```
$ slc loopback loopback-example-mssql
... # follow the prompts
$ cd loopback-example-mssql
```

#### Install the connector

```
$ npm install --save loopback-connector-mssql
```

#### Configure the datasource

##### *Datasource information*

- Datasource: `accountDs`
- Connector: `Microsoft SQL Server`

```
$ slc loopback:datasource accountDs
... # follow the prompts
```

Add the `datasource` configurations to `server/datasources.json`.

*We provide a demo server for convenience sake, but feel free to use your own database server.*

#### Add a model

##### Model information

- Name: Account
- Datasource: accountDs
- Base class: PersistedModel
- Expose via REST: Yes
- Custom plural form: *Leave blank*
- Properties
  - email
  - String
  - Not required
  - createdAt
  - Date
  - Not required
  - lastModifiedAt
  - Date
  - Not required

```
$ slc loopback:model Account
... # follow the prompts
```

#### Add a script to migrate data

Create a directory for to store scripts.

```
$ mkdir server/bin
```

Create `automigrate.js` inside the `bin` directory.

*`datasource.automigrate()` requires INSERT object, CREATE DDL, and DROP DDL rights to execute properly.*

#### Test the script

##### WARNING

*`datasource.automigrate()` creates a new table in the database if it doesn't exist. If the table already exists, it is **destroyed** and **all** existing data is dropped. If you want to keep the existing data, use `datasource.autoupdate()` instead.*

```
$ node server/bin/automigrate.js
```

This script creates [two models](#) in the specified data source.

*You can view the newly inserted data using built-in [API explorer](#). Start the application with `node .` and browse to `localhost:3000/explorer` to inspect the data.*

#### Add a script to discover a schema

*Discovery is the process of reverse engineering a LoopBack model from an existing database schema.*

Create `discover-schema.js` inside the `bin` directory.

#### Test the script

```
$ node server/bin/discover-schema.js
```

You should see:

```
{
  "name": "Account",
  "options": {
    "idInjection": false,
    "mssql": {
      "schema": "dbo",
      "table": "Account"
    }
  },
  "properties": {
    "id": {
      "type": "Number",
      "required": true,
      "length": null,
      "precision": 10,
      "scale": 0,
      "id": 1,
      "mssql": {
        "columnName": "id",
        "dataType": "int",
        "dataLength": null,
        "dataPrecision": 10,
        "dataScale": 0,
```

```
        "nullable": "NO"
    },
    "email": {
        "type": "String",
        "required": false,
        "length": 255,
        "precision": null,
        "scale": null,
        "mssql": {
            "columnName": "email",
            "dataType": "nvarchar",
            "dataLength": 255,
            "dataPrecision": null,
            "dataScale": null,
            "nullable": "YES"
        }
    },
    "createdat": {
        "type": "Date",
        "required": false,
        "length": null,
        "precision": null,
        "scale": null,
        "mssql": {
            "columnName": "createdAt",
            "dataType": "datetime",
            "dataLength": null,
            "dataPrecision": null,
            "dataScale": null,
            "nullable": "YES"
        }
    },
    "lastmodifiedat": {
        "type": "Date",
        "required": false,
        "length": null,
        "precision": null,
        "scale": null,
        "mssql": {
            "columnName": "lastModifiedAt",
            "dataType": "datetime",
            "dataLength": null,
            "dataPrecision": null,
```

```
    "dataScale": null,  
    "nullable": "YES"  
  }  
}
```



```
}  
}
```

#### Add a script to discover and build models

Create `discover-and-build.js` in the `bin` directory.

#### Test the script

```
$ node server/bin/discover-and-build.js
```

You should see:

```
[ { id: 1,  
  email: 'foo@bar.com',  
  createdAt: Mon Jan 12 2015 22:38:13 GMT-0800 (PST),  
  lastModifiedAt: Mon Jan 12 2015 22:38:13 GMT-0800 (PST) },  
  { id: 2,  
    email: 'baz@qux.com',  
    createdAt: Mon Jan 12 2015 22:38:13 GMT-0800 (PST),  
    lastModifiedAt: Mon Jan 12 2015 22:38:13 GMT-0800 (PST) } ]
```

*Your `createdAt` and `lastmodifiedat` dates will be different.*

The resulting objects are fully functional [LoopBack models](#) and thus contain all the features provided by LoopBack such as `find()`, and so on.

- [Next tutorial](#)
- [All tutorials](#)

## Executing native SQL



This feature has not been fully tested and is not officially supported: the API may change in future releases.

In general, it is always better to perform database actions through connected models. Directly executing SQL may lead to unexpected results, corrupted data, and other issues.

To execute SQL directly against your data-connected model, use the following:

```
dataSource.connector.execute(sql, params, cb);
```

or

```
dataSource.connector.query(sql, params, cb); // For 1.x connectors
```

Where:

- *sql* - The SQL string.
- *params* - parameters to the SQL statement.
- *cb* - callback function



The actual method signature depends on the specific connector being used. See connector source code. For example, [loopback-connector-mysql](#).

Use caution and be advised that the API may change in the future.

## Non-database connectors

LoopBack supports a number of connectors to backend systems beyond databases:

- [ATG connector](#)
- [Email connector](#)
- [Push connector](#)
- [Remote connector](#)
- [REST connector](#)
- [SOAP connector](#)
- [Storage connector](#)

These types of connectors often implement specific methods depending on the underlying system. For example, the REST connector delegates calls to REST APIs while the Push connector integrates with iOS and Android push notification services.

Models attached to non-database data sources can serve as controllers (a model class that only has methods). Such models usually don't have property definitions as the backing connector doesn't support CRUD operations. For example, to define a model for an external REST API, we can have a model as follows:

### common/models/my-rest-service.json

```
{
  "name": "MyRestService",
  "base": "Model",
  "properties": {},
  "validations": [],
  "relations": {},
  "acls": [],
  "methods": []
}
```

The model is configured to attach to the REST data source.

### server/model-config.json

```
...
  "MyRestService": {
    "dataSource": "myRestDataSource",
    "public": true
  }
...
```

## ATG connector



TBD - Not yet published

---

## Email connector

The email connector is built in to LoopBack, so you don't need to install it.

- [Creating an email data source](#)
- [Configuring an email data source](#)
  - [Using GMail](#)
- [Connecting a model to the email data source](#)

### Creating an email data source

Create a new email data source with the [data source generator](#):

```
$ slc loopback:datasource
```

When prompted, select **Email** as the connector. This creates an entry in `datasources.json` like this (for example):

#### server/datasources.json

```
...
"myEmailDataSource": {
  "name": "myEmailDataSource",
  "connector": "mail"
}
...
```

### Configuring an email data source

Configure the email data source by editing `/server/datasources.json` (for example):

#### server/datasources.json

```
{
  ...
  "myEmailDataSource": {
    "connector": "mail",
    "transports": [{
      "type": "smtp",
      "host": "smtp.private.com",
      "secure": false,
      "port": 587,
      "tls": {
        "rejectUnauthorized": false
      },
      "auth": {
        "user": "me@private.com",
        "pass": "password"
      }
    }]
  }
  ...
}
```

## Using GMail



With GMail, you may need to enable the "access for less secure apps" option. See [Nodemailer - Using GMail](#) and [Nodemailer - Authentication](#) for more information.

For GMail, configure your email data source as follows:

### server/datasources.json

```
...
"Email": {
  "name": "mail",
  "defaultForType": "mail",
  "connector": "mail",
  "transports": [
    {
      "type": "SMTP",
      "host": "smtp.gmail.com",
      "secure": true,
      "port": 465,
      "auth": {
        "user": "name@gmail.com",
        "pass": "pass"
      }
    }
  ]
}
...
```

## Connecting a model to the email data source

Then, connect models to the data source in `/server/model-config.json` as follows (for example):

### server/model-config.json

```
{
  ...
  "Email": {
    "dataSource": "myEmailDataSource"
  },
  ...
}
```

## Push connector

- [Installation](#)
- [Creating a push data source](#)
- [Configuring a push data source](#)
- [Defining a push model](#)
- [Connect model to push data source](#)

### Installation

If you haven't yet installed the Push component, in your application root directory, enter:

```
$ npm install loopback-component-push --save
```

This will install the module from npm and add it as a dependency to the application's [package.json](#) file.

### Creating a push data source

Create a new push data source with the [data source generator](#):

```
$ slc loopback:datasource
```

When prompted, select **other** as the connector.

At the prompt **"Enter the connector name without the loopback-connector- prefix,"** enter **push**.

This creates an entry in `datasources.json` like this (for example):

#### /server/datasources.json

```
...
"myPushDataSource": {
  "name": "myPushDataSource",
  "connector": "push"
}
...
```

### Configuring a push data source

To configure a push data source, edit the `datasources.json` file; for example as shown in the [push example](#):

#### /server/datasources.json

```
"myPushDataSource": {
  "name": "myPushDataSource",
  "connector": "push",
  "installation": "installation",
  "notification": "notification",
  "application": "application"
}
```

### Defining a push model

Then define a push model in the [Model definition JSON file](#), for example:

### /server/models/push.json

```
{
  "name": "push",
  "base": "Model",
  "plural": "Push",
  "properties": {},
  "validations": [],
  "relations": {},
  "acls": [],
  "methods": []
}
```

## Connect model to push data source

Connect the model to the data source:

### /server/model-config.json

```
"push": {
  "public": true,
  "dataSource": "myPushDataSource"
}
```

## Remote connector

- [Installation](#)
- [Creating an remote data source](#)
- [Remote data source properties](#)
- [Configuring authentication](#)
- [Using with MongoDB connector](#)

Example application: [loopback-example-remote](#)

The remote connector enables you to use a LoopBack application as a data source via REST. The client can be a LoopBack application, a Node application, or a browser-based application running [LoopBack in the client](#). The connector uses [Strong Remoting](#).

In general, using the remote connector is more convenient than calling into REST API, and enables you to switch the transport later if you need to.

### Installation

In your application root directory, enter:

```
$ npm install loopback-connector-remote --save
```

This will install the module and add it as a dependency to the application's `package.json` file.

### Creating an remote data source

Create a new remote data source with the [datasource generator](#):

```
$ slc loopback:datasource
```

When prompted:

- For connector, scroll down and select **other**.
- For connector name without the loopback-connector- prefix, enter **remote**.

This creates an entry in `datasources.json`; Then you need to edit this to add the data source properties, for example:

#### `/server/datasources.json`

```
...
"myRemoteDataSource": {
  "name": "myRemoteDataSource",
  "connector": "remote",
  "url": "http://localhost:3000/api"
}
...
```

The `url` property specifies the root URL of the LoopBack API.

### Remote data source properties

Property	Type	Description
host	String	Hostname of LoopBack application providing remote data source.
port	Number	Port number of LoopBack application providing remote data source.
root	String	Path to API root of LoopBack application providing remote data source.
url	String	Full URL of LoopBack application providing remote connector. Use instead of host, port, and root properties.

### Configuring authentication

The remote connector does not support JSON-based configuration of the authentication credentials; see [issue #3](#). You can use the following code as a workaround. It assumes that your data source is called "remote" and the AccessToken id is provided in the variable "token".


```
app.datasources.remote.connector.remotes.auth = {
  bearer: new Buffer(token).toString('base64'),
  sendImmediately: true
};
```

### Using with MongoDB connector

When using the **MongoDB** connector on the server and a **Remote** connector on the client, the following `id` property should be used.

```
"id": {"type": "string", "generated": true, "id": true}
```

### Remote connector example

 This article is reproduced from [loopback-example-remote](#)

#### **loopback-example-remote**

This is a very simple example of using the LoopBack [remote](#) connector, [loopback-connector-remote](#).

## Overview

The example has the following structure:

- `server`: A LoopBack application that connects to a backend data source (just the in-memory data source here) and provides a CRUD API (both Node and REST) to interact with the data source.
- `client`: A Node application that connects to the LoopBack server application using the [remote connector](#). This acts as a very simple Node client SDK for LoopBack.
- `common/models`: Model definitions shared between client and server applications. Using a shared model definition ensures that client and server expect the same model structures. This simple example defines only one model: `Person`, with a single property, `name`.
- `examples`: Contains examples of using the Node SDK in `client` to connect to the server API.
- `create.js`: A simple example script that creates a new `Person` record (instance).

## How to run the examples

### Starting the Server

Initially, you need to run `npm install` to install all the dependencies for both client and server. Then, start the server application.

```
$ cd client
$ npm install
$ cd ../server
$ npm install
$ node .
```

### Basic CRUD Example

Now in another shell, run an example that uses the client “SDK.”

```
$ node examples/create.js
Created Person...
{ name: 'Fred', id: 1 }
```

Now open LoopBack Explorer at <http://0.0.0.0:3001/explorer/>. This provides a view into the server application REST API.

Go to <http://0.0.0.0:3001/explorer/#!/People/find> to expand the GET `/People` operation. Then click **Try it!**.

In **Response Body**, you will see the record that `create.js` created via the Node client SDK:

```
[
  {
    "name": "Fred",
    "id": 1
  }
]
```

### Auth Example

This example demonstrates the following basic tasks (using the remote connector):

- registering a user
- logging in as a user



- defining a custom remote method
- securing access to custom methods

After running the server, you can run the `examples/auth.js` example in a separate shell.

```
$ node examples/auth.js
Got error (Authorization Required) when trying to call method without auth
Registered a user
Logged in as foo@bar.com
Set access token for all future requests. (MGd...JMA==)
Called a custom method (myMethod) as a logged in user
Logged out and unset the acces token for future invocations
Got error (Authorization Required) when trying to call method without auth
```

## Strong Remoting

See also [Strong remoting API](#)

### Overview

Objects (and, therefore, data) in Node applications commonly need to be accessible by other Node processes, browsers, and even mobile clients. Strong remoting:

- Makes local functions remotable, exported over adapters.
- Supports multiple transports, including custom transports.
- Manages serialization to JSON and deserialization from JSON.
- Supports multiple client SDKs, including mobile clients.

### Client SDK support

For higher-level transports, such as REST and Socket.IO, existing clients will work well. If you want to be able to swap out your transport, use one of our supported clients. The same adapter model available on the server applies to clients, so you can switch transports on both the server and all clients without changing your application-specific code.

### Installation

### Quick start

The following example illustrates how to set up a basic strong-remoting server with a single remote method, `user.greet`.

Then, invoke `User.greet()` easily with `curl` (or any HTTP client)!

```
$ curl http://localhost:3000/user/greet?str=hello
```

Result:

```
{
  "msg": "hello world"
}
```

## Concepts

### Remote objects

Most Node applications expose a remotely-available API. Strong-remoting enables you to build your app in vanilla JavaScript and export remote objects over the network the same way you export functions from a module. Since they're just plain JavaScript objects, you can always invoke methods on your remote objects locally in JavaScript, whether from tests or other, local objects.

### Remote object collections

Collections that are the result of `require('strong-remoting').create()` are responsible for binding their remote objects to transports, allowing you to swap out the underlying transport without changing any of your application-specific code.

### Adapters

Adapters provide the transport-specific mechanisms to make remote objects (and collections thereof) available over their transport. The REST adapter, for example, handles an HTTP server and facilitates mapping your objects to RESTful resources. Other adapters, on the other hand, might provide a less opinionated, RPC-style network interface. Your application code doesn't need to know what adapter it's using.

### Hooks

Hooks enable you to run code before remote objects are constructed or methods on those objects are invoked. For example, you can prevent actions based on context (HTTP request, user credentials, and so on).

See the before-after example for more info.

### Streams

Strong-remoting supports methods that expect or return Readable and Writeable streams. This enables you to stream raw binary data such as files over the network without writing transport-specific behavior.

For example, the following code exposes a method of the `fs` Remote Object, `fs.createReadStream`, over the REST adapter:

Then you can invoke `fs.createReadStream()` using curl as follows:

```
$ curl http://localhost:3000/fs/createReadStream?path=some-file.txt
```

## REST connector

- [Overview](#)
- [Installation](#)
- [Creating a REST data source](#)
- [Configuring a REST data source](#)
- [Configure options for request](#)
- [Resource CRUD](#)
- [Defining a custom method using a template](#)

See also:

- [REST connector API doc](#)
- [Example loopback-faq-rest-connector](#)

### Overview

The LoopBack REST connector enables applications to interact with other REST APIs using a template-driven approach. It supports two different

styles of API invocations:

- [Resource CRUD](#)
- [Defining a custom method using a template](#)

## Installation

In your application root directory, enter:

```
$ npm install loopback-connector-rest --save
```

This will install the module from npm and add it as a dependency to the application's [package.json](#) file.

## Creating a REST data source

Use the [Data source generator](#) to add a REST data source to your application.

```
$ slc loopback:datasource
```

When prompted, scroll down in the list of connectors and choose **REST services (supported by StrongLoop)**. This adds an entry to [datasources.json](#) (for example):

```
...
  "myRESTdatasource": {
    "name": "myRESTdatasource",
    "connector": "rest"
  }
...
```

## Configuring a REST data source

Configure the REST connector by editing `datasources.json` manually (for example using the Google Maps API):

## /server/datasources.json

```
...
  "geoRest": {
    "connector": "rest",
    "debug": "false",
    "operations": [{
      "template": {
        "method": "GET",
        "url": "http://maps.googleapis.com/maps/api/geocode/{format=json}",
        "headers": {
          "accepts": "application/json",
          "content-type": "application/json"
        },
        "query": {
          "address": "{street},{city},{zipcode}",
          "sensor": "{sensor=false}"
        },
        "responsePath": "$.results[0].geometry.location"
      },
      "functions": {
        "geocode": ["street", "city", "zipcode"]
      }
    }]
  }
...
}
```

For a REST data source, you can define an array of operation objects to specify the REST API mapping. Each operation object can have the following properties:

- **template:** See the [description](#).
- **functions:** An object that maps a Node.js function to a list of parameter names. For example, a Node.js function `geocode(street, city, zipcode)` will be created so that the first argument will be value of `street` variable in the template, second for `city` and third for `zipcode`.

### Configure options for request

The REST connector uses <https://github.com/request/request> module as the HTTP client. You can configure or pass options to <https://github.com/request/request#requestoptions-callback>.

The options can be configured by the **options** property at two levels:

- Data source level (common to all operations)
- Operation level (specific to the declaring operation)

For example, the following example set Accept and Content-Type to `application/json` for all requests. It also sets `strictSSL` to `false` so that the connector allows self-signed SSL certificates.

### /server/datasources.json

```
{
  connector: 'rest',
  debug: false,
  options: {
    "headers": {
      "accept": "application/json",
      "content-type": "application/json"
    },
    strictSSL: false,
  },
  operations: [
    {
      template: {
        "method": "GET",
        "url": "http://maps.googleapis.com/maps/api/geocode/{format=json}",
        "query": {
          "address": "{street},{city},{zipcode}",
          "sensor": "{sensor=false}"
        },
        "options": {
          "strictSSL": true,
          "useQuerystring": true
        },
        "responsePath": "$.results[0].geometry.location"
      },
      functions: {
        "geocode": ["street", "city", "zipcode"]
      }
    }
  ]
}
```

### Resource CRUD

If the REST API supports create, read, update, and delete (CRUD) operations for resources, such as users or orders, you can simply bind the model to a REST endpoint that follows REST conventions.

For example, the following methods would be mixed into your model class:

- create: POST /users
- findById: GET /users/:id
- delete: DELETE /users/:id
- update: PUT /users/:id
- find: GET /users?limit=5&username=ray&order=email

For example:

### /server/script.js

```
var ds = loopback.createDataSource({
  connector: require("loopback-connector-rest"),
  debug: false,
  baseUrl: 'http://localhost:3000'
});

var User = ds.createModel('user', {
  name: String,
  bio: String,
  approved: Boolean,
  joinedAt: Date,
  age: Number
});

User.create(new User({name: 'Mary'}), function (err, user) {
  console.log(user);
});

User.find(function (err, user) {
  console.log(user);
});

User.findById(1, function (err, user) {
  console.log(err, user);
});

User.update(new User({id: 1, name: 'Raymond'}), function (err, user) {
  console.log(err, user);
});
```

## Defining a custom method using a template

Imagine that you use a web browser or REST client to test drive a REST API; you will specify the following HTTP request properties:

- method: HTTP method
- url: The URL of the request
- headers: HTTP headers
- query: Query strings
- responsePath: an optional JSONPath applied to the HTTP body. See <https://github.com/s3u/JSONPath> for syntax of JSON paths.

Then you define the API invocation as a JSON template. For example:

```

template: {
  "method": "GET",
  "url": "http://maps.googleapis.com/maps/api/geocode/{format=json}",
  "headers": {
    "accepts": "application/json",
    "content-type": "application/json"
  },
  "query": {
    "address": "{street},{city},{zipcode}",
    "sensor": "{sensor=false}"
  },
  "responsePath": "$.results[0].geometry.location"
}

```

The template variable syntax is:

```
{name=defaultValue:type}
```

The variable is required if the name has a prefix of ! or ^

For example:

Variable definition	Description
'{x=100:number}'	Define a variable x of number type and default value 100
'{x:number}'	Define a variable x of number type
'{x}'	Define a variable x
'{x=100}ABC{y}123'	Define two variables x and y. The default value of x is 100. The resolved value will be a concatenation of x, 'ABC', y, and '123'. For example, x=50, y=YYY will produce '50ABCYYY123'
'{!x}'	Define a required variable x
'{x=100}ABC{^y}123'	Define two variables x and y. The default value of x is 100. y is required.

To use custom methods, you can configure the REST connector with the `operations` property, which is an array of objects that contain `template` and `functions`. The `template` property defines the API structure while the `functions` property defines JavaScript methods that takes the list of parameter names.

```

var loopback = require("loopback");

var ds = loopback.createDataSource({
  connector: require("loopback-connector-rest"),
  debug: false,
  operations: [
    {
      template: {
        "method": "GET",
        "url": "http://maps.googleapis.com/maps/api/geocode/{format=json}",
        "headers": {
          "accepts": "application/json",
          "content-type": "application/json"
        },
        "query": {
          "address": "{street},{city},{zipcode}",
          "sensor": "{sensor=false}"
        },
        "responsePath": "$.results[0].geometry.location"
      },
      functions: {
        "geocode": ["street", "city", "zipcode"]
      }
    }
  ]
});

```

Now you can invoke the geocode API as follows:

```
Model.geocode('107 S B St', 'San Mateo', '94401', processResponse);
```

By default, LoopBack REST connector also provides an 'invoke' method to call the REST API with an object of parameters, for example:

```
Model.invoke({street: '107 S B St', city: 'San Mateo', zipcode: '94401'},
processResponse);
```

## REST connector API

- [exports.initialize](#)
- [RestConnector](#)
- [restConnector.define](#)
- [restConnector.installPostProcessor](#)
- [restConnector.preProcess](#)
- [restConnector.postProcess](#)
- [restConnector.getResource](#)
- [restConnector.create](#)
- [restConnector.updateOrCreate](#)
- [restConnector.responseHandler](#)
- [restConnector.save](#)
- [restConnector.exists](#)
- [restConnector.find](#)
- [restConnector.destroy](#)
- [restConnector.all](#)
- [restConnector.destroyAll](#)
- [restConnector.count](#)
- [restConnector.updateAttributes](#)
- [restConnector.getTypes](#)

Module: loopback-connector-rest



## REST resource API

- [RestResource](#)
- [wrap](#)
- [restResource.create](#)
- [restResource.update](#)
- [restResource.delete](#)
- [restResource.deleteAll](#)
- [restResource.find](#)
- [restResource.all](#)

Module: [loopback-connector-rest](#)

## Request builder API

- [debug](#)
- [RequestBuilder](#)
- [isObject](#)
- [requestBuilder.attach](#)
- [requestBuilder.redirects](#)
- [requestBuilder.url](#)
- [requestBuilder.method](#)
- [requestBuilder.timeout](#)
- [requestBuilder.header](#)
- [requestBuilder.type](#)
- [requestBuilder.query](#)
- [requestBuilder.body](#)
- [requestBuilder.buffer](#)
- [requestBuilder.timeout](#)
- [requestBuilder.responsePath](#)
- [requestBuilder.parse](#)
- [requestBuilder.auth](#)
- [requestBuilder.toJSON](#)
- [RequestBuilder.compile](#)
- [requestBuilder.build](#)
- [requestBuilder.operation](#)
- [requestBuilder.invoke](#)
- [requestBuilder.\\_request](#)
- [RequestBuilder.resource](#)

Module: [loopback-connector-rest](#)

## REST example with SharePoint

Imagine that you need to get document details from a Microsoft Sharepoint server repository published as a lightweight JSON API that can be consumed by various client apps. This tutorial walks you through how to do this with LoopBack.

- [REST example - creating the back-end](#)
- [REST example - adding a client app](#)

### REST example - creating the back-end

- [Setup](#)
- [Create REST data source with custom methods](#)
- [Add model for CRUD operations](#)
- [Add model with custom logic](#)
- [Run the application](#)
  - [Get list of all documents from Sharepoint](#)
  - [Get individual documents from Sharepoint filtered by ID](#)

### Setup

Start with the following app from GitHub and use `npm install` to install all the app's dependencies:

```
$ git clone https://github.com/strongloop/loopback-example-datasourceAPI.git
$ cd loopback-example-datasourceAPI
$ npm install
```

If you're impatient or just lazy, you can download the completed application from GitHub:

```
$ git clone https://github.com/strongloop/loopback-example-customAPI.git
```

### Create REST data source with custom methods

First, create a custom data source using the LoopBack REST connector.

```
$ slc loopback:datasource
[?] Enter the data-source name: Sharepoint
[?] Select the connector for Sharepoint: REST services (supported by StrongLoop)
```

Now open the `datasources.json` file and add custom logic and methods. Copy the code below starting with the line after

```
"connector": "rest",
```

and paste it into `datasources.json`, so it looks as shown below when you're done.



The API endpoint <http://sharepoint.global.strongloop.com/...> is just an example; it doesn't actually exist. Below you'll use the `document sList.json` file to mock up data that would come from the SharePoint REST API.

```

{
  "Sharepoint": {
    "name": "Sharepoint",
    "connector": "rest",
    "debug": "true",
    "operations": [{
      "template": {
        "method": "GET",
        "url":
"http://sharepoint.global.strongloop.com/Corporate/_api/web/lists/getByTitle('StrongLo
opCorporate')/items",
        "headers": {
          "accept": "application/json; odata=verbose",
          "content-type": "application/json"
        },
        "query": {
          "$orderby": "{orderby}",
          "$top": "{top}"
        },
        "responsePath": "$.results[0]"
      },
      "functions": {
        "getFileList": ["orderby", "top"]
      }
    } ,
    {
      "template": {
        "method": "GET",
        "url":
"http://sharepoint.global.strongloop.com/Corporate/_api/web/lists/GetByTitle('StrongLo
opCorporate')/items({fileID})/File",
        "headers": {
          "accept": "application/json; odata=verbose",
          "content-type": "application/json"
        },
        "responsePath": "$.results[0]"
      },
      "functions": {
        "getFileAttributes": ["fileID"]
      }
    }
  ]
},
"db": {
  "name": "db",
  "connector": "memory"
},
"accountDB": {
  "host": "demo.strongloop.com",
  "port": 3306,
  "database": "demo",
  "username": "demo",
  "password": "L00pBack",
  "name": "accountDB",
  "connector": "mysql"
}
}

```

The LoopBack REST connector enables Node.js applications to interact with HTTP REST APIs using a template-driven approach. It supports two different styles of API invocations:

- Resource create, read, update, and delete (CRUD)
- Defining a custom method using REST template

In the code above, you can see that you added template-based modeling logic to the REST connector. You are making two independent API calls to Sharepoint: one to get a list of files/documents and another to return the attributes of each file within the list.

### Add model for CRUD operations

If you were only interested in CRUD operations, as usual with the generators-based methodology, you can create a Document model using Yeoman and attach it to the Sharepoint REST connector.

```
$ slc loopback:model
[?] Enter the model name: Document
[?] Select the data-source to attach Document to:
  Sharepoint (rest)
    accountDB (mysql)
    db (memory)
[?] Expose Document via the REST API? (Y/n) :Y
[?] Custom plural form (used to build REST URL):
```

When the generator prompts you to add properties, follow the prompts to add these properties:

Property	Type	Required?
name	string	Yes
type	string	Yes
size	string	Yes
date_created	date	Yes
last_modified	date	Yes

You can see the corresponding changes made to `/common/models/document.json`.

### Add model with custom logic

If you're not interested only in CRUD operations, but want to implement custom logic, skip the Yeoman steps and add custom logic for post-processing the data returned by the Sharepoint API call.

- Copy and paste the code below.
- Save it to `/server/boot/document.js`. That's where you put custom models and other code you want executed on app startup.

#### document.js

> [Expand](#)

[source](#)

```
var loopback = require("loopback");
var app = require('../server');
var fs = require("fs");

var ds = app.dataSources.Sharepoint;
var fileListModel = ds.createModel ('Documents', {}, {base: loopback.Model});
console.log(fileListModel.super_.modelName);

module.exports=fileListModel;
var queryParam = {
  arg1: 'Modified desc',
  arg2: '5'
};
```

```

var fileIDParam = {
    fileID: '8'
};

fileListModel.getFileList = function(orderBy, top, cb) {
    var file = __dirname + '/documentList.json';
    fs.readFile(file, 'utf8', function (err, data) {
        if (err) {
            console.log('Error: ' + err);
            cb(err);
        } else {
            data = JSON.parse(data);
            cb(null, data);
        }
    });
};

fileListModel.getFileList.shared = true;
fileListModel.getFileList.accepts = [{arg: 'orderBy', type: 'string', http: {source: 'query'}}],
{arg: 'top', type: 'number', http: {source: 'query'}}];
fileListModel.getFileList.returns = [{arg: 'data', type: 'array', root: true} ];
fileListModel.getFileList.http = {verb: 'get', path: '/'};

fileListModel.getFileAttributes = function(id, cb) {
    console.log("findbyid", id);
    var file = __dirname + '/documentList.json';
    fs.readFile(file, 'utf8', function (err, data) {
        if (err) {
            console.log('Error: ' + err);
            cb(err);
        } else {
            data = JSON.parse(data);
            console.log(data[id-1]);
            cb(null, data[id-1]);
        }
    });
};

fileListModel.getFileAttributes.shared = true;
fileListModel.getFileAttributes.accepts = [{arg: 'id', type: 'number', http: {source: 'path'}}];
fileListModel.getFileAttributes.returns = [{arg: 'data', type: 'object', root: true}
];

```

```
fileListModel.getFileAttributes.http = {verb: 'get', path:('/:id')};  
  
app.model(fileListModel);
```

This file does the following:

- Overrides the default persistence model created by the generators and adds custom model to extend the base model.
- Extends the defined custom methods in the data source setup and converts them into API endpoints.
- Provides dummy data (`documentsList.json`) to represent data that in practice would come from the Sharepoint Server REST interface.
- Exposes local server-side methods that other Node functions can invoke directly without having to interact with the JSON API endpoint.

The dummy data in `documentList.json` is shown below. This test data is the same format that the backend Sharepoint call would return.

**documentList.json**[Expand](#)[source](#)

```
[
  {
    "name": "PriceList",
    "created_by": "Michelle Williams",
    "type": "xls",
    "size": "20Kb",
    "date_created": "2011-06-23T18:25:43.511Z",
    "last_modified": "2014-03-23T18:25:43.511Z",
    "id": 1
  },
  {
    "name": "CustomerList",
    "created_by": "Gorge Clooney",
    "type": "xls",
    "size": "10Kb",
    "date_created": "2010-05-23T18:25:43.511Z",
    "last_modified": "2012-09-23T18:25:43.511Z",
    "id": 2
  },
  {
    "name": "SalesPipeline",
    "created_by": "Brad Pitt",
    "type": "pdf",
    "size": "2Kb",
    "date_created": "2011-02-25T18:25:43.511Z",
    "last_modified": "2012-04-23T18:25:43.511Z",
    "id": 3
  },
  {
    "name": "Forecast",
    "created_by": "Olivia Wilde",
    "type": "xls",
    "size": "2MB",
    "date_created": "2012-01-23T18:25:43.511Z",
    "last_modified": "2012-04-23T18:25:43.511Z",
    "id": 4
  },
  {
    "name": "ProductRoadMap",
    "created_by": "Ryan Gosling",
    "type": "pdf",
    "size": "200Kb",
    "date_created": "2012-07-23T18:25:43.511Z",
    "last_modified": "2014-04-23T18:25:43.511Z",
    "id": 5
  }
]
```

**Run the application**

Now run the application:

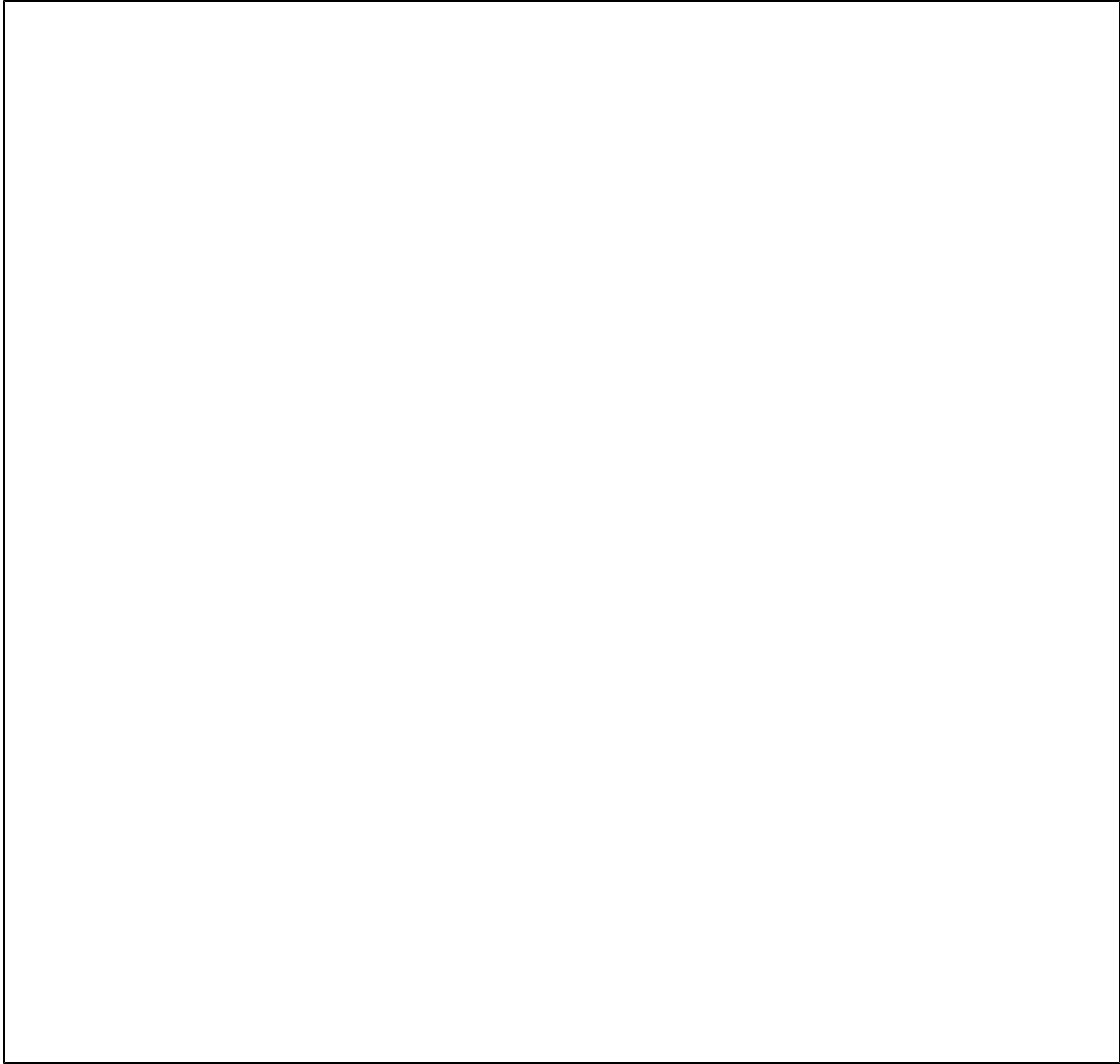
```
$ node .
```

Browsing the API explorer, you can see both the API endpoints as well as individual query results.



***Get list of all documents from Sharepoint***





*Get individual documents from Sharepoint filtered by ID*

**Next:** In [Old tutorial - Add a client app](#), you'll add a client application that connects to the LoopBack server application.

### REST example - adding a client app

This article explains how to add an iOS client app to connect to the [custom API that connects to SharePoint](#) you created previously.

#### Create the iOS app starting point

Follow the steps listed in this example of a sample Books collection application

- [Creating a LoopBack iOS app: part one](#)
- [Creating a LoopBack iOS app: part two](#)

Our app is going to be a replica copy of this app, just that we will make some visual updates to reflect a “Sharepoint Library” instead of a “Books collection”

Alternatively, you can clone the following GitHub repository:

```
$ git clone https://github.com/strongloop/loopback-example-APIClientApp.git
```

### Modify the iOS app

Key aspects of using the LoopBack API in an iOS App are:

- Import the Loopback framework (iOS SDK) as a library into the application
- Import Loopback models as Prototypes
- Import the `LoopBack.h` header into your application just as you would `Foundation/Foundation.h`. Type this line:

```
#import <LoopBack/LoopBack.h>
```

- You need an Adapter to tell the SDK where to find the server. Enter this code:

```
LBRESTAdapter *adapter =  
    [LBRESTAdapter adapterWithURL:[NSURL URLWithString:@"http://example.com"]];
```

- `LBRESTAdapter` provides the starting point for all interactions with the server.
- Once we have access to adapter (for the sake of example, we'll assume the Adapter is available through our `AppDelegate`), we can create basic `LBModel` and `LBModelRepository` objects. Assuming we've previously created a model named "product":

```
LBRESTAdapter *adapter = [[UIApplication sharedApplication] delegate].adapter;  
LBModelRepository *productRepository = [adapter  
    repositoryWithModelName:@"products"];  
LBModel *pen = [Product modelWithDictionary:@{ "name": "Awesome Pen" }];
```

Once you have an adapter, you can create a repository instance.

```
WidgetRepository *repository = (WidgetRepository *)[adapter  
    repositoryWithModelClass:[WidgetRepository class]];
```

Now that you have a `WidgetRepository` instance, you can create, save, find, and delete widgets, as illustrated below.

- Create a Widget:

```
Widget *pencil = (Widget *)[repository modelWithDictionary:@{ @"name": @"Pencil",  
    @"price": @1.50 }];
```

Save a Widget:

```
[pencil saveWithSuccess:^(  
    // Pencil now exists on the server!  
})  
failure:^(NSError *error) {  
    NSLog("An error occurred: %@", error);  
}];
```

Find another Widget:

```
[repository findById:@2
  success:^(LBModel *model) {
    Widget *pen = (Widget *)model;
  }
  failure:^(NSError *error) {
    NSLog("An error occurred: %@", error);
  }];
```

Remove a Widget:

```
[pencil destroyWithSuccess:^(
    // No more pencil. Long live Pen!
  )]
```

## SOAP connector

- [Installation](#)
- [Creating a data source](#)
- [SOAP data source properties](#)
  - [Operations property](#)
- [Creating a model from a SOAP data source](#)
- [Extending a model to wrap and mediate SOAP operations](#)
- [Use boot script to create model and expose apis to explorer](#)
- [Examples](#)

[Turn SOAP into REST APIs with LoopBack \(Blog post\)](#)

The SOAP connector enables LoopBack applications to interact with [SOAP](#)-based web services described using [WSDL](#).

### Installation

In your application root directory, enter:

```
$ npm install loopback-connector-soap --save
```

This will install the module from npm and add it as a dependency to the application's [package.json](#) file.

### Creating a data source

Use the [Data source generator](#) to add a REST data source to your application.

```
$ slc loopback:datasource
```

Choose REST as the data source type when prompted.

### SOAP data source properties

The following table describes the SOAP data source properties you can set in `datasources.json`.

Property	Type	Description
url	String	URL to the SOAP web service endpoint. If not present, defaults to the <code>location</code> attribute of the SOAP address for the service/port from the WSDL document; for example:  <pre>&lt;wsdl:service name="Weather"&gt; &lt;wsdl:port name="WeatherSoap" binding="tns:WeatherSoap"&gt; &lt;soap:address location="http://wsf.cdyne.com/WeatherWS/Weather.asmx" /&gt; &lt;/wsdl:port&gt; ... &lt;/wsdl:service&gt;</pre>

wsdl	String	HTTP URL or local file system path to the WSDL file, if not present, defaults to ?wsdl.
remotingEnabled	Boolean	Indicates whether the operations are exposed as REST APIs.  To expose or hide a specific method, you can override this with:  <Model>.<method>.shared = true / false;
operations	Object	Maps WSDL binding operations to Node.js methods. Each key in the JSON object becomes the name of a method on the model. See <a href="#">Operations property</a> below.

### ***Operations property***

The operations property value is a JSON object that has a property (key) for each method being defined for the model. The corresponding value is an object with the following properties:

Property	Type	Description
service	String	WSDL service name
port	String	WSDL port name
operation	String	WSDL operation name

Here is an example operations property for the stock quote service:

```
operations: {
  // The key is the method name
  stockQuote: {
    service: 'StockQuote', // The WSDL service name
    port: 'StockQuoteSoap', // The WSDL port name
    operation: 'GetQuote' // The WSDL operation name
  },
  stockQuote12: {
    service: 'StockQuote',
    port: 'StockQuoteSoap12',
    operation: 'GetQuote'
  }
}
```

A complete example datasource.json:

```
{
  "WeatherServiceDS": {
    "url": "http://wsf.cdyne.com/WeatherWS/Weather.asmx",
    "name": "WeatherServiceDS",
    "connector": "soap",
    "wsdl": "http://wsf.cdyne.com/WeatherWS/Weather.asmx?WSDL",
    "remotingEnabled": true,
    "operations": {
      "stockQuote": {
        "service": "StockQuote",
        "port": "StockQuoteSoap",
        "operation": "GetQuote"
      },
      "stockQuote12": {
        "service": "StockQuote",
        "port": "StockQuoteSoap12",
        "operation": "GetQuote"
      }
    }
  }
}
```

### Creating a model from a SOAP data source

The SOAP connector loads WSDL documents asynchronously. As a result, the data source won't be ready to create models until it's connected. The recommended way is to use an event handler for the 'connected' event; for example:

```
ds.once('connected', function () {
  // Create the model
  var WeatherService = ds.createModel('WeatherService', {});
  ...
})
```

### Extending a model to wrap and mediate SOAP operations

Once you define the model, you can extend it to wrap or mediate SOAP operations and define new methods. The following example simplifies the `GetCityForecastByZIP` operation to a method that takes `zip` and returns an array of forecasts.

```
// Refine the methods
WeatherService.forecast = function (zip, cb) {
  WeatherService.GetCityForecastByZIP({ZIP: zip || '94555'}, function (err,
  response) {
    console.log('Forecast: %j', response);
    var result = (!err && response.GetCityForecastByZIPResult.Success) ?
    response.GetCityForecastByZIPResult.ForecastResult.Forecast : [];
    cb(err, result);
  });
};
```

The custom method on the model can be exposed as REST APIs. It uses the `loopback.remoteMethod` to define the mappings.

```
// Map to REST/HTTP
loopback.remoteMethod(
  WeatherService.forecast, {
    accepts: [
      {arg: 'zip', type: 'string', required: true, http: {source: 'query'}}
    ],
    returns: {arg: 'result', type: 'object', root: true},
    http: {verb: 'get', path: '/forecast'}
  }
);
```

### Use boot script to create model and expose apis to explorer

The SOAP connector is a bit special as it builds the operations from WSDL asynchronously. To expose such methods over REST, you need to do the following with a boot script, such as `server/a-soap.js`:

```
module.exports = function(app, cb) {
  var ds = app.dataSources.WeatherServiceDS;
  if (ds.connected) {
    var weather = ds.createModel('weather', {}, {base: 'Model'});
    app.model(weather);
    process.nextTick(cb);
  } else {
    ds.once('connected', function() {
      var weather = ds.createModel('weather', {}, {base: 'Model'});
      app.model(weather);
      cb();
    });
  }
};
```

### Examples

The [loopback-connector-soap](#) repository provides several examples:

Get stock quotes by symbols: [stock-ws.js](#). Run with the command:

```
$ node example/stock-ws
```

Get weather and forecast information for a given zip code: [weather-ws.js](#). Run with the command:

```
$ node example/weather-ws
```

Expose REST APIs to proxy the SOAP web services: [weather-rest.js](#). Run with the command:

```
$ node example/weather-rest
```

View the results at <http://localhost:3000/explorer>.

## Storage connector

- [Installation](#)

- [Creating a storage data source](#)
- [Configuring a storage data source](#)
- [Creating a storage model](#)
- [Connect the model to the storage data source](#)

## Installation

If you haven't yet installed the storage component, in your application root directory, enter:

```
$ npm install loopback-component-storage --save
```

This will install the module from npm and add it as a dependency to the application's [package.json](#) file.

## Creating a storage data source

Create a new push data source with the [data source generator](#):

```
$ slc loopback:datasource
```

When prompted, select **other** as the connector.

At the prompt **"Enter the connector name without the loopback-connector- prefix,"** enter **storage**.

This creates an entry in `datasources.json` like this (for example):

### /server/datasources.json

```
...
"myStorageDataSource": {
  "name": "myStorageDataSource",
  "connector": "storage"
}
...
```

## Configuring a storage data source

Configure a storage data source by editing the `datasources.json` file, for example as shown in the [storage service example](#):

### /server/datasources.json

```
...
"myStorageDataSource": {
  "name": "myStorageDataSource",
  "connector": "storage",
  "provider": "filesystem",
  "root": "../server/storage"
}
...
```

## Creating a storage model

Use the [model generator](#) to create a new model, then edit the `model.json` file, as shown in the [storage service example](#):



### /server/models/container.json

```
{
  "name": "container",
  "base": "Model",
  "properties": {},
  "validations": [],
  "relations": {},
  "acls": [],
  "methods": []
}
```

### Connect the model to the storage data source

### /server/model-config.json

```
...
  "container": {
    "dataSource": "myStorageDataSource",
    "public": true
  }
...
```

## Community connectors

In addition to the connectors that StrongLoop provides and maintains, there are a number of connectors created by the open-source community.



StrongLoop does not support the connectors listed here; they are maintained by the LoopBack community and are listed here for convenience.

Please contact StrongLoop to request support for one of these connectors or to request an additional connector.

The following table lists some of the community connectors. See [npmjs.org](https://npmjs.org) for a complete list.



See also <https://github.com/pasindud/awesome-loopback> for an extensive list of LoopBack community resources.

Data source	Connector	Notes
Apache CouchDB	loopback-connector-couch	
Apache Kafka	loopback-connector-kafka	Provided as option by <a href="#">data source generator</a> .
ArangoDB	loopback-connector-arango	
Couchbase	loopback-connector-couchbase	Example at <a href="#">loopback-example-couchbase</a>
Elasticsearch	loopback-connector-elastic-search	
Mandrill	lb-connector-mandrill	Enables applications to send emails via Mandrill
Neo4j	loopback-connector-neo4j	Provided as option by <a href="#">data source generator</a> .  NOTE: This connector has <a href="#">known issues</a> .

RavenDB	loopback-connector-ravendb	
Riak	loopback-connector-riak	
SAP HANA	loopback-connector-saphana	Provided as option by <a href="#">data source generator</a> .
SQLite	loopback-connector-sqlite	
Twilio	loopback-connector-twilio	<a href="#">Example in GitHub</a> .

## Advanced topics: data sources

- [Overview](#)
- [Creating a DataSource programmatically](#)
- [Creating a model from a data source](#)
  - [Creating a data source for a connector](#)
  - [Initializing a connector](#)

### Overview

The diagram illustrates the relationship between LoopBack Model, DataSource, and Connector.

1. Define the model.
2. Create an instance of `ModelBuilder` or `DataSource`. `DataSource` extends from `ModelBuilder`. `ModelBuilder` is responsible for compiling model definitions to JavaScript constructors representing model classes. `DataSource` inherits that function from `ModelBuilder`.
3. Use `ModelBuilder` or `DataSource` to build a JavaScript constructor (i.e. the model class) from the model definition. Model classes built from `ModelBuilder` can be later attached to a `DataSource` to receive the mixin of data access functions.
4. As part of step 2, `DataSource` initializes the underlying `Connector` with a settings object which provides configurations to the connector instance. `Connector` collaborates with `DataSource` to define the functions as `DataAccessObject` to be mixed into the model class. The `DataAccessObject` consists of a list of static and prototype methods. It can be CRUD operations or other specific functions depending on the connector's capabilities.

The `DataSource` object is the unified interface for LoopBack applications to integrate with backend systems. It's a factory for data access logic around model classes. With the ability to plug in various connectors, `DataSource` provides the necessary abstraction to interact with databases or services to decouple the business logic from plumbing technologies.

### Creating a DataSource programmatically

The `DataSource` constructor accepts the following arguments:

- `name`: Optional name of the data source instance being created.
- `settings`: An object of properties to configure the connector. Must include a `connector` property, specifying the connector to use. See [Connecting models to data sources \(Connectors\)](#).

For example:

```
var DataSource = require('loopback-datasource-juggler').DataSource;

var dataSource = new DataSource({
  connector: require('loopback-connector-mongodb'),
  host: 'localhost',
  port: 27017,
  database: 'mydb'
});
```

The `connector` argument passed the `DataSource` constructor can be one of the following:

- The connector module from `require(connectorName)`
- The full name of the connector module, such as 'loopback-connector-oracle'
- The short name of the connector module, such as 'oracle', which will be converted to 'loopback-connector-'

- A local module under `./connectors/` folder

```
var ds1 = new DataSource('memory');
var ds2 = new DataSource('loopback-connector-mongodb');
var ds3 = new DataSource(require('loopback-connector-oracle'));
```

LoopBack provides the built-in memory connector that uses in-memory store for CRUD operations.

The `settings` argument configures the connector. Settings object format and defaults depends on specific connector, but common fields are:

- `host`: Database host
- `port`: Database port
- `username`: Username to connect to database
- `password`: Password to connect to database
- `database`: Database name
- `debug`: Turn on verbose mode to debug db queries and lifecycle

For more information, see [Connecting models to data sources \(Connectors\)](#). For connector-specific settings, see the connector's documentation.

## Creating a model from a data source

`DataSource` extends from `ModelBuilder`, which is a factory for plain model classes that only have properties. `DataSource` connects to databases and other backend systems using `Connector`.

```
var DataSource = require('loopback-datasource-juggler').DataSource;
var ds = new DataSource('memory');

var User = ds.define('User', {
  name: String,
  bio: String,
  approved: Boolean,
  joinedAt: Date,
  age: Number
});
```

All model classes within single data source share the same connector type and one database connection or connection pool. But it's possible to use more than one data source to connect to different databases.

Alternatively, you can attach a plain model constructor created from `ModelBuilder` to a `DataSource`.

```
var ModelBuilder = require('loopback-datasource-juggler').ModelBuilder;
var builder = new ModelBuilder();

var User = builder.define('User', {
  name: String,
  bio: String,
  approved: Boolean,
  joinedAt: Date,
  age: Number
});

var DataSource = require('loopback-datasource-juggler').DataSource;
var ds = new DataSource('memory');

User.attachTo(ds); // The CRUD methods will be mixed into the User constructor
```

## Creating a data source for a connector

Application code does not directly use a connector. Rather, you create a `DataSource` to interact with the connector.

The simplest example is for the in-memory connector:

```
var memory = loopback.createDataSource({
  connector: loopback.Memory
});
```

Here is another example, this time for the Oracle connector:

```
var DataSource = require('loopback-datasource-juggler').DataSource;
var oracleConnector = require('loopback-connector-oracle');

var ds = new DataSource(oracleConnector, {
  host : 'localhost',
  database : 'XE',
  username : 'username',
  password : 'password',
  debug : true
});
```

The connector argument passed the DataSource constructor can be one of the following:

- The connector module from `require('connectorName')`
- The full name of the connector module, such as `'loopback-connector-oracle'`.
- The short name of the connector module, such as `'oracle'`, that LoopBack converts to `'loopback-connector-oracle'` (for example).
- A local module in the `/connectors` folder

### Initializing a connector

The connector module can export an `initialize` function to be called by the owning DataSource instance.

```
exports.initialize = function (dataSource, postInit) {

  var settings = dataSource.settings || {}; // The settings is passed in from the
dataSource

  var connector = new MyConnector(settings); // Construct the connector instance
dataSource.connector = connector; // Attach connector to dataSource
connector.dataSource = dataSource; // Hold a reference to dataSource
  ...
};
```

The DataSource calls the `initialize` method with itself and an optional `postInit` callback function. The connector receives the settings from the `dataSource` argument and use it to configure connections to backend systems.

Please note connector and dataSource set up a reference to each other.

Upon initialization, the connector might connect to database automatically. Once connection established dataSource object emit 'connected' event, and set `connected` flag to true, but it is not necessary to wait for 'connected' event because all queries cached and executed when dataSource emit 'connected' event.

To disconnect from database server call `dataSource.disconnect` method. This call is forwarded to the connector if the connector have ability to connect/disconnect.

## Building a connector

- [Overview](#)
- [Understand a connector's responsibilities](#)
- [Understand a database connector with CRUD operations](#)

**Related articles:**

- Define a module and export the initialize function
- Create a subclass of `SqlConnector`
- Implement lifecycle methods
  - Connect to the database
  - Disconnect from the database
  - Ping the database

## Overview

LoopBack provides connectors for:

- Popular relational and NoSQL databases; see [Database connectors](#).
- Backend systems beyond databases; see [Non-database connectors](#).

Also see [Community connectors](#) for a list of connectors developed by the StrongLoop developer community.



This article is for developers who want to create a new connector type to connect to a data source not currently supported. It walks you through the MySQL connector implementation to teach you how to develop a connector for relational databases. However, many of the concepts also apply to creating a connector to other types of data sources.

## Understand a connector's responsibilities

LoopBack abstracts the backend persistence layer as *data sources* that can be databases, or other backend services such as REST APIs, SOAP web services, storage services, and so on. Each data source is backed a *connector* that implements the interactions between Node.js and the underlying backend system. Connectors are responsible for mapping model methods to backend functions, such as database operations or calls to REST or SOAP APIs.

LoopBack models encapsulate business data and logic as JavaScript properties and methods. One of the powerful features of LoopBack is that connectors provide most common model behaviors "out of the box", so application developers don't have to implement them. For example, a model automatically receives the create, retrieve, update, and delete (CRUD) functions when attached to a data source for a database.

The following diagram illustrates how connectors fit into the LoopBack API framework.

You don't always have to develop a connector to enable your application to interact with other systems. You can use custom methods on a model to provide *ad-hoc* integration. The custom methods can be implemented using other Node modules, such as drivers or clients to your backend.

You may want to develop a connector to:

- Integrate with a backend such as databases.
- Provide reusable logic to interact with another system.

There are a few typical types of connectors based on what backends they connect to and interact with.

- Databases that support full CRUD operations
  - Oracle, SQL Server, MySQL, Postgresql, MongoDB, In-memory DB
- Other forms of existing APIs
  - REST APIs exposed by your backend
  - SOAP/HTTP web services
- Services
  - E-mail
  - Push notification
  - Storage

The connectors are mostly transparent to models. Their functions are mixed into model classes through data source attachments.

Most connectors need to implement the following logic:

- Lifecycle handlers
  - initialize: receive configuration from the data source settings and initialize the connector instance
  - connect: create connections to the backend system
  - disconnect: close connections to the backend system
  - ping (optional): check connectivity
- Model method delegations
  - Delegating model method invocations to backend calls, for example CRUD
- Connector metadata (optional)
  - Model definition for the configuration, such as host/URL/username/password
  - What data access interfaces are implemented by the connector (the capability of the connector)
  - Connector-specific model/property mappings

To mix-in methods onto model classes, a connector must choose what functions to offer. Different types of connectors implement different interfaces that group a set of common methods, for example:

- Database connectors
  - CRUD methods, such as create, find, findById, deleteAll, updateAll, count
- E-mail connector
  - send()
- Storage connector
  - Container/File operations, such as createContainer, getContainers, getFiles, upload, download, deleteFile, deleteContainer
- Push Notification connector
  - notify()
- REST connector
  - Map operations from existing REST APIs
- SOAP connector
  - Map WSDL operations

This article focuses on building a connector for databases that provide full CRUD capabilities.

## Understand a database connector with CRUD operations

LoopBack unifies all CRUD based database connectors so that a model can choose to attach to any of the supported database. There are a few classes involved here:

1. [PersistedModelClass](#) defines all the methods mixed into a model for persistence.
2. [The DAO facade](#) maps the PersistedModel methods to connector implementations.
3. CRUD methods need to be implemented by connectors.

The following sections use the MySQL connector as an example to walk through how to implement a connector for a relational database.

## Define a module and export the initialize function

A LoopBack connector is packaged as a Node.js module that can be installed using `npm install`. The LoopBack runtime loads the module via `require` on behalf of data source configuration, for example, `require('loopback-connector-mysql');`. The connector module should export an `initialize` function as follows:

```
// Require the DB driver
var mysql = require('mysql');
// Require the base SqlConnector class
var SqlConnector = require('loopback-connector').SqlConnector;
// Require the debug module with a pattern of loopback:connector:connectorName
var debug = require('debug')('loopback:connector:mysql');

/**
 * Initialize the connector against the given data source
 *
 * @param {DataSource} dataSource The loopback-datasource-juggler dataSource
 * @param {Function} [callback] The callback function
 */
exports.initialize = function initializeDataSource(dataSource, callback) {
  ...
};
```

After initialization, the `dataSource` object will have the following properties added:

- `connector`: The connector instance
- `driver`: The module for the underlying database driver (`mysql` for MySQL)

The `initialize` function calls the `callback` function once the connector has been initialized.

## Create a subclass of SqlConnector

Connectors for relational databases have a lot of things in common. They are responsible for mapping CRUD operations to SQL statements. LoopBack provides a base class called `SqlConnector` that encapsulates the common logic for inheritance. The following code snippet is used to create a subclass of `SqlConnector`. The `settings` parameter is an object containing the data source settings.

```
function MySQL(settings) {
  // Call the super constructor with name and settings
  SqlConnector.call(this, 'mysql', settings);
  ...
}
// Set up the prototype inheritance
require('util').inherits(MySQL, SqlConnector);
```

## Implement lifecycle methods

A connector must implement `connect()`, `disconnect()`, and optionally `ping()` methods to communicate with the underlying database.

### Connect to the database

The `connect` method establishes a connection to the database. In most cases, it creates a connection pool based on the data source settings, including `host`, `port`, `database`, and other configuration properties.

```
MySQL.prototype.connect = function (cb) {
  // ...
};
```

### Disconnect from the database

The `disconnect` method closes a connection to the database. Most database drivers provide an API to disconnect.

```
MySQL.prototype.disconnect = function (cb) {
  // ...
};
```

### Ping the database

Optionally, implement a `ping` method to test if the connection to the database is healthy. Most connectors implement it by executing a simple SQL statement.

```
MySQL.prototype.ping = function(cb) {
  // ...
};
```

## Implementing auto-migration

- [Overview](#)
- [Define autoupdate and automigrate functions](#)
- [Defining helper functions](#)
  - [Build a CREATE TABLE statement](#)
  - [Check if models have corresponding tables](#)
  - [Alter a table](#)
- [Define metadata definition functions](#)
  - [Build column definition clause for a given model](#)
  - [Build index definition clause for a given model property](#)
  - [Build indexes for a given model](#)
  - [Build column definition for a given model property](#)
  - [Build column type for a given model property](#)

**Related articles:**

## Overview

It's often desirable to apply model definitions to the underlying relational database to provision or update schema objects so that they stay synchronized with the model definitions. In LoopBack, this is called *auto-migration*. Implementing auto-migration is optional for connector.

There are two variations:

- **Auto-migration:** Drop existing schema objects if they exist, and re-create them based on model definitions. Existing data will be lost.
- **Auto-update:** Detect the difference between schema objects and model definitions, and alter the database schema objects. Keep existing data.

See [Creating a database schema from models](#) for a general introduction to auto-migration auto-update.

### ***Define autoupdate and automigrate functions***

These are the two top-level functions that actually create the database schema and call the other functions.

For both functions, the parameters are:

- `models` (optional): a string model name or an array of string model names. If not present, apply to all models
- `cb`: callback function

```
MySQL.prototype.autoupdate = function (models, cb) {  
  // ...  
};  
  
MySQL.prototype.automigrate = function (models, cb) {  
  // ...  
};
```

The `automigrate` and `autoupdate` operations are usually mapped to a sequence of data definition language (DDL) statements.

### ***Defining helper functions***

First, define a few helper functions.

#### **Build a CREATE TABLE statement**

Define a function to create a database table for a model.

Parameters:

- `model`: Model name
- `cb`: Callback function

```
MySQL.prototype.createTable = function (model, cb) {  
  // ...  
};
```

#### **Check if models have corresponding tables**

Define a function to check if the specified models exist.

Parameters:

- `models` (optional): a string model name or an array of string model names. If not present, apply to all models
- `cb`: callback function

```
MySQL.prototype.isActual = function(models, cb) {  
  // ...  
};
```

#### **Alter a table**



```
MySQL.prototype.alterTable = function (model, actualFields, actualIndexes, done,
checkOnly) {
    // ...
};
```

### **Define metadata definition functions**

Define functions to create column and index definitions for models and model properties.

#### **Build column definition clause for a given model**

```
MySQL.prototype.buildColumnDefinitions =
MySQL.prototype.propertiesSQL = function (model) {
    // ...
};
```

#### **Build index definition clause for a given model property**

```
MySQL.prototype.buildIndex = function(model, property) {
    // ...
};
```

#### **Build indexes for a given model**

```
MySQL.prototype.buildIndexes = function(model) {
    // ...
};
```

#### **Build column definition for a given model property**

```
MySQL.prototype.buildColumnDefinition = function(model, prop) {
    // ...
};
```

#### **Build column type for a given model property**

```
MySQL.prototype.columnDataType = function (model, property) {
    // ...
};
```

## **Implementing CRUD methods**

- [Overview](#)
- [Implementing basic CRUD methods](#)
  - [Execute a SQL statement with parameters](#)
  - [Map values between a model property and a database column](#)
  - [Helpers to generate SQL statements and parse responses from DB drivers](#)
  - [Override other methods](#)

**Related articles:**

- [Implementing transaction methods](#)
  - [Begin transaction](#)
  - [Commit](#)
  - [Rollback](#)
  - [ExecuteSQL](#)

## Overview

A relational database connector is responsible for implementing a number of methods for create, read, update, and delete (CRUD) operations. The base `SqlConnector` has most of the methods implemented with the extension point to override certain behaviors that are specific to the underlying database.

To extend from `SqlConnector`, you must implement the minimum set of methods listed below.

## Implementing basic CRUD methods

### Execute a SQL statement with parameters

The `executeSQL` method is the core function that a connector must implement. Most of other CRUD methods are delegated to the `query` function. It executes a SQL statement with an array of parameters. `SELECT` statements will produce an array of records representing matching rows from the database while other statements such as `INSERT`, `DELETE`, or `UPDATE` will report the number of rows changed during the operation.

The function's parameters are:

- `sql`: A string containing the SQL statement to execute, possibly with placeholders for parameters.
- `params` (optional): An array of parameter values.
- `options`: Options passed to the CRUD method.
- `callback`: Callback function called after the SQL statement is executed.

```
MySQL.prototype.executeSQL = function (sql, params, options, callback) {
  // ...
};
```

### Map values between a model property and a database column

Define a `toColumnValue()` function that converts a model property value into the form required by the database column. The result should be one of following forms:

- `{sql: "point(?,?)", params:[10,20]}`
- `{sql: "'John'", params: []}`
- `"John"`

The function returns database column value as an [ParameterizedSQL](#) object

Parameters are:

- `propertyDef`: Object containing the model property definition.
- `value`: Model property value (any type).

```
SqlConnector.prototype.toColumnValue = function(propertyDef, value) {
  /*jshint unused:false */
  throw new Error('toColumnValue() must be implemented by the connector');
};
```

Define a `fromColumnValue()` function that converts the data from database column to model property. It returns a model property value.

Parameters are:

- `propertyDef`: Model property definition in an object.
- `value`: Column value (any type)

```
SqlConnector.prototype.fromColumnValue = function(propertyDef, value) {
  /*jshint unused:false */
  throw new Error('fromColumnValue() must be implemented by the connector');
};
```

### Helpers to generate SQL statements and parse responses from DB drivers

Define an `applyPagination()` method to build a new SQL statement with pagination support by wrapping the specified SQL.

The parameters are:

- `model`: String model name
- `stmt`: The SQL statement as a [ParameterizedSQL](#) object.
- `filter` The filter object from the query

```
SqlConnector.prototype.applyPagination = function(model, stmt, filter) {
  throw new Error('applyPagination() must be implemented by the connector');
};
```

Implement a `getCountForAffectedRows()` method to parse the result for SQL UPDATE/DELETE/INSERT for the number of rows affected.

Parameters are:

- `model`: model name (string)
- `info`: Status object

The method returns the number of rows affected.

```
SqlConnector.prototype.getCountForAffectedRows = function(model, info) {
  /*jshint unused:false */
  throw new Error('getCountForAffectedRows() must be implemented by the connector');
};
```

Implement `getInsertedId()` to parse the result for SQL INSERT for newly inserted ID.

Parameters:

- `model`: Model name
- `info`: The status object from driver

It returns the inserted ID value.

```
SqlConnector.prototype.getInsertedId = function(model, info) {
  /*jshint unused:false */
  throw new Error('getInsertedId() must be implemented by the connector');
};
```

Implement `escapeName()` and `escapeValue()` methods to escape the name and value for the underlying database. They both return a string that is an escaped name for SQL.

Parameter:

- `name` The name (string).

```

SqlConnector.prototype.escapeName = function(name) {
  /*jshint unused:false */
  throw new Error('escapeName() must be implemented by the connector');
};

SqlConnector.prototype.escapeValue = function(value) {
  /*jshint unused:false */
  throw new Error('escapeValue() must be implemented by the connector');
};

```

Implement `getPlaceholderForIdentifier()` to get the placeholder in SQL for identifiers, such as `??`. Implement `getPlaceholderForValue()` to get the placeholder in SQL for identifiers, such as `:1` or `?`.

Both methods return the placeholder as a string.

The key parameter is an optional key, such as 1 or id.

```

SqlConnector.prototype.getPlaceholderForIdentifier = function(key) {
  throw new Error('getPlaceholderForIdentifier() must be implemented by the connector');
};

SqlConnector.prototype.getPlaceholderForValue = function(key) {
  throw new Error('getPlaceholderForValue() must be implemented by the connector');
};

```

#### Override other methods

There are a list of methods that serve as default implementations in the `SqlConnector`. The connector can choose to override such methods to customize the behaviors. Please see a complete list at <http://apidocs.strongloop.com/loopback-connector/>.

#### Implementing transaction methods

To support database local transactions, the connector must implement the following methods.

##### Begin transaction

```

/**
 * Begin a new transaction
 * @param {String} isolationLevel
 * @param {Function} cb Callback function
 */
MySQL.prototype.beginTransaction = function(isolationLevel, cb) {
  // get a connection from the pool
  // set up the isolation level
  // call back with the connection object
};

```

##### Commit

```

/**
 * Commit a transaction
 * @param {Object} connection The connection object associated with the transaction
 * @param {Function} cb Callback function
 */
MySQL.prototype.commit = function(connection, cb) {
  // commit the transaction
  // release the connection back to the pool
  // callback
};

```

## Rollback

```

/**
 * Rollback a transaction
 * @param {Object} connection The connection object associated with the transaction
 * @param {Function} cb Callback function
 */
MySQL.prototype.rollback = function(connection, cb) {
  // rollback the transaction
  // release the connection back to the pool
  // callback
};

```

## ExecuteSQL

The transaction object is passed in via the *options.transaction*. The execution logic should check the presence of the *transaction* property and use the underlying *connection* so that the SQL statement will be executed as part of the transaction. For example,

```

if (transaction && transaction.connection &&
    transaction.connector === this) {
  if (debugEnabled) {
    debug('Execute SQL within a transaction');
  }
  executeWithConnection(null, transaction.connection);
} else {
  // Get a connection from the pool
  client.getConnection(executeWithConnection);
}

```

## Implementing model discovery

- Implementing functions to build SQL statements
  - Build a SQL statement to list schemas
  - Build a SQL statement to list tables
  - Build a SQL statement to list views
  - Build SQL statements to discover database objects
- Implementing discovery functions
  - Discover schemas
  - Discover a list of models
  - Discover a list of model properties for a given table
  - Discover primary keys for a given table
  - Discover foreign keys for a given table
  - Discover exported foreign keys for a given table
  - Discover indexes for a given table

Related articles:

- [Map column definition to model property definition](#)

For relational databases that have schema definitions, the connector can implement *discovery* to reverse engineer database schemas into model definitions. Implementing discovery is optional for a connector.

See [Discovering models from relational databases](#) for a general introduction to LoopBack model discovery.

### ***Implementing functions to build SQL statements***

You first need to implement methods to list schemas, tables, and views.

#### **Build a SQL statement to list schemas**

Implement a `querySchemas()` function that constructs and returns an SQL statement that lists all schemas (databases in MySQL).

It has a single parameter that is an options object.

It must return the SQL statement in a string.

```
function querySchemas(options) {  
  // ...  
}
```

#### **Build a SQL statement to list tables**

Implement a `queryTables()` function that constructs and returns an SQL statement that lists tables in a given schema (database).

It has a single parameter that is an options object that specifies the owner or schema, or "all" for all owners/schemas.

It must return the SQL statement in a string.

```
function queryTables(options) { // ... }
```

#### **Build a SQL statement to list views**

Implement a `queryViews()` function that constructs and returns an SQL statement that lists views in a given database.

It has a single parameter that is an options object that specifies the owner, or "all" for all owners.

It must return the SQL statement in a string.

```
function queryViews(options) { // ... }
```

#### **Build SQL statements to discover database objects**

```

/**
 * Build the sql statement to query columns for a given table
 * @param schema
 * @param table
 * @returns {String} The sql statement
 */
function queryColumns(schema, table) {
    // ...
}

/**
 * Build the sql statement for querying primary keys of a given table
 * @param schema
 * @param table
 * @returns {string}
 */
function queryPrimaryKeys(schema, table) {
    // ...
}

/**
 * Build the sql statement for querying foreign keys of a given table
 * @param schema
 * @param table
 * @returns {string}
 */
function queryForeignKeys(schema, table) {
    // ...
}

/**
 * Retrieves a description of the foreign key columns that reference the
 * given table's primary key columns (the foreign keys exported by a table).
 * They are ordered by fkTableOwner, fkTableName, and keySeq.
 * @param schema
 * @param table
 * @returns {string}
 */
function queryExportedForeignKeys(schema, table) {
    // ...
}

```

## Implementing discovery functions

### Discover schemas

```

MySQL.prototype.discoverDatabaseSchemas = function(options, cb) {
    // ...
};

```

### Discover a list of models

```

/**
 * Discover model definitions
 *
 * @param {Object} options Options for discovery
 * @param {Function} [cb] The callback function
 */
MySQL.prototype.discoverModelDefinitions = function(options, cb) {
    // ...
};

```

#### Discover a list of model properties for a given table

```

/**
 * Discover model properties from a table
 * @param {String} table The table name
 * @param {Object} options The options for discovery
 * @param {Function} [cb] The callback function
 *
 */
MySQL.prototype.discoverModelProperties = function(table, options, cb) {
    // ...
};

```

#### Discover primary keys for a given table

```

/**
 * Discover primary keys for a given table
 * @param {String} table The table name
 * @param {Object} options The options for discovery
 * @param {Function} [cb] The callback function
 */
MySQL.prototype.discoverPrimaryKeys = function(table, options, cb) {
    // ...
};

```

#### Discover foreign keys for a given table

```

/**
 * Discover foreign keys for a given table
 * @param {String} table The table name
 * @param {Object} options The options for discovery
 * @param {Function} [cb] The callback function
 */
MySQL.prototype.discoverForeignKeys = function(table, options, cb) {
    // ...
};

```

#### Discover exported foreign keys for a given table



```
/**
 * Discover foreign keys that reference to the primary key of this table
 * @param {String} table The table name
 * @param {Object} options The options for discovery
 * @param {Function} [cb] The callback function
 */
MySQL.prototype.discoverExportedForeignKeys = function(table, options, cb) {
  // ...
};
```

#### Discover indexes for a given table

```
MySQL.prototype.discoverIndexes = function(table, options, cb) {
  // ...
};
```

#### Map column definition to model property definition

```
MySQL.prototype.buildPropertyType = function(columnDefinition) {
  // ...
}
```

## Using built-in models

- [Overview](#)
- [Application model](#)
- [User model](#)
- [Access control models](#)
  - [ACL model](#)
- [Email model](#)
  - [Send email messages](#)
  - [Confirming email address](#)

## Overview

Loopback provides useful built-in models for common use cases:

- **Application model** - contains metadata for a client application that has its own identity and associated configuration with the LoopBack server.
- **User model** - register and authenticate users of your app locally or against third-party services.
- **Access control models** - ACL, AccessToken, Scope, Role, and RoleMapping models for controlling access to applications, resources, and methods.
- **Email model** - send emails to your app users using SMTP or third-party services.

The built-in models (except for Email) extend [PersistedModel](#), so they automatically have a full complement of create, update, and delete (CRUD) operations.



By default, only the User model is exposed over REST. To expose the other models, change the model's `public` property to `true` in `server/model-config.json`. See [Exposing models](#) for more information. **Use caution:** exposing some of these models over public API may be a security risk.

## Application model

Use the [Application model](#) to manage client applications and organize their users.

The default model definition file is [common/models/application.json](#) in the LoopBack repository.

## User model

The User model represents users of the application or API. Typically, you'll want to [extend the built-in User model](#) with your own model, for example, named "customer" or "client".

The default model definition file is [common/models/user.json](#) in the LoopBack repository.

For more information, see [Managing users](#).

## Access control models

Use access control models to control access to applications, resources, and methods. These models include:

- [ACL](#)
- [AccessToken](#)
- [Scope](#)
- [Role](#)
- [RoleMapping](#)

### ACL model

An ACL model connects principals to protected resources. The system grants permissions to principals (users or applications, that can be grouped into roles) .

- Protected resources: the model data and operations (model/property/method/relation)
- Whether a given client application or user is allowed to access (read, write, or execute) the protected resource.

Creating a new ACL instance.

#### server/boot/script.js

```
ACL.create( {principalType: ACL.USER,
  principalId: 'u001',
  model: 'User',
  property: ACL.ALL,
  accessType: ACL.ALL,
  permission: ACL.ALLOW},
  function (err, acl) { ACL.create( {principalType: ACL.USER,
    principalId: 'u001',
    model: 'User',
    property: ACL.ALL,
    accessType: ACL.READ,
    permission: ACL.DENY},
    function (err, acl) { }
```

## Email model

Set up an email data source by adding an entry to `/server/datasources.json`, such as the following (for example):

#### server/datasources.json

```
{
  ...
  "myEmailDataSource": {
    "connector": "mail",
    "transports": [{
      "type": "smtp",
      "host": "smtp.private.com",
      "secure": false,
      "port": 587,
      "tls": {
        "rejectUnauthorized": false
      },
      "auth": {
        "user": "me@private.com",
        "pass": "password"
      }
    }]
  }
  ...
}
```

See [Email connector](#) for more information on email data sources.

Then, reference the data source in `/server/model-config.json` as follows (for example):

#### server/model-config.json

```
{
  ...
  "Email": {
    "dataSource": "myEmailDataSource",
  },
  ...
}
```

## Send email messages

The following example illustrates how to send emails from an app. Add the following code to a file in the `/models` directory:

### server/models/model.js

```
module.exports = function(MyModel) {
  // send an email
  MyModel.sendEmail = function(cb) {
    MyModel.app.models.Email.send({
      to: 'foo@bar.com',
      from: 'you@gmail.com',
      subject: 'my subject',
      text: 'my text',
      html: 'my <em>html</em>'
    }, function(err, mail) {
      console.log('email sent!');
      cb(err);
    });
  };
};
```

The default model definition file is [common/models/email.json](#) in the LoopBack repository.



The mail connector uses [nodemailer](#). See the [nodemailer docs](#) for more information.

## Confirming email address

See [Verifying email addresses](#).

## Extending built-in models

- [Extending models using JSON](#)
- [Extending a model in JavaScript](#)
  - [Mixing in model definitions](#)
  - [Setting up a custom model](#)

## Extending models using JSON

When you create a model with the [model generator](#), you choose a base model, that is, the model that your model will "extend" and from which it will inherit methods and properties. The tool will set the `base` property in the [model definition JSON file](#) accordingly. For example, for a model that extends [PersistedModel](#):

### /common/models/model.json

```
{
  "name": "Order",
  "base": "PersistedModel",
  ...
}
```

To change the base model, simply edit the JSON file and change the `base` property.



In general, use `PersistedModel` as the base model when you want to store your data in a database using a connector such as MySQL or MongoDB. Use `Model` as the base for models that don't have CRUD semantics, for example, using connectors such as SOAP and REST.

See [Customizing models](#) for general information on how to create a model that extends (or "inherits from") another model.

See [LoopBack types](#) for information on data types supported.

## Extending a model in JavaScript

You can also extend models using JavaScript file in the model JavaScript file, `/common/models/modelName.js` (where `modelName` is the name of the model); for example:

### `/common/models/user.js`

```
var properties = {
  firstName: {type: String, required: true}
};

var options = {
  relations: {
    accessTokens: {
      model: accessToken,
      type: hasMany,
      foreignKey: userId
    },
    account: {
      model: account,
      type: belongsTo
    },
    transactions: {
      model: transaction,
      type: hasMany
    }
  },
  acls: [
    {
      permission: ALLOW,
      principalType: ROLE,
      principalId: $everyone,
      property: myMethod
    }
  ]
};

var user = loopback.Model.extend('user', properties, options);
```

See [LoopBack types](#) for information on data types supported.

## Mixing in model definitions

You may want to create models that share a common set of properties and logic. LoopBack enables you to "mix-in" one or more other models into a single model. This is a special case of the general ability to mix in model properties and functions. See [Defining mixins](#) for more information.

For example:

### `common/models/myModel.js`

```
var TimeStamp = modelBuilder.define('TimeStamp', {created: Date, modified: Date});
var Group = modelBuilder.define('Group', {groups: [String]});
User.mixin(Group, TimeStamp);
```

## Setting up a custom model

You may want to perform additional setup for an custom model, such as adding remote methods of another model. To do so, implement a `setup()` method on the new model. The `loopback.Model.extend()` function calls `setup()` so code you put in `setup()` will automatically get executed when the model is created.

For example:

#### **common/models/myModel.js**

```
MyModel = Model.extend('MyModel');

MyModel.on('myEvent', function() {
  console.log('meep meep!');
});

MyExtendedModel = MyModel.extend('MyExtendedModel');

MyModel.emit('myEvent'); // nothing happens (no event listener)

// this is where `setup()` becomes handy

MyModel.setup = function() {
  var MyModel = this;
  // since setup is called for every extended model
  // the extended model will also have the event listener
  MyModel.on('myEvent', function() {
    MyModel.printModelName();
  });
}
```

## Creating database tables for built-in models

LoopBack applications come with a small set of [built-in models](#). To create database tables for these models, follow the general procedure for [creating a database schema from models](#) using *auto-migration*.



If the database has existing tables, running `automigrate()` will drop and re-create the tables and thus may lead to loss of data. To avoid this problem use `autoupdate()`. See [Creating a database schema from models](#) for more information.

To create tables for LoopBack [built-in models](#), follow this procedure:

1. Follow the basic procedure in [Attaching models to data sources](#) to change from the in-memory data source to the database you want to use.
2. Create `server/create-lb-tables.js` file with the following:

```
var server = require('./server');
var ds = server.dataSources.db;
var lbTables = ['User', 'AccessToken', 'ACL', 'RoleMapping', 'Role'];
ds.automigrate(lbTables, function(er) {
  if (er) throw er;
  console.log('Looback tables [' + lbTables + '] created in ', ds.adapter.name);
  ds.disconnect();
});
```

3. Run the script manually:

```
$ cd server
$ node create-lb-tables.js
```

## Model property reference



This reference information is being moved to the API documentation. Until that is complete, it is provided here.

- [Application properties](#)
- [ACL properties](#)
- [Role properties](#)
- [Scope properties](#)
- [RoleMapping properties](#)

### Application properties

The application model represents the metadata for a client application that has its own identity and associated configuration with the LoopBack server.

See <http://apidocs.strongloop.com/loopback/#application> for a list of the application model properties.

### ACL properties

See <http://apidocs.strongloop.com/loopback/#acl> for a list of ACL model properties.

### Role properties

The following table describes the properties of the role model:

Property	Type	Description
id	String	Role ID
name	String	Role name
description	String	Description of the role
created	Date	Timestamp of creation date
modified	Date	Timestamp of modification date

LoopBack defines some special roles:

Identifier	Name	Description
Role.OWNER	\$owner	Owner of the object
Role.RELATED	\$related	Any user with a relationship to the object
Role.AUTHENTICATED	\$authenticated	Authenticated user
Role.UNAUTHENTICATED	\$unauthenticated	Unauthenticated user
Role.EVERYONE	\$everyone	Everyone

### Scope properties

The following table describes the properties of the Scope model:

Property	Type	Description
name	String	Scope name; required
description	String	Description of the scope

## RoleMapping properties

A RoleMapping entry maps one or more principals to one role. A RoleMapping entry belongs to one role, based on the roleId property.

The following table describes the properties of the roleMapping model:

Property	Type	Description
id	String	ID
roleId	String	Role ID
principalType	String	Principal type, such as user, application, or role
principalId	String	Principal ID

## Built-in models REST API

LoopBack provides a number of [built-in models](#) that have REST APIs. Many of them inherit endpoints from the generic [PersistedModel REST API](#).

By default, LoopBack uses `/api` as the URI root for the application REST API. To change it, set the `apiPath` variable in the application `app.js` file.

For more information, see [Exposing models over REST](#).

The built-in models are:

- [PersistedModel REST API](#)
- [Access token REST API](#)
- [ACL REST API](#)
- [Application REST API](#)
- [Email REST API](#)
- [Relation REST API](#)
- [Role REST API](#)
- [User REST API](#)

## PersistedModel REST API



You can use the [StrongLoop API Explorer](#) to quickly construct and make requests to a LoopBack app running on the server. If a LoopBack app is running on `localhost` at port 3000, you can find the API Explorer at <http://localhost:3000/explorer/>.

- [Overview](#)
- [Create model instance](#)
- [Update / insert instance](#)
- [Check instance existence](#)
- [Find instance by ID](#)
- [Find matching instances](#)
- [Find first instance](#)
- [Delete model instance](#)
- [Get instance count](#)
- [Update model instance attributes](#)
- [Update matching model instances](#)
- [Create Change Stream](#)
- [Get Change Stream](#)

### Overview

[PersistedModel](#) is the base class for models connected to persistent data sources such as databases and is also the base class for all built-in models (except [Email](#)). It provides all the standard create, read, update, and delete (CRUD) operations and exposes REST endpoints for them.

By default, LoopBack uses `/api` as the URI root for the REST API. You can change this by changing the `restApiRoot` property in the application `/server/config.json` file. See [config.json](#) for more information.

The model names in the REST API are generally the plural form of the model name. By default this is simply the name with an "s" appended; for example, if the model is "car" then "cars" is the plural form. The plural form can be customized to be of any value in the [model definition JSON file](#).

### Related articles

- [Creating models](#)
- [Customizing models](#)
- [Creating model relations](#)
- [Querying data](#)
- [Model definition JSON file](#)
- [PersistedModel REST API](#)



## Create model instance

Create a new instance of the model and persist it to the data source.

```
POST /modelName
```

### Arguments

- Form data - Model instance data. Can be JSON representing a single model instance or an array of model instances.

### Example

**Request URL:** POST http://localhost:3000/api/locations

**Request body:**

```
{ "name": "L1", "street": "107 S B St", "city": "San Mateo", "zipcode": "94401" }
```

**Response status code:** 200

**Response body:**

```
{
  "id": "96",
  "street": "107 S B St",
  "city": "San Mateo",
  "zipcode": "94401",
  "name": "L1"
}
```

## Update / insert instance

Update an existing model instance or insert a new one into the data source. The update will override any specified attributes in the request data object. It won't remove existing ones unless the value is set to null.

Performs [upsert](#) to detect if there is a matching instance; if not, then inserts (creates) a new instance. If there is a matching instance, updates it.

```
PUT /modelName
```

### Arguments

- Form data - model instance data in JSON format.

### Examples

#### Insert

**Request URL:** PUT http://localhost:3000/api/locations

**Request body:**

```
{ "name": "L1", "street": "107 S B St", "city": "San Mateo", "zipcode": "94401" }
```

**Response status code:** 200

**Response body:**

```
{
  "id": 98,
  "street": "107 S B St",
  "city": "San Mateo",
  "zipcode": 94401,
  "name": "L1"
}
```

## Update

**Request URL:** PUT `http://localhost:3000/api/locations`

**Request body:**

```
{"id": "98", "name": "L4", "street": "107 S B St", "city": "San Mateo", "zipcode": "94401"}
```

**Response status code:** 200

**Response body:**

```
{
  "id": 98,
  "street": "107 S B St",
  "city": "San Mateo",
  "zipcode": 94401,
  "name": "L4"
}
```

## Check instance existence

Check whether a model instance exists by ID in the data source.

```
GET /modelName/modelID/exists
```

## Arguments

- *modelID* - model instance ID

## Example

**Request URL:** GET `http://localhost:3000/api/locations/88/exists`

**Response status code:** 200

**Response body:**

```
{
  "exists": true
}
```

## Find instance by ID

Find a model instance by ID from the data source.

```
GET /modelName/modelID?filter=[filterType1]=<val1>&filter[filterType2]=<val2>...
```

See also [Accessing related models](#) for an example of fetching data from related models.

## Arguments

- **modelID** - Model instance ID
- *filterType1*, *filterType2*, and so on, are the filter types. This operation supports only include and fields filters; see [Include filter](#) and [Fields filter](#) for more information.
- *val1*, *val2* are the corresponding values.

## Example

**Request URL:** GET http://localhost:3000/api/locations/88

**Response status code:** 200

**Response body:**

```
{
  "id": 88,
  "street": "390 Lang Road",
  "city": "Burlingame",
  "zipcode": 94010,
  "name": "Bay Area Firearms"
}
```

## Find matching instances

Find all instances of the model matched by filter from the data source.

```
GET /modelName?filter={filterType1}=<val1>&filter[filterType2]=<val2>...
```

## Arguments

Pass the arguments as the value of the `filter` HTTP query parameters, where:

- *filterType1*, *filterType2*, and so on, are the filter types.
- *val1*, *val2* are the corresponding values.

See [Querying data](#) for an explanation of filter syntax.

## Example

Request without filter:

**Request URL:** GET http://localhost:3000/api/locations

Request with a filter to limit response to two records:

**Request URL:** GET http://localhost:3000/api/locations?filter[limit]=2

**Response status code:** 200

**Response body:**

```
[
  {
    "id": "87",
    "street": "7153 East Thomas Road",
    "city": "Scottsdale",
    "zipcode": 85251,
    "name": "Phoenix Equipment Rentals"
  },
  {
    "id": "88",
    "street": "390 Lang Road",
    "city": "Burlingame",
    "zipcode": 94010,
    "name": "Bay Area Firearms"
  }
]
```

### Find first instance

Find first instance of the model matched by filter from the data source.

```
GET /modelName/findOne?filter=[filterType1]=<val1>&filter[filterType2]=<val2>...
```

### Arguments

Query parameters:

- **filter** - Filter that defines where, order, fields, skip, and limit. It's same as find's filter argument. See [Querying data](#) details.

### Example

**Request URL:** GET http://localhost:3000/api/locations/findOne?filter[where][city]=Scottsdale

**Response status code:** 200

**Response body:**

```
{
  "id": "87",
  "street": "7153 East Thomas Road",
  "city": "Scottsdale",
  "zipcode": 85251,
  "name": "Phoenix Equipment Rentals"
}
```

### Delete model instance

Delete a model instance by ID from the data source

```
DELETE /modelName/modelID
```

### Arguments

- **modelID** - model instance ID

### Example

**Request URL:** DELETE http://localhost:3000/api/locations/88

**Response status code:** 204

### Get instance count

Count instances of the model from the data source matched by where clause.

```
GET /modelName/count?where[property]=value
```

### Arguments

- **where** - criteria to match model instances. See [Where filter](#) for more information.

### Example

Count without "where" filter

**Request URL:** GET http://localhost:3000/api/locations/count

Count with a "where" filter

**Request URL:** GET http://localhost:3000/api/locations/count?where[city]=Burlingame

**Response status code:** 200

**Response body:**

```
{
  count: 6
}
```

### Update model instance attributes

Update attributes of a model instance and persist into the data source.

```
PUT /model/modelID
```

### Arguments

- **data** - An object containing property name/value pairs
- **modelID** - The model instance ID

### Example

**Request URL:** PUT http://localhost:3000/api/locations/88

**Request body:**

```
{ "name": "L2" }
```

**Response status code:** 200

**Response body:**

```
{
  "id": "88",
  "street": "390 Lang Road",
  "city": "Burlingame",
  "zipcode": 94010,
  "name": "L2"
}
```

## Update matching model instances

Update attributes of matching model instances and persist into the data source.

```
POST /modelName/update?where[property]=value
```

### Arguments

- **data** - An object containing property name/value pairs.
- **where** - The where object to select matching instances. See [Where filter](#) for more information.

### Example

**Request URL:** POST `http://localhost:3000/api/locations/update?where[city]=Burlingame`

**Request body:**

```
{ "city": "San Jose" }
```

**Response status code:** 204

## Create Change Stream

Create a new change stream.

```
POST /modelName/change-stream?_format=event-stream
```

### Arguments

- **Form data** - Model instance data. JSON representing a single model instance or an array of model instances.

### Example

**Request URL:** POST `http://localhost:3000/api/locations/`

**Request body:**

```
{ "city": "San Jose" }
```

## Get Change Stream

Fetch a change stream.

```
GET /modelName/change-stream?_format=event-stream
```

## Access token REST API

All of the endpoints in the access token REST API are inherited from the generic [PersistedModel REST API](#). The reference is provided here for convenience.

## Quick reference

URI Pattern	HTTP Verb	Default Permission	Description	Arguments
/accessTokens	POST	Allow	<a href="#">Add access token instance</a> and persist to data source.	JSON object (in request body)
/accessTokens	GET	Deny	<a href="#">Find instances</a> of accessTokens that match specified filter.	One or more filters in query parameters: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• where</li><li>• include</li><li>• order</li><li>• limit</li><li>• skip / offset</li><li>• fields</li></ul>
/accessTokens	PUT	Deny	<a href="#">Update / insert access token instance</a> and persist to data source.	JSON object (in request body)
/accessTokens/ <i>id</i>	GET	Deny	<a href="#">Find access token by ID</a> : Return data for the specified access token instance ID.	<i>id</i> , the access token instance ID (in URI path)
/accessTokens/ <i>id</i>	PUT	Deny	<a href="#">Update attributes</a> for specified access token ID and persist.	Query parameters: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• data - An object containing property name/value pairs</li><li>• <i>id</i> - The model id</li></ul>
/accessTokens/ <i>id</i>	DELETE	Deny	<a href="#">Delete access token</a> with specified instance ID.	<i>id</i> , access token ID (in URI path)
/accessTokens/ <i>id</i> /exists	GET	Deny	<a href="#">Check instance existence</a> : Return true if specified access token ID exists.	URI path: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <i>id</i> - Model instance ID</li></ul>
/accessTokens/count	GET	Deny	<a href="#">Return the number of access token instances</a> that matches specified where clause.	Where filter specified in query parameter
/accessTokens/findOne	GET	Deny	<a href="#">Find first access token instance</a> that matches specified filter.	Same as <a href="#">Find matching instances</a> .

## ACL REST API

All of the endpoints in the ACL REST API are inherited from the [PersistedModel REST API](#). The reference is provided here for convenience.

By default, the ACL REST API is not exposed. To expose it, add the following to models.json:

```
"acl": {
  "public": true,
  "options": {
    "base": "ACL"
  },
  "dataSource": "db"
},
```

## Quick reference

URI Pattern	HTTP Verb	Default Permission	Description	Arguments
/acls	POST	Allow	<a href="#">Add ACL instance</a> and persist to data source.	JSON object (in request body)

/acls	GET	Deny	<a href="#">Find instances</a> of ACLs that match specified filter.	One or more filters in query parameters: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• where</li> <li>• include</li> <li>• order</li> <li>• limit</li> <li>• skip / offset</li> <li>• fields</li> </ul>
/acls	PUT	Deny	<a href="#">Update / insert ACL instance</a> and persist to data source.	JSON object (in request body)
/acls/id	GET	Deny	<a href="#">Find ACL by ID</a> : Return data for the specified ACL instance ID.	<i>id</i> , the ACL instance ID (in URI path)
/acls/id	PUT	Deny	<a href="#">Update attributes</a> for specified ACL ID and persist.	Query parameters: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• data - An object containing property name/value pairs</li> <li>• <i>id</i> - The model id</li> </ul>
/acls/id	DELETE	Deny	<a href="#">Delete ACL</a> with specified instance ID.	<i>id</i> , acls ID (in URI path)
/acls/id/exists	GET	Deny	<a href="#">Check instance existence</a> : Return true if specified ACL ID exists.	URI path: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>id</i> - Model instance ID</li> </ul>
/acls/count	GET	Deny	<a href="#">Return the number of ACL instances</a> that matches specified where clause.	Where filter specified in query parameter
/acls/findOne	GET	Deny	<a href="#">Find first ACL instance</a> that matches specified filter.	Same as <a href="#">Find matching instances</a> .

## Application REST API

All of the endpoints in the Application REST API are inherited from the [PersistedModel REST API](#). The reference is provided here for convenience.

### Quick reference

URI Pattern	HTTP Verb	Default Permission	Description	Arguments
/applications	POST	Allow	<a href="#">Add application instance</a> and persist to data source.	JSON object (in request body)
/applications	GET	Deny	<a href="#">Find instances</a> of applications that match specified filter.	One or more filters in query parameters: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• where</li> <li>• include</li> <li>• order</li> <li>• limit</li> <li>• skip / offset</li> <li>• fields</li> </ul>
/applications	PUT	Deny	<a href="#">Update / insert application instance</a> and persist to data source.	JSON object (in request body)
/applications/id	GET	Deny	<a href="#">Find application by ID</a> : Return data for the specified application instance ID.	<i>id</i> , the application instance ID (in URI path)
/applications/id	PUT	Deny	<a href="#">Update attributes</a> for specified application ID and persist.	Query parameters: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• data - An object containing property name/value pairs</li> <li>• <i>id</i> - The model id</li> </ul>
/applications/id	DELETE	Deny	<a href="#">Delete application</a> with specified instance ID.	<i>id</i> , application ID (in URI path)
/applications/id/exists	GET	Deny	<a href="#">Check instance existence</a> : Return true if specified application ID exists.	URI path: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>id</i> - Model instance ID</li> </ul>



/applications/count	GET	Deny	<a href="#">Return the number of application instances</a> that matches specified where clause.	Where filter specified in query parameter
/applications/findOne	GET	Deny	<a href="#">Find first application instance</a> that matches specified filter.	Same as <a href="#">Find matching instances</a> .

## Email REST API

- [Operation name](#)

### Quick reference

URI Pattern	HTTP Verb	Default Permission	Action	Arguments
/foo/bar/baz	One of: GET, POST, PUT, DELETE	Allow / Deny	Description plus link to section with full reference.  NOTE: Rand will add links to sections.	List arguments in POST body, query params, or path.

### Operation name

Brief description goes here.

```
POST /modelName
```

### Arguments

- List of all arguments in POST data or query string

### Example

Request:

```
curl -X POST -H "Content-Type:application/json"
-d '{... JSON ... }'
http://localhost:3000/foo
```

Response:

```
// Response JSON
```

### Errors

List error codes and return JSON format if applicable.

## Relation REST API



These endpoints are part of the [PersistedModel REST API](#), but are presented in a separate page for ease of reference.

- [Get related model instances](#)

- Get hasMany related model instances
- Create hasMany related model instance
- Delete hasMany related model instances
- List belongsTo related model instances
- Aggregate models following relations

### Get related model instances

Follow the relations from one model to another one to get instances of the associated model.

```
GET /model1-name/instanceID/model2-name
```

### Arguments

- *instanceID* - ID of instance in model1.
- *model1-name* - name of first model.
- *model2-name* - name of second related model.

### Example

Request:

```
GET http://localhost:3000/locations/88/inventory
```

Response:

```
[
  {
    "productId": "2",
    "locationId": "88",
    "available": 10,
    "total": 10
  },
  {
    "productId": "3",
    "locationId": "88",
    "available": 1,
    "total": 1
  }
]
```

### Get hasMany related model instances

List related model instances for specified *model-name* identified by the *instance-ID*, for hasMany relationship.

```
GET /model-name/instanceID/hasManyRelationName
```

### Create hasMany related model instance

Create a related model instance for specified *model-name* identified by *instance-ID*, for hasMany relationship.

```
POST /model1-name/instanceID/hasManyRelationName
```

### Delete hasMany related model instances

Delete related model instances for specified *model-name* identified by *instance-ID*, for hasMany relationship.

```
DELETE /model1-name/instance-ID/hasMany-relation-name
```

### List belongsTo related model instances

List the related model instances for the given model identified by *instance-ID*, for hasMany relationship.

```
GET /model-name/instance-ID/belongsToRelationName
```

### Aggregate models following relations

It's often desirable to include related model instances in the response to a query so that the client doesn't have to make multiple calls.

```
GET /model1-name?filter[include]=...
```

#### Arguments

- *include* - The object that describes a hierarchy of relations to be included

#### Example

Retrieve all members including the posts with the following request:

```
GET /api/members?filter[include]=posts
```

The API returns the following JSON:

```
[
  {
    "name": "Member A",
    "age": 21,
    "id": 1,
    "posts": [
      {
        "title": "Post A",
        "id": 1,
        "memberId": 1
      },
      {
        "title": "Post B",
        "id": 2,
        "memberId": 1
      },
      {
        "title": "Post C",
        "id": 3,
        "memberId": 1
      }
    ]
  },
  {
    "name": "Member B",
    "age": 22,
    "id": 2,
    "posts": [
      {
        "title": "Post D",
        "id": 4,
        "memberId": 2
      }
    ]
  },
  ... ]
```

The following request retrieves all members, including the posts, which further includes the author:

```
GET /api/members?filter[include][posts]=author
```

The API returns the following JSON:

```
[
  {
    "name": "Member A",
    "age": 21,
    "id": 1,
    "posts": [
      {
        "title": "Post A",
        "id": 1,
        "memberId": 1,
        "author": {
          "name": "Member A",
          "age": 21,
          "id": 1
        }
      },
      {
        "title": "Post B",
        "id": 2,
        "memberId": 1,
        "author": {
          "name": "Member A",
          "age": 21,
          "id": 1
        }
      },
      {
        "title": "Post C",
        "id": 3,
        "memberId": 1,
        "author": {
          "name": "Member A",
          "age": 21,
          "id": 1
        }
      }
    ]
  },
  {
    "name": "Member B",
    "age": 22,
    "id": 2,
    "posts": [
      {
        "title": "Post D",
        "id": 4,
        "memberId": 2,
        "author": {
          "name": "Member B",
          "age": 22,
          "id": 2
        }
      }
    ]
  }
], ... ]
```

The following request retrieves all members who are 21 years old, including the posts, which further includes the author:

```
GET /api/members?filter[include][posts]=author&filter[where][age]=21
```

The API returns the following JSON:

```
[
  {
    "name": "Member A",
    "age": 21,
    "id": 1,
    "posts": [
      {
        "title": "Post A",
        "id": 1,
        "memberId": 1,
        "author": {
          "name": "Member A",
          "age": 21,
          "id": 1
        }
      },
      {
        "title": "Post B",
        "id": 2,
        "memberId": 1,
        "author": {
          "name": "Member A",
          "age": 21,
          "id": 1
        }
      },
      {
        "title": "Post C",
        "id": 3,
        "memberId": 1,
        "author": {
          "name": "Member A",
          "age": 21,
          "id": 1
        }
      }
    ]
  }
]
```

The following request retrieves two members, including the posts, which further includes the author:

```
GET /api/members?filter[include][posts]=author&filter[limit]=2
```

The API returns the following JSON:

```
[
  {
    "name": "Member A",
    "age": 21,
    "id": 1,
    "posts": [
      {
        "title": "Post A",
        "id": 1,
        "memberId": 1,
        "author": {
          "name": "Member A",
          "age": 21,
          "id": 1
        }
      },
      {
        "title": "Post B",
        "id": 2,
        "memberId": 1,
        "author": {
          "name": "Member A",
          "age": 21,
          "id": 1
        }
      },
      {
        "title": "Post C",
        "id": 3,
        "memberId": 1,
        "author": {
          "name": "Member A",
          "age": 21,
          "id": 1
        }
      }
    ]
  },
  {
    "name": "Member B",
    "age": 22,
    "id": 2,
    "posts": [
      {
        "title": "Post D",
        "id": 4,
        "memberId": 2,
        "author": {
          "name": "Member B",
          "age": 22,
          "id": 2
        }
      }
    ]
  }
]
```

The following request retrieves all members, including the posts and passports.

GET /api/members?filter[include]=posts&filter[include]=passports

The API returns the following JSON:

```
[
  {
    "name": "Member A",
    "age": 21,
    "id": 1,
    "posts": [
      {
        "title": "Post A",
        "id": 1,
        "memberId": 1
      },
      {
        "title": "Post B",
        "id": 2,
        "memberId": 1
      },
      {
        "title": "Post C",
        "id": 3,
        "memberId": 1
      }
    ],
    "passports": [
      {
        "number": "1",
        "id": 1,
        "ownerId": 1
      }
    ]
  },
  {
    "name": "Member B",
    "age": 22,
    "id": 2,
    "posts": [
      {
        "title": "Post D",
        "id": 4,
        "memberId": 2
      }
    ],
    "passports": [
      {
        "number": "2",
        "id": 2,
        "ownerId": 2
      }
    ]
  },
  ... ]
```

## Errors

None



## Role REST API

All of the endpoints in the Role REST API are inherited from the generic [PersistedModel REST API](#). The reference is provided here for convenience.

### Quick reference

URI Pattern	HTTP Verb	Default Permission	Description	Arguments
/roles	POST	Allow	<a href="#">Add role instance</a> and persist to data source.	JSON object (in request body)
/roles	GET	Deny	<a href="#">Find instances</a> of roles that match specified filter.	One or more filters in query parameters: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• where</li><li>• include</li><li>• order</li><li>• limit</li><li>• skip / offset</li><li>• fields</li></ul>
/roles	PUT	Deny	<a href="#">Update / insert role instance</a> and persist to data source.	JSON object (in request body)
/roles/ <i>id</i>	GET	Deny	<a href="#">Find role by ID</a> : Return data for the specified role instance ID.	<i>id</i> , the role instance ID (in URI path)
/roles/ <i>id</i>	PUT	Deny	<a href="#">Update attributes</a> for specified role ID and persist.	Query parameters: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• data - An object containing property name/value pairs</li><li>• <i>id</i> - The model id</li></ul>
/roles/ <i>id</i>	DELETE	Deny	<a href="#">Delete role</a> with specified instance ID.	<i>id</i> , role ID (in URI path)
/roles/ <i>id</i> /exists	GET	Deny	<a href="#">Check instance existence</a> : Return true if specified role ID exists.	URI path: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <i>id</i> - Model instance ID</li></ul>
/roles/count	GET	Deny	<a href="#">Return the number of role instances</a> that matches specified where clause.	Where filter specified in query parameter
/roles/findOne	GET	Deny	<a href="#">Find first role instance</a> that matches specified filter.	Same as <a href="#">Find matching instances</a> .

## User REST API



You can use the [StrongLoop API Explorer](#) to quickly construct and make requests to a LoopBack app running on the server. If a LoopBack app is running on `localhost` at port 3000, you can find the API Explorer at <http://localhost:3000/explorer/>.

All of the endpoints in the table below are inherited from [PersistedModel REST API](#), except for the following:

- [Log in user](#)
- [Log out user](#)
- [Confirm email address](#)
- [Reset password](#)

### Quick reference

URI Pattern	HTTP Verb	Default Permission	Description	Arguments
-------------	-----------	--------------------	-------------	-----------

/users	POST	Allow	Add user instance and persist to data source. Inherited from PersistedModel API.	<p>JSON object (in request body) providing <b>User object properties</b>: username, password, email. LoopBack sets values for emailVerified and verificationToken.</p> <p>NOTE: A value for username is not required, but a value for email is. LoopBack validates a unique value for password is provided. LoopBack does not automatically maintain values of the created and lastUpdated properties; you can set them manually if you wish.</p>
/users	GET	Deny	Find matching instances of users that match specified filter. Inherited from PersistedModel API.	<p>One or more filters in query parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• where</li> <li>• include</li> <li>• order</li> <li>• limit</li> <li>• skip / offset</li> <li>• fields</li> </ul>
/users	PUT	Deny	Update / insert user instance and persist to data source. Inherited from PersistedModel API.	<p>JSON object (in request body)</p> <p>Same as for POST /users</p>
/users/id	GET	Deny	Find user by ID: Return data for the specified user ID. Inherited from PersistedModel API.	id, the user ID (in URI path)
/users/id	PUT	Deny	Update user attributes for specified user ID and persist. Inherited from PersistedModel API.	<p>Query parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• data An object containing property name/value pairs</li> <li>• id The model id</li> </ul>
/users/id	DELETE	Deny	Delete user with specified instance ID. Inherited from PersistedModel API.	id, user ID (in URI path)
/users/id/accessTokens	GET	Deny	Returns access token for specified user ID.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• id, user ID, in URI path</li> <li>• where in query parameters</li> </ul>
/users/id/accessTokens	POST	Deny	Create access token for specified user ID.	id, user ID, in URI path
/users/id/accessTokens	DELETE	Deny	Delete access token for specified user ID.	id, user ID, in URI path
/users/confirm	GET	Deny	Confirm email address for specified user.	<p>Query parameters:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• uid</li> <li>• token</li> <li>• redirect</li> </ul>

/users/count	GET	Deny	Return number of user instances that match specified where clause. Inherited from PersistedModel API.	"Where" filter specified in query parameter
/users/id/exists	GET	Deny	Check instance existence: Return true if specified user ID exists. Inherited from PersistedModel API.	URI path: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>users</i> - Model name</li> <li>• <i>id</i> - Model instance ID</li> </ul>
/users/findOne	GET	Deny	Find first user instance that matches specified filter. Inherited from PersistedModel API.	Same as Find matching instances.
/users/login[?include=user]	POST	Allow	Log in the specified user.	Username and password in POST body.  If query parameter is include=user, then returns the user object.
/users/logout	POST	Allow	Log out the specified user.	Access token in POST body.
/users/reset	POST		Reset password for the specified user.	In POST body

## Log in user

```
POST /users/login
```

You must provide a username or an email, and the password in the request body. To ensure these values are encrypted, include these as part of the body and make sure you are serving your app over HTTPS (through a proxy or using the HTTPS node server).

You may also specify how long you would like the access token to be valid by providing a `ttl` (time to live) property with value in **milliseconds**.

## Example

**Request URL:** POST `http://localhost:3000/users/login`

**Request body:**

```
{
  "email": "foo@bar.com",
  "password": "bar",
  "ttl": 1209600000
}
```

**Response status code:** 200

**Response body:**

```
{
  "id": "PqosmmPCdQgwerDYwQcVCxMakGQV0BSUwG4iGVLvD3XUYZRQkylcmG8ocmzsVpEE",
  "ttl": 1209600,
  "created": "2014-12-23T08:31:33.464Z",
  "userId": 1
}
```

The access token for the user's session is returned in the `id` key of the response. It must be specified in the query parameter `access_token` for all the APIs that requires the user to be logged in. For example:

`http://localhost:3000/api/Users/logout?access_token=PqosmmPCdQgwerDYwQcVCxMakGQV0BSUwG4iGVLvD3XUYZRQkylcmG8ocmzsVpEE`.

## Log out user

POST `/users/logout`

### Example

**Request URL:** POST

`http://localhost:3000/api/Users/logout?access_token=PqosmmPCdQgwerDYwQcVCxMakGQV0BSUwG4iGVLvD3XUYZRQkylcmG8ocmzsVpEE`.

**Response status code:** 204

## Confirm email address

Require a user to verify their email address before being able to login. This will send an email to the user containing a link to verify their address. Once the user follows the link they will be redirected to web root (`/`) and will be able to login normally.

GET `/users/confirm`

### Parameters

Query parameters:

- `uid`
- `token`
- `redirect`

### Return value

If token invalid: HTTP 400

If user not found: HTTP 404

If successful: HTTP 204

### Reset password

POST `/users/reset`

### Parameters

POST payload:

```
{
  "email": "foo@bar.com"
}
...
```

#### Return value

```
200 OK
```

You must handle the `'resetPasswordRequest'` event to send a reset email containing an access token to the correct user.

The example below shows how to get an access token that a user can use to reset their password.

#### common/models/user.js

```
User.on('resetPasswordRequest', function (info) {
  console.log(info.email); // the email of the requested user
  console.log(info.accessToken.id); // the temp access token to allow password reset

  // requires AccessToken.belongsTo(User)
  info.accessToken.user(function (err, user) {
    console.log(user); // the actual user
  });
});
```

See also [Verifying email addresses](#) (Registering users).

## Working with data

Once you have defined a model, then you can use create, read, update, and delete (CRUD) operations to add data to the model, manipulate the data, and query it. All LoopBack models that are connected to persistent data stores (such as a database) automatically have the CRUD operations of the [PersistedModel](#) class.


Operation	REST	LoopBack model method (Node API)*	Corresponding SQL Operation
Create	<a href="#">PUT /modelName</a> <a href="#">POST /modelName</a>	<code>create()</code> *	INSERT
Read (Retrieve)	<a href="#">GET /modelName?filter=...</a>	<code>find()</code> *	SELECT
Update (Modify)	<a href="#">POST /modelName</a> <a href="#">PUT /modelName</a>	<code>updateAll()</code> *	UPDATE
Delete (Destroy)	<a href="#">DELETE /modelName/modelID</a>	<code>destroyById()</code> *	DELETE

\*Methods listed are just prominent examples; other methods may provide similar functionality; for example: `findById()`, `findOne()`, and `findOrCreate()`. See [PersistedModel API documentation](#) for more information.


See the following articles for more information:

- [Creating, updating, and deleting data](#)
- [Querying data](#)
  - [Fields filter](#)
  - [Include filter](#)
  - [Limit filter](#)

- [Order filter](#)
- [Skip filter](#)
- [Where filter](#)
- [Using database transactions](#)
- [Realtime server-sent events](#)


 Methods of models in the [AngularJS client](#) have a different signature than those of the Node API. For more information, see [AngularJS SDK API](#).

## Creating, updating, and deleting data

 Methods of models in the [AngularJS client](#) have a different signature than those of the Node API. For more information, see [AngularJS SDK API](#).

`PersistedModel` has a large set of methods for creating, updating, and deleting data.

Model data is also called a *model instance*; in database terminology, conceptually a model corresponds to a table, and a model instance corresponds to a *row* or *record* in the table.


 For information on model *read* operations, see [Querying data](#).

- [Creating data \(model instances\)](#)
- [Updating data \(model instances\)](#)
  - [Performing bulk updates](#)
- [Deleting data](#)

### Creating data (model instances)

Use the following `PersistedModel` methods to add data, that is to insert or create instances:

- `create` - creates a new model instance (record).
- `upsert` - checks if the instance (record) exists, based on the designated [ID property](#), which must have a unique value; if the instance already exists, the method updates that instance. Otherwise, it inserts a new instance.
- `findOrCreate` - Find one instance matching the optional [Where filter](#). If found, returns the object. If not found, creates a new instance (record).
- `save` - Save model instance. If the instance doesn't have an ID, then calls `create` instead. Triggers: validate, save, update, or create.


 The where clause used with `findOrCreate()` is slightly different than that for queries. Omit `{ where : ... }` from the where clause. Simply provide the condition as the first argument.

For more information, see [Where filter \(Where clause for updates and deletes\)](#).

### Updating data (model instances)

Static method (called on the Model object):

- `updateAll` - updates multiple instances (records) that match the specified [where clause](#).

 The where clause used with `updateAll()` is slightly different than that for queries. Omit `{ where : ... }` from the where clause. Simply provide the condition as the first argument.

For more information, see [Where filter \(Where clause for updates and deletes\)](#).

Instance methods (called on a single model instance):

- `updateAttribute` - Update a single attribute (property).
- `updateAttributes` - Update set of attributes (properties). Performs validation before updating.

### Performing bulk updates

- `createUpdates`
- `bulkUpdate`

## Deleting data

Static methods (called on the Model object):

- [destroyAll](#) - Delete all model instances that match the optional [Where filter](#).
- [destroyById](#) - Delete the model instance with the specified ID.



The where clause with `destroyAll()` is slightly different than that for queries. Omit `{ where : ... }` from the where clause. Simply provide the condition as the first argument.

For more information, see [Where filter \(Where clause for updates and deletes\)](#).

## Querying data



Methods of models in the [AngularJS client](#) have a different signature than those of the Node API. For more information, see [AngularJS SDK API](#).

- [Overview](#)
  - [Examples](#)
- [Filters](#)
  - [REST syntax](#)
  - [Node syntax](#)
  - [Using "stringified" JSON in REST queries](#)
  - [Filtering arrays of objects](#)

See also: [Querying related models](#).

### Overview

A *query* is a read operation on models that returns a set of data or results. You can query LoopBack models using a Node API and a REST API, using *filters*, as outlined in the following table. Filters specify criteria for the returned data set. The capabilities and options of the two APIs are the same—the only difference is the syntax used in HTTP requests versus Node function calls. In both cases, LoopBack models return JSON.

Query	Model API (Node)	REST API
Find all model instances using specified filters.	<code>find(filter, callback)</code>  Where filter is a JSON object containing the query filters.  See <a href="#">Filters</a> below.	GET <code>/modelName?filter...</code>  See <a href="#">Model REST API - Find matching instances</a> .  See <a href="#">Filters</a> below.
Find first model instance using specified filters.	<code>findOne(filter, callback)</code>  Where filter is a JSON object containing the query filters.  See <a href="#">Filters</a> below.	GET <code>/modelName/findOne?filter...</code>  See <a href="#">Model REST API - Find first instance</a> .  See <a href="#">Filters</a> below.
Find instance by ID.	<code>findById(id, [filter,] callback)</code>  Where optional filter is a JSON object containing the query filters.  See <a href="#">Filters</a> below.	GET <code>/modelName/modelID</code>  See <a href="#">Model REST API - Find instance by ID</a> .



A REST query must include the literal string "filter" in the URL query string. The Node API call does not include the literal string "filter" in the JSON.

The [StrongLoop API Explorer](#) adds "filter" to the query string, but you must enter [Stringified JSON](#) in the **filter** field. Also make sure that the quotes you use are proper straight quotes ( " ), not curved or typographic quotation marks ( “ or ” ). These can often be hard to distinguish visually.

LoopBack supports the following kinds of filters:

- [Fields filter](#)
- [Include filter](#)

- [Limit filter](#)
- [Order filter](#)
- [Skip filter](#)
- [Where filter](#)

See [Filters](#) below for more information.

## Examples

See additional examples of each kind of filter in the individual articles on filters (for example [Where filter](#)).

An example of using the `find()` method with both a *where* and a *limit* filter:

```
Account.find({where: {name: 'John'}, limit: 3}, function(err, accounts) { ... });
```

Equivalent using REST:

```
/accounts?filter[where][name]=John&filter[limit]=3
```

## Filters

In both REST and Node API, you can use any number of filters to define a query.

LoopBack supports a specific filter syntax: it's a lot like SQL, but designed specifically to serialize safely without injection and to be native to JavaScript. Previously, only the `PersistedModel.find()` method (and related methods) supported this syntax.

The following table describes LoopBack's filter types:

Filter type	Type	Description
fields	Object, Array, or String	Specify fields to include in or exclude from the response. See <a href="#">Fields filter</a> .
include	String, Object, or Array	Include results from related models, for relations such as <i>belongsTo</i> and <i>hasMany</i> . See <a href="#">Include filter</a> .
limit	Number	Limit the number of instances to return. See <a href="#">Limit filter</a> .
order	String	Specify sort order: ascending or descending. See <a href="#">Order filter</a> .
skip (offset)	Number	Skip the specified number of instances. See <a href="#">Skip filter</a> .
where	Object	Specify search criteria; similar to a WHERE clause in SQL. See <a href="#">Where filter</a> .

### REST syntax

Specify filters in the [HTTP query string](#):

```
?filterfilterType=spec&filterType=spec....
```

The number of filters that you can apply to a single request is limited only by the maximum URL length, which generally depends on the client used.

### Node syntax

Specify filters as the first argument to `find()` and `findOne()`:

```
{ filterType: spec, filterType: spec, ... }
```

There is no theoretical limit on the number of filters you can apply.



There is no equal sign after `?filter` in the query string;





for example

```
http://localhost:3000/api/books?filter[where][id]=1
```



See <https://github.com/hapijs/qs> for more details.

Where:

- *filterType* is the filter: **where**, **include**, **order**, **limit**, **skip**, or **fields**.
- *spec* is the specification of the filter: for example for a *where* filter, this is a logical condition that the results must match; for an *include* filter it specifies the related fields to include.

## Using "stringified" JSON in REST queries

Instead of the standard REST syntax described above, you can also use "stringified JSON" in REST queries. To do this, simply use the JSON specified for the Node syntax, as follows:

```
?filter={ Stringified-JSON }
```

where *Stringified-JSON* is the stringified JSON from Node syntax. However, in the JSON all text keys/strings must be enclosed in quotes (").



When using stringified JSON, you must use an equal sign after `?filter` in the query string; for example

```
http://localhost:3000/api/books?filter={%22where%22:{%22id%22:2}}
```

For example:

```
GET /api/activities/findOne?filter={"where":{"id":1234}}
```

## Filtering arrays of objects

The `loopback-filters` module implements LoopBack's filter syntax. Using this module, you can filter arrays of objects using the same filter syntax supported by `MyModel.find(filter)`.



We plan to convert all modules to use `loopback-filter`, so it will become LoopBack's common "built-in" filtering mechanism.

Here is a basic example using the new module.

```
var data = [{n: 1}, {n: 2}, {n: 3, id: 123}];
var filter = {where: {n: {gt: 1}}, skip: 1, fields: ['n']};
var filtered = require('loopback-filters')(data, filter);
console.log(filtered); // => [{n: 3}]
```

For a bit more detail, say you are parsing a comma-separated value (CSV) file, and you need to output all values where the price column is between 10 and 100. To use the LoopBack filter syntax you would need to either create your own CSV connector or use the memory connector, both of which require some extra work not related to your actual goal.

Once you've parsed the CSV (with a module like `node-csv`) you will have an array of objects like this, for example (but with, say, 10,000 unique items):

```
[
  {price: 85, id: 79},
  {price: 10, id: 380},
  ...
]
```

To filter the rows you could use generic JavaScript like this:

```
data.filter(function(item) {  
  return item.price < 100 && item.price >= 10  
});
```

This is pretty simple for filtering, but sorting, field selection, and more advanced operations become a bit tricky. On top of that, you are usually accepting the parameters as input; for example:

```
var userInput = {min: 10, max: 100}  
  
data.filter(function(item) {  
  return item.price < userInput.min && item.price >= userInput.max  
});
```

You can rewrite this easily as a LoopBack filter:

```
filter(data, {where: {input: {gt: userInput.min, lt: userInput.max}}})
```

Or if you just adopt the filter object syntax as user input:

```
filter(data, userInput)
```

But `loopback-filters` supports more than just excluding and including. It supports field selection (including / excluding fields), sorting, geo/distance sorting, limiting and skipping. All in a declarative syntax that is easily created from user input.

As a LoopBack user this is a pretty powerful thing. Typically, you will have learned how to write some complex queries using the `find()` filter syntax; before you would need to figure out how to do the same thing in JavaScript (perhaps using a library such as `underscore`). Now with the `loopback-filters` module, in your client application you can re-use the same exact filter object you were sending to the server to filter the database without having to interact with a LoopBack server at all.

## Fields filter

A *fields* filter specifies properties (fields) to include or exclude from the results.

- [REST API](#)
- [Node API](#)
- [Examples](#)

### REST API

```
filter[fields][propertyName]=<true|false>&filter[fields][propertyName]=<true|false>...
```

Note that to include more than one field in REST, use multiple filters.

You can also use [stringified JSON format](#) in a REST query.

### Node API



Methods of models in the [AngularJS client](#) have a different signature than those of the Node API. For more information, see [AngularJS SDK API](#).

```
{ fields: { propertyName: <true|false>, propertyName: <true|false>, ... } }
```

---

Where:

- *propertyName* is the name of the property (field) to include or exclude.
- `<true|false>` signifies either `true` or `false` Boolean literal. Use `true` to include the property or `false` to exclude it from results. You can also use 1 for true and 0 for false.

By default, queries return all model properties in results. However, if you specify at least one fields filter with a value of `true`, then by default the query will include **only** those you specifically include with filters.

### Examples

Return only `id`, `make`, and `model` properties:

#### REST

```
?filter[fields][id]=true&filter[fields][make]=true&filter[fields][model]=true
```

#### Node API

```
{ fields: {id: true, make: true, model: true} }
```

Returns:

```
[
  {
    "id": "1",
    "make": "Nissan",
    "model": "Titan"
  },
  {
    "id": "2",
    "make": "Nissan",
    "model": "Avalon"
  },
  ...
]
```

Exclude the `vin` property:

#### REST

```
?filter[fields][vin]=false
```

#### Node API

```
{ fields: {vin: false} }
```

### Include filter

- REST API
- Node API
- Examples
  - Include relations without filtering
  - Include with filters
  - Access included objects
  - REST examples

See also [Querying related models](#).

An *include* filter enables you to include results from related models in a query, for example models that have `belongsTo` or `hasMany` relations, to optimize the number of requests. See [Creating model relations](#) for more information.

The value of the include filter can be a string, an array, or an object.



You can use an *include* filter with `find()`, `findOne()` and `findById()`.

### REST API

```
filter[include][relatedModel]=propertyName
```

You can also use [stringified JSON format](#) in a REST query.

### Node API



Methods of models in the [AngularJS client](#) have a different signature than those of the Node API. For more information, see [AngularJS SDK API](#).

```
{include: 'relatedModel'}
{include: ['relatedModel1', 'relatedModel2', ...]}
{include: {relatedModel1: [{relatedModel2: 'propertyName'}], 'relatedModel'}}
```

Where:

- *relatedModel*, *relatedModel1*, and *relatedModel2* are the names (pluralized) of related models.
- *propertyName* is the name of a property in the related model.

### Examples

#### Include relations without filtering

```
User.find({include: 'posts'}, function() { ... });
```

Return all user posts and orders with two additional requests:

```
User.find({include: ['posts', 'orders']}, function() { ... });
```

Return all post owners (users), and all orders of each owner:

```
Post.find({include: {owner: 'orders'}}}, function() { ... });
```

Return all post owners (users), and all friends and orders of each owner:

```
Post.find({include: {owner: ['friends', 'orders']}}, function() { ... });
```

Return all post owners (users), and all posts and orders of each owner. The posts also include images.

```
Post.find({include: {owner: [{posts: 'images'} , 'orders']}}, function() { ... });
```

### Include with filters

In some cases, you may want to apply filters to related models to be included. LoopBack supports that with the following syntax (for example):

```
Post.find({
  include: {
    relation: 'owner', // include the owner object
    scope: { // further filter the owner object
      fields: ['username', 'email'], // only show two fields
      include: { // include orders for the owner
        relation: 'orders',
        scope: {
          where: {orderId: 5} // only select order with id 5
        }
      }
    }
  }
}, function() { ... });
```

For real-world scenarios where only users in `$authenticated` or `$owner` roles should have access, use `findById()`. For example, the following example uses filters to perform pagination:

```
Post.findById('123', {
  include: {
    relation: 'orders',
    scope: { // fetch 1st "page" with 5 entries in it
      skip:0,
      limit:5
    }
  }
}, function() { ... });
```

### Access included objects

With Node.js API, you need to call `toJSON()` to convert the returned model instance with related items into a plain JSON object. For example:

```
Post.find({include: {owner: [{posts: 'images'} , 'orders']}}, function(err, posts) {
  posts.forEach(function(post) {
    // post.owner points to the relation method instead of the owner instance
    var p = post.toJSON();
    console.log(p.owner.posts, p.owner.orders);
  });
  ...
});
```

Please note the relation properties such as `post.owner` points to a JavaScript **function** for the relation method.

## REST examples

These examples assume a customer model with a hasMany relationship to a reviews model.

Return all customers including their reviews:

```
/customers?filter[include]=reviews
```

Return all customers including their reviews which also includes the author:

```
/customers?filter[include][reviews]=author
```

Return all customers whose age is 21, including their reviews which also includes the author:

```
/customers?filter[include][reviews]=author&filter[where][age]=21
```

Return first two customers including their reviews which also includes the author

```
/customers?filter[include][reviews]=author&filter[limit]=2
```

Return all customers including their reviews and orders

```
/customers?filter[include]=reviews&filter[include]=orders
```

## Limit filter

A *limit* filter limits the number of records returned to the specified number (or less).



Methods of models in the [AngularJS client](#) have a different signature than those of the Node API. For more information, see [AngularJS SDK API](#).

### REST API

```
filter[limit]=n
```

### Node API

```
{limit: n}
```

You can also use [stringified JSON format](#) in a REST query.

Where *n* is the maximum number of results (records) to return.

### Examples

Return only the first five query results:

#### REST

```
/cars?filter[limit]=5
```

## Node API

```
Cars.find( {limit: 5}, function() { ... } )
```

## Order filter

An *order* filter specifies how to sort the results: ascending (ASC) or descending (DESC) based on the specified property.

- [REST API](#)
- [Node API](#)
- [Examples](#)

### REST API

Order by one property:

```
filter[order]=propertyName <ASC|DESC>
```

Order by two or more properties:

```
filter[order][0]=propertyName <ASC|DESC>&filter[order][1]propertyName]=<ASC|DESC>...
```

You can also use [stringified JSON format](#) in a REST query.



Default ordering can be configured in [default scope](#).

### Node API



Methods of models in the [AngularJS client](#) have a different signature than those of the Node API. For more information, see [AngularJS SDK API](#).

Order by one property:

```
{ order: 'propertyName <ASC|DESC>' }
```

Order by two or more properties:

```
{ order: ['propertyName <ASC|DESC>', 'propertyName <ASC|DESC>',...] }
```

Where:

- *propertyName* is the name of the property (field) to sort by.
- *<ASC|DESC>* signifies either ASC for ascending order or DESC for descending order.

### Examples

Return the three loudest three weapons, sorted by the `audibleRange` property:

## REST

```
/weapons?filter[order]=audibleRange%20DESC&filter[limit]=3
```

## Node API

```
weapons.find({
  order: 'price DESC',
  limit: 3 });
```

## Skip filter

A skip filter omits the specified number of returned records. This is useful, for example, to paginate responses.

Use `offset` as an alias for `skip`.



Methods of models in the [AngularJS client](#) have a different signature than those of the Node API. For more information, see [AngularJS SDK API](#).

### REST API

```
?filter=[skip]=n
```

### Node

```
{ skip: n }
```

You can also use [stringified JSON format](#) in a REST query.

Where *n* is the number of records to skip.

### Examples

This REST request skips the first 50 records returned:

```
/cars?filter[skip]=50
```

The equivalent query using the Node API:

```
Cars.find( {skip: 50}, function() { ... } )
```

### Pagination example

The following REST requests illustrate how to paginate a query result. Each request returns ten records: the first returns the first ten, the second returns the 11th through the 20th, and so on...

```
/cars?filter[limit]=10&filter[skip]=0
/cars?filter[limit]=10&filter[skip]=10
/cars?filter[limit]=10&filter[skip]=20
...
```

Using the Node API:



```
Cars.find( {limit: 10, skip: 0}, function() { ... } );
Cars.find( {limit: 10, skip: 10}, function() { ... } );
Cars.find( {limit: 10, skip: 20}, function() { ... } );
```

## Where filter

A *where* filter specifies a set of logical conditions to match, similar to a WHERE clause in a SQL query.

- REST API
- Node API
  - [Where clause for queries](#)
  - [Where clause for other methods](#)
- Operators
  - [AND and OR operators](#)
  - [Regular expressions](#)
- Examples
  - [Equivalence](#)
  - [gt and lt](#)
  - [and / or](#)
  - [between](#)
  - [near](#)
  - [like and nlike](#)
  - [inq](#)

### REST API

In the first form below, the condition is equivalence, that is, it tests whether *property* equals *value*. The second form below is for all other conditions.

```
filter[where][property]=value
filter[where][property][op]=value
```

For example, if there is a cars model with a `odo` property, the following query finds instances where the `odo` is exactly equal to 5000:

```
/cars?filter[where][odo][gt]=5000
```

For example, here is a query to find cars with `odo` is less than 30,000:

```
/cars?filter[where][odo][lt]=30000
```

You can also use [stringified JSON format](#) in a REST query.

### Node API



Methods of models in the [AngularJS client](#) have a different signature than those of the Node API. For more information, see [AngularJS SDK API](#).

### Where clause for queries

For queries such as `find()` or `findOne()`, use the first form below to test equivalence, that is, whether *property* equals *value*. Use the second form below for all other conditions.

```
{ where: {property: value} }
{ where: {property: {op: value} } }
```

Where:

- *property* is the name of a property (field) in the model being queried.
- *value* is a literal value.
- *op* is one of the [operators](#) listed below.

```
Cars.find( { where: { carClass: 'fullsize' } } );
```



The above where clause syntax is for queries. For all other methods, omit the { where : ... } wrapper; see [Where clause for other methods](#) below.

### Where clause for other methods



When you call the Node APIs *for methods other than queries*, don't wrap the where clause in a { where : ... } object, simply use the condition as the argument as shown below. See examples below.

In the first form below, the condition is equivalence, that is, it tests whether *property* equals *value*. The second form is for all other conditions.

```
{property: value}
{property: {op: value}}
```

Where:

- *property* is the name of a property (field) in the model being queried.
- *value* is a literal value.
- *op* is one of the [operators](#) listed below.

For example, below shows a where clause in a call to a model's [updateAll\(\)](#) method. Note the lack of { where : ... } in the argument.

```
var myModel = req.app.models.Thing;
var theId = 12;
myModel.updateAll( {id: theId}, {regionId: null}, function(err, results) {
  return callback(err, results);
});
```

More examples, this time in a call to [destroyAll\(\)](#):

```
var RoleMapping = app.models.RoleMapping;
RoleMapping.destroyAll( { principalId: userId }, function(err, obj) { ... } );
```

To delete all records where the cost property is greater than 100:

```
productModel.destroyAll( { cost: {gt: 100} }, function(err, obj) { ... } )
```

## Operators

This table describes the operators available in "where" filters. See [Examples](#) below.

Operator	Description
and	Logical AND operator
or	Logical OR operator

gt, gte	Numerical greater than (>); greater than or equal (>=). Valid only for numerical and date values. For Geopoint values, the units are in miles by default. See <a href="#">Geopoint</a> for more information.
lt, lte	Numerical less than (<); less than or equal (<=). Valid only for numerical and date values. For geolocation values, the units are in miles by default. See <a href="#">Geopoint</a> for more information.
between	True if the value is between the two specified values: greater than or equal to first value and less than or equal to second value. For geolocation values, the units are in miles by default. See <a href="#">Geopoint</a> for more information.
inq, nin	In / not in an array of values.
near	For geolocations, return the closest points, sorted in order of distance. Use with <code>limit</code> to return the n closest points.
neq	Not equal (!=)
like, nlike	LIKE / NOT LIKE operators for use with regular expressions. The regular expression format depends on the backend data source.
regex	Regular expression.

## AND and OR operators

Use the AND and OR operators to create compound logical filters based on simple where filter conditions, using the following syntax.

### Node API

```
{ where: { <and|or>: [condition1, condition2, ...] } }
```

### REST

```
[where][<and|or>][0]condition1&[where][<and|or>]condition2...
```

Where *condition1* and *condition2* are a filter conditions.

See [examples](#) below.

## Regular expressions

You can use regular expressions in a where filter, with the following syntax. You can use a regular expression in a where clause for updates and deletes, as well as queries.

Essentially, `regex` is just like an operator in which you provide a regular expression value as the comparison value.

### Node API

```
{ where: {property: {regex: expression} } }
```

Where *expression* can be a:

- String defining a regular expression (for example,  `'^foo'` ).
- Regular expression literal (for example,  `/foo/` ).
- Regular expression object (for example,  `new RegExp( /John/ )`).

Or, in a simpler format:

```
{ where: {property: expression} } }
```

Where *expression* can be a:

- Regular expression literal (for example,  `/foo/` ).
- Regular expression object (for example,  `new RegExp( /John/ )`).

For more information on JavaScript regular expressions, see [Regular Expressions \(Mozilla Developer Network\)](#).

### REST

```
filter[where][property][regexp]=value
```

Where:

- *property* is the name of a property (field) in the model being queried.
- *expression* is the JavaScript regular expression string. See [Regular Expressions \(Mozilla Developer Network\)](#).

A regular expression value can also include one or more [flags](#). For example, append `/i` to the regular expression to perform a case-insensitive match.



The above where clause syntax is for queries. For updates and deletes, omit the `{ where : ... }` wrapper; see [Where clause for updates and deletes](#) below.

For example, this query will return all cars for which the model starts with a capital "T":

```
Cars.find( { "where": { "model": { "regexp": "^T" } } } );
```

Or, using the simplified form:

```
Cars.find( { "where": { "model": /^T/ } } );
```

Equivalently, with REST:

```
/api/cars?filter[where][make][regexp]=^T
```

Or to match models that start with either an uppercase "T" or lowercase "t":

```
/api/cars?filter[where][make][regexp]=^t/i
```

## Examples

### ***Equivalence***

Weapons with name M1911:

#### **REST**

```
/weapons?filter[where][name]=M1911
```

Cars where carClass is "fullsize":

#### **REST**

```
/api/cars?filter[where][carClass]=fullsize
```

Equivalently, in Node:

```
Cars.find( { where: { carClass: 'fullsize' } } );
```

## ***gt and lt***

```
ONE_MONTH = 30 * 24 * 60 * 60 * 1000; // Month in milliseconds
transaction.find({
  where: {
    userId: user.id,
    time: {gt: Date.now() - ONE_MONTH}
  }
})
```

For example, the following query returns all instances of the employee model using a *where* filter that specifies a date property after (greater than) the specified date:

```
/employees?filter[where][date][gt]=2014-04-01T18:30:00.000Z
```

The same query using the Node API:

```
Employees.find({
  where: {
    date: {gt: Date('2014-04-01T18:30:00.000Z')}
  }
});
```

The top three weapons with a range over 900 meters:

```
/weapons?filter[where][effectiveRange][gt]=900&filter[limit]=3
```

Weapons with audibleRange less than 10:

```
/weapons?filter[where][audibleRange][lt]=10
```

## ***and / or***

The following code is an example of using the "and" operator to find posts where the title is "My Post" and content is "Hello".

```
Post.find({where: {and: [{title: 'My Post'}, {content: 'Hello'}]}},
  function (err, posts) {
    ...
  });
```

Equivalent in REST:

```
?filter[where][and][0][title]=My%20Post&filter[where][and][1][content]=Hello
```

Example using the "or" operator to find posts that either have title of "My Post" or content of "Hello".

```
Post.find({where: {or: [{title: 'My Post'}, {content: 'Hello'}]}},
  function (err, posts) {
    ...
  });
```

More complex example. The following expresses (field1= foo and field2=bar) OR field1=morefoo:

```
{
  "or": [
    "and": [ {"field1": "foo"}, {"field2": "bar"} ],
    "field1": "morefoo"
  ]
}
```

### ***between***

Example of between operator:

```
filter[where][price][between][0]=0&filter[where][price][between][1]=7
```

In Node API:

```
Shirts.find({where: {size: {between: [0,7]}}, function (err, posts) { ... } )
```

### ***near***

Example using the **near** operator that returns the three closest locations to a given geo point:

```
/locations?filter[where][geo][near]=153.536,-28.1&filter[limit]=3
```

### ***like and nlike***

The like and nlike (not like) operators enable you to match SQL regular expressions. The regular expression format depends on the backend data source.

Example of like operator:

```
Post.find({where: {title: {like: 'M.+st'}}}, function (err, posts) { ... });
```

Example of nlike operator:

```
Post.find({where: {title: {nlike: 'M.+XY'}}}, function (err, posts) {
```

When using the memory connector:

```
User.find({where: {name: {like: '%St%'}}}, function (err, posts) { ... });
User.find({where: {name: {nlike: 'M%XY'}}}, function (err, posts) { ... });
```

## **inq**

The inq operator checks whether the value of the specified property matches any of the values provided in an array. The general syntax is:

```
{ where: { property: { inq: [val1, val2, ...] } } }
```

where:

- *property* is the name of a property (field) in the model being queried.
- *val1*, *val2*, and so on, are literal values in an array.

Example of inq operator:

```
Posts.find({where: {id: {inq: [123, 234]}}},
  function (err, p){... } );
```

REST:

```
/medias?filter[where][keywords][inq]=foo&filter[where][keywords][inq]=bar
```

Or

```
?filter={"where": {"keywords": {"inq": ["foo", "bar"]}}}
```

## Using database transactions



Transaction support was added in loopback-datasource-juggler version 2.28.0.

- [Overview](#)
- [Transaction APIs](#)
  - [Start transaction](#)
    - [Isolation levels](#)
  - [Perform operations in a transaction](#)
  - [Commit or rollback](#)
- [Set up timeout](#)
- [Propagate a transaction](#)
- [Set up transaction hooks](#)
- [Avoid long waits or deadlocks](#)

### Overview

A *transaction* is a sequence of data operations performed as a single logical unit of work. Many relational databases support transactions to help enforce data consistency and business logic requirements.

A LoopBack model can perform operations in a transaction when the model is attached to one of the following connectors:

- [MySQL connector](#) (IMPORTANT: Only with InnoDB as the storage engine).
- [PostgreSQL connector](#)
- [SQL Server connector](#)
- [Oracle connector](#)

### Transaction APIs

See the [API reference](#) for full transaction API documentation.

Performing operations in a transaction typically involves the following steps:

- Start a new transaction.
- Perform create, read, update, and delete (CRUD) operations in the transaction.
- Commit or rollback the transaction.

### Start transaction

Use the `beginTransaction` method to start a new transaction. For example, for a `Post` model:

```
Post.beginTransaction({isolationLevel: Post.Transaction.READ_COMMITTED}, function(err, tx) {
  // Now we have a transaction (tx)
});
```

### Isolation levels

When you call `beginTransaction()`, you can optionally specify a transaction isolation level. LoopBack transactions support the following isolation levels:

- `Transaction.READ_UNCOMMITTED`
- `Transaction.READ_COMMITTED` (default)
- `Transaction.REPEATABLE_READ`
- `Transaction.SERIALIZABLE`

If you don't specify an isolation level, the transaction uses `READ_COMMITTED`.



**Oracle only supports `READ_COMMITTED` and `SERIALIZABLE`.**

For more information about database-specific isolation levels, see:

- [MySQL SET TRANSACTION Syntax](#)
- [Oracle Isolation Levels](#)
- [PostgreSQL Transaction Isolation](#)
- [SQL Server SET TRANSACTION ISOLATION LEVEL](#)

### Perform operations in a transaction

To perform CRUD operations in the transaction, add a second argument consisting of the transaction object to the standard `create()`, `upsert()`, `destroyAll()` (and so on) methods.

For example, again assuming a `Post` model:

```
Post.create({title: 't1', content: 'c1'}, {transaction: tx}, function(err, post) {
  post.updateAttributes({content: 'c2'}, {transaction: tx}, function(err, newPost) {
    //
    newPost.reviews.create({content: 'r1'}, {transaction: tx}, function(err, newPost)
  {
    });
  }
});
```

### Commit or rollback

Commit the transaction:

```
transaction.commit(function(err) {
});
```



Or to rollback the transaction:

```
transaction.rollback(function(err) {  
  });
```

Please note all three APIs support the Promise flavor. See an example at <https://github.com/strongloop/loopback-connector-mysql/blob/master/test/transaction.promise.test.js>.

## Set up timeout

You can specify a timeout (in milliseconds) to begin a transaction. If a transaction is not finished (committed or rolled back) before the timeout, it will be automatically rolled back upon timeout by default. The timeout event can be trapped using the timeout hook. For example, again assuming a `Post` model:

```
Post.beginTransaction({  
  isolationLevel: Transaction.READ_COMMITTED,  
  timeout: 30000 // 30000ms = 30s  
}, function(err, tx) {  
  tx.observe('timeout', function(context, next) {  
    // handle timeout  
    next();  
  });  
});
```

## Propagate a transaction

Propagating a transaction is explicit by passing the transaction object via the options argument for all CRUD and relation methods. For example, again assuming a `Post` model:

```
var options = {transaction: tx};  
Post.create({title: 't1', content: 'c1'}, options, function(err, post) {  
  post.updateAttributes({content: 'c2'}, options, function(err, newPost) {  
    //  
    newPost.reviews.create({content: 'r1'}, options, function(err, newPost) {  
    });  
  }  
});
```

## Set up transaction hooks

There are four types of observable events for a transaction:

- before commit
- after commit
- before rollback
- after rollback
- timeout

```

tx.observe('before commit', function(context, next) {
  // ...
  next();
});
tx.observe('after commit', function(context, next) {
  // ...
  next();
});
tx.observe('before rollback', function(context, next) {
  // ...
  next();
});
tx.observe('after rollback', function(context, next) {
  // ...
  next();
});

```

## Avoid long waits or deadlocks

Please be aware that a transaction with certain isolation level will lock database objects. Performing multiple methods within a transaction asynchronously has the great potential to block other transactions (explicit or implicit). To avoid long waits or even deadlocks, you should:

1. Keep the transaction as short-lived as possible
2. Don't serialize execution of methods across multiple transactions

## Realtime server-sent events

- [Overview](#)
- [Creating ChangeStreams on the server](#)
  - [Setup](#)
  - [Script](#)
- [Pushing data to clients](#)
- [Using ChangeStreams in AngularJS](#)

See also:

- [Angular Live-set example](#)
- [Blog post](#)

## Overview

The [PersistedModel](#) API supports streaming changes from servers to clients using a combination of the CRUD methods and the `createChangeStream()` method.

A `ChangeStream` enables a server to send model changes to a client. A client makes an initial request to be notified of changes and then the server "pushes" these changes to the client.

## Creating ChangeStreams on the server

### Setup

First, add event-stream to your Node app as follows:

```
$ npm install -save event-stream
```

This will add a line something like this to the app's `package.json` file:

```

...
  "event-stream": "^3.3.1",
...

```

## Script

Below is a basic example using the `createChangeStream()` method in a LoopBack application.

### server/boot/realtime.js

```
var es = require('event-stream');
module.exports = function(app) {
  var MyModel = app.models.MyModel;
  MyModel.createChangeStream(function(err, changes) {
    changes.pipe(es.stringify()).pipe(process.stdout);
  });
  MyModel.create({foo: 'bar'});
}
```

This example will print the following to the console:

```
{ "target": 1, "data": { "foo": "bar", "id": 1 }, "type": "create" }
```

## Pushing data to clients

This example shows how to consume the `ChangeStream` from a browser using the [EventSource](#) API, which is built in to JavaScript implemented in most browsers. The example code below assumes a model called `MyModel` and simply logs the response to the browser JavaScript console.

### Browser script

```
var urlToChangeStream = '/api/MyModels/change-stream?_format=event-stream';
var src = new EventSource(urlToChangeStream);
src.addEventListener('data', function(msg) {
  var data = JSON.parse(msg.data);
  console.log(data); // the change object
});
```

To push data, the model on the server must change; for example, if you add a new record (model instance).

When this occurs, then in the browser JavaScript console, you will see (for example):

```
Object {target: 2, data: Object, type: "create"}
```

## Using ChangeStreams in AngularJS

The [angular-live-set](#) module makes it easy to use `ChangeStream` in your AngularJS applications.

# Adding application logic

## Overview

When building an application, you'll generally need to implement custom logic to process data and perform other operations before responding to client requests. In LoopBack, there are three ways to do this:

- **Adding logic to models** - adding [remote methods](#), [remote hooks](#) and [operation hooks](#).
- **Defining boot scripts** - writing scripts (in the `/server/boot` directory) that run when the application starts.

- [Defining middleware](#) - adding custom [middleware](#) to the application .

## Adding logic to models

There are three ways to add custom application logic to models:

- [Remote methods](#) - REST endpoints mapped to Node functions.
- [Remote hooks](#) - Logic that triggers when a remote method is executed (before or after).
- [Operation hooks](#) - Logic triggered when a model performs CRUD (create, read, update, and delete) operations.

You can further refine the timing of custom logic by configuring how you call each method. In any case, you will be required to code your own logic as LoopBack simply provides the mechanisms to trigger your logic.

### See also:

- [Defining boot scripts](#)
- [Defining middleware](#)

## Remote methods

- [Overview](#)
- [How to define a remote method](#)
  - [Example](#)
- [Registering a remote method](#)
  - [Options](#)
  - [Argument descriptions](#)
  - [HTTP mapping of input arguments](#)
- [Setting a remote method route](#)
- [Adding ACLs to remote methods](#)
  - [Basic use](#)
  - [Advanced use](#)
- [Formatting remote method responses](#)

### See also:

- [Remote hooks](#)
- [Operation hooks](#)

### Overview

A *remote method* is a static method of a model, exposed over a custom REST endpoint. Use a remote method to perform operations not provided by LoopBack's [standard model REST API](#).



For an introductory example of defining a remote method, see [Extend your API](#) in Getting Started.

### How to define a remote method

To define a remote method:

1. Edit the [Model definition JSON file](#) in `/common/models` directory; for example, to attach a remote method to the Person model, edit `/common/models/person.js`. If you created the model with the [Model generator](#), then this file will already exist.



The LoopBack [model generator](#), `slc loopback:model`, automatically converts camel-case model names to lowercase dashed names. For example, if you create a model named "FooBar" with the model generator, it creates files `foo-bar.json` and `foo-bar.js` in `common/models`. However, the model name ("FooBar") will be preserved via the model's name property.

2. Define a static method that will handle the request.
3. Call `remoteMethod()`, to register the method, calling it with two parameters:
  - a. First parameter is a string that is the name of the method you defined in step 2
  - b. Second (optional) parameter provides additional configuration for the REST endpoint.

### Example

See additional introductory examples in [Extend your API](#).

Suppose you have a Person model and you want to add a REST endpoint at `/greet` that returns a greeting with a name provided in the request. You add this code to `/common/models/person.js`:

### /common/models/person.js

```
module.exports = function(Person){

  Person.greet = function(msg, cb) {
    cb(null, 'Greetings... ' + msg);
  }

  Person.remoteMethod(
    'greet',
    {
      accepts: {arg: 'msg', type: 'string'},
      returns: {arg: 'greeting', type: 'string'}
    }
  );
};
```

Now, for example, a request to

POST /api/people/greet

with data { "msg": "John" }

will return:

**shell**

Greetings... John!



Notice the REST API request above uses the plural form "people" instead of "person". LoopBack exposes the [plural form of model names for REST API routes](#).

## Registering a remote method

All LoopBack models have a `remoteMethod()` static method that you use to register a remote method:

```
model.remoteMethod(requestHandlerFunctionName, [options])
```

where:

- *model* is the model object to which you're adding the remote method. In our example, `Person`.
- *requestHandlerFunctionName* is a string that specifies name of the remote method, for example `'greet'`.
- *options* is an object that specifies parameters to configure the REST endpoint; see below.

## Options

The options argument is a Javascript object containing key/value pairs to configure the remote method REST endpoint.



All of the options properties are optional. However, if the remote method requires arguments, you must specify `accepts`; if the remote method returns a value, you must specify `returns`.

Option	Description	Example
--------	-------------	---------

accepts	<p>Defines arguments that the remote method accepts. These arguments map to the static method you define. For the example above, you can see the function signature:</p> <pre>Person.greet(name, age, callback)...</pre> <p>`name` is the first argument, `age` is the second argument and callback is automatically provided by LoopBack (do not specify it in your `accepts` array). For more info, see <a href="#">Argument descriptions</a>.</p> <p>Default if not provided is the empty array, <code>[]</code>.</p>	<pre>{   ...   accepts: [     {arg: 'name',      type: 'string'},     {arg: 'age',      type: 'number'}, ... ],   ... }</pre>
description	<p>Text description of the method, used by API documentation generators such as Swagger.</p> <p>You can put long strings in an array if needed (see note below).</p>	
http.path	HTTP path (relative to the model) at which the method is exposed.	<pre>http: {path:   '/sayhi'}</pre>
http.verb	<p>HTTP method (verb) at which the method is available. One of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• get</li> <li>• post (default)</li> <li>• patch</li> <li>• put</li> <li>• del</li> <li>• all</li> </ul>	<pre>http: {path:   '/sayhi', verb:   'get'}</pre>
http.status	Default HTTP status set when the callback is called without an error.	<pre>http: {status:   201}</pre>
http.errorStatus	Default HTTP status set when the callback is called with an error.	<pre>http: {errorStatus:   400}</pre>
isStatic	Boolean. Whether the method is static (eg. <code>MyModel.myMethod</code> ). Use <code>false</code> to define the method on the prototype (for example, <code>MyModel.prototype.myMethod</code> ). Default is <code>true</code> .	
notes	<p>Additional notes, used by API documentation generators like Swagger.</p> <p>You can put long strings in an array if needed (see note below).</p>	
returns	<p>Describes the remote method's callback arguments; See <a href="#">Argument descriptions</a>. The <code>err</code> argument is assumed; do not specify.</p> <p>Default if not provided is the empty array, <code>[]</code>.</p>	<pre>returns: {arg:   'greeting',   type: 'string'}</pre>



You can split long strings in the `description` and `notes` options into arrays of strings (lines) to keep line lengths manageable. For example:

```
[
  "Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit,"
  "sed do eiusmod tempor incididunt ut labore et dolore",
  "magna aliqua."
]
```

### Argument descriptions

The `accepts` and `returns` options properties define either a single argument as an object or an ordered set of arguments as an array. The following table describes the properties of each individual argument.

Property (key)	Type	Description
arg	String	Argument name
description	String or Array	<p>A text description of the argument. This is used by API documentation generators like Swagger.</p> <p>You can split long descriptions into arrays of strings (lines) to keep line lengths manageable.</p> <pre>[   "Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit,"   "sed do eiusmod tempor incididunt ut labore et dolore",   "magna aliqua." ]</pre>
http	Object or Function	For input arguments: a function or an object describing mapping from HTTP request to the argument value. See <a href="#">HTTP mapping of input arguments</a> below.
http.target	String	<p>Map the callback argument value to the HTTP response object. The following values are supported.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>status</code> sets the <code>res.statusCode</code> to the provided value</li><li>• <code>header</code> sets the <code>http.header</code> or <code>arg</code> named header to the value</li></ul>
required	Boolean	True if argument is required; false otherwise.
root	Boolean	For callback arguments: set this property to <code>true</code> if your function has a single callback argument to use as the root object returned to remote caller. Otherwise the root object returned is a map (argument-name to argument-value).
type	String	Argument datatype; must be a <a href="#">Loopback type</a> .

For example, a single argument, specified as an object:

```
{arg: 'myArg', type: 'number'}
```

Multiple arguments, specified as an array:

```
[
  {arg: 'arg1', type: 'number', required: true},
  {arg: 'arg2', type: 'array'}
]
```

### HTTP mapping of input arguments

There are two ways to specify HTTP mapping for input parameters (what the method accepts):

- Provide an object with a `source` property
- Specify a custom mapping function

## Using an object with a source property

To use the first way to specify HTTP mapping for input parameters, provide an object with a `source` property that has one of the values shown in the following table.

Value of source property	Description
body	The whole request body is used as the value.
form query path	The value is looked up using <code>req.param</code> , which searches route arguments, the request body and the query string.  Note that <code>query</code> and <code>path</code> are aliases for <code>form</code> .
req	The <a href="#">Express HTTP request object</a> .
res	The <a href="#">Express HTTP response object</a> .
context	The whole context object, which holds request and response objects.

For example, an argument getting the whole request body as the value:

```
{ arg: 'data', type: 'object', http: { source: 'body' } }
```

Another example showing the Express HTTP request and response objects:

```
[  
  {arg: 'req', type: 'object', 'http': {source: 'req'}},  
  {arg: 'res', type: 'object', 'http': {source: 'res'}}  
]
```

## Using a custom mapping function

The second way to specify HTTP mapping for input parameters is to specify a custom mapping function; for example:

```
{  
  arg: 'custom',  
  type: 'number',  
  http: function(ctx) {  
    // ctx is LoopBack Context object  
  
    // 1. Get the HTTP request object as provided by Express  
    var req = ctx.req;  
  
    // 2. Get 'a' and 'b' from query string or form data and return their sum.  
    return +req.param('a') + req.param('b');  
  }  
}
```

If you don't specify a mapping, LoopBack will determine the value as follows (assuming `name` as the name of the input parameter to resolve):

1. If there is an HTTP request parameter `args` with JSON content, then it uses the value of `args['name']`.
2. Otherwise, it uses `req.param('name')`.

## Setting a remote method route

By default, a remote method is exposed at:

```
api/:name/:action/:args
```



```
POST http://apiRoot/modelName/methodName
```

Where

- *apiRoot* is the application API root path.
- *modelName* is the plural name of the model.
- *methodName* is the function name.

Following the above example, then by default the remote method is exposed at:

```
POST /api/people/greet
```

To change the route, use the `http.path` and `http.verb` properties of the options argument to `remoteMethod()`, for example:

#### **/common/models/model.js**

```
Person.remoteMethod(  
  'greet',  
  {  
    accepts: {arg: 'msg', type: 'string'},  
    returns: {arg: 'greeting', type: 'string'},  
    http: {path: '/sayhi', verb: 'get'}  
  }  
);
```

This call changes the default route to

```
GET /api/people/sayhi
```

So a GET request to `http://localhost:3000/api/people/sayhi?msg=LoopBack%20developer` returns:

```
{"greeting": "Greetings... LoopBack developer"}
```

## **Adding ACLs to remote methods**

To constrain access to custom remote methods, use the [ACL generator](#) in the same way you control access to any model API. The access type for custom remote methods is `Execute`.

### **Basic use**

For example, to deny invocation of the `greet` method used in the examples above:

#### **shell**

```
slc loopback:acl  
[?] Select the model to apply the ACL entry to: Person  
[?] Select the ACL scope: A single method  
[?] Enter the method name: greet  
[?] Select the access type: Execute  
[?] Select the role: All users  
[?] Select the permission to apply: Explicitly deny access
```

The tool then creates the following access control specification:

#### **/common/models/person.json**

```
...
  "acls": [
    {
      "principalType": "ROLE",
      "principalId": "$everyone",    // apply the ACL to everyone
      "permission": "DENY",         // DENY attempts to invoke this method
      "property": "greet"           // applies the access control to the greet() method
    }
  ],
  ...
```

### **Advanced use**

Another example, to allow invocation of the a remote method only for the `$owner` of that model object:

#### **/common/models/YourModel.js**

```
module.exports = function(YourModel) {
  ...
  YourModel.remoteMethod(
    'someRemoteMethod',
    {
      accepts: [
        {arg: 'id', type: 'number', required: true}
      ],
      // mixing ':id' into the rest url allows $owner to be determined and used for
      access control
      http: {path: '/:id/some-remote-method', verb: 'get'}
    }
  );
};
```

### **Formatting remote method responses**

You can reformat the response returned by all remote methods by adding a [boot script](#) that modifies the object returned by `app.remotes()` as follows:

#### **/server/boot/hook.js**

```
module.exports = function(app) {
  var remotes = app.remotes();
  // modify all returned values
  remotes.after('***', function (ctx, next) {
    ctx.result = {
      data: ctx.result
    };

    next();
  });
};
```

# Remote hooks

- Overview
  - Signature
  - Wildcards
- Examples
  - Examples of afterRemoteError
- Context object
  - `ctx.req.accessToken`
  - `ctx.result`

## See also:

- Remote methods
- Operation hooks

## Overview

LoopBack provides two kinds of hooks:

- **Remote hooks**, that execute before or after calling a remote method, either a custom [remote method](#) or a standard CRUD method inherited from [PersistedModel](#). See [PersistedModel REST API](#) for information on how the Node methods correspond to REST operations.
- **Operation hooks** that execute when models perform CRUD operations. NOTE: Operation hooks replace model hooks, which are now deprecated.

A *remote hook* enables you to execute a function before or after a remote method is called by a client:

- `beforeRemote()` runs before the remote method.
- `afterRemote()` runs after the remote method has finished successfully.
- `afterRemoteError()` runs after the remote method has finished with an error.



Use `beforeRemote` hooks to validate and sanitize inputs to a remote method. Because a `beforeRemote` hook runs *before* the remote method is executed, it can access the inputs to the remote method, but not the result.

Use `afterRemote` hooks to modify, log, or otherwise use the results of a remote method before sending it to a remote client. Because an `afterRemote` hook runs *after* the remote method is executed, it can access the result of the remote method, but cannot modify the input arguments.

## Signature

Both `beforeRemote()` and `afterRemote()` have the same signature; below syntax uses `beforeRemote` but `afterRemote` is the same.

For static remote methods, including custom remote methods:

```
modelName.beforeRemote( methodName, function( ctx, next ) {  
  ...  
  next();  
});
```

For instance methods:

```
modelName.beforeRemote( methodName, function( ctx, modelInstance, next ) {  
  ...  
  next();  
});
```

The hook `afterRemoteError()` has a slightly different signature: The handler function has only two arguments:

```
modelName.afterRemoteError( methodName, function( ctx, next ) {  
  ...  
  next();  
});
```

Where:

- `modelName` is the name of the model to which the remote hook is attached.
- `methodName` is the name of the method that triggers the remote hook. This may be a custom [remote method](#) or a standard CRUD method inherited from [PersistedModel](#). It may include wildcards to match more than one method (see below).
- `ctx` is the [context object](#).
- `modelInstance` is the affected model instance.

The syntax above includes a call to `next()` as a reminder that you must call `next()` at some point in the remote hook callback function. It doesn't necessarily have to come at the end of the function, but must be called at some point before the function completes.

### Wildcards

You can use the following wildcard characters in *methodName*:

- Asterisk '\*' to match any character, up to the first occurrence of the delimiter character '.' (period).
- Double-asterisk to match any character, including the delimiter character '.' (period).

For example, use '\*.\*' to match any static method; use 'prototype.\*' to match any instance method.

## Examples

The following example defines `beforeRemote` and `afterRemote` hooks for the `revEngine()` remote method:

```
common/models/car.js

module.exports = function(Car) {
  // remote method
  Car.revEngine = function(sound, cb) {
    cb(null, sound + ' ' + sound + ' ' + sound);
  };
  Car.remoteMethod(
    'revEngine',
    {
      accepts: [{arg: 'sound', type: 'string'}],
      returns: {arg: 'engineSound', type: 'string'},
      http: {path: '/rev-engine', verb: 'post'}
    }
  );
  // remote method before hook
  Car.beforeRemote('revEngine', function(context, unused, next) {
    console.log('Putting in the car key, starting the engine.');
```

```
    next();
  });
  // remote method after hook
  Car.afterRemote('revEngine', function(context, remoteMethodOutput, next) {
    console.log('Turning off the engine, removing the key.');
```

```
    next();
  });
  ...
}
```

The following example uses wildcards in the remote method name. This remote hook is called whenever any remote method whose name ends with "save" is executed:

### common/models/customer.js

```
Customer.beforeRemote('*.save', function(ctx, unused, next) {
  if(ctx.req.accessToken) {
    next();
  } else {
    next(new Error('must be logged in to update'))
  }
});

Customer.afterRemote('*.save', function(ctx, user, next) {
  console.log('user has been saved', user);
  next();
});
```



The second argument to the hook (user in the above example) is the `ctx.result` which is not always available.

Below are more examples of remote hooks with wildcards to run a function before any remote method is called.

### common/models/customer.js

```
// ** will match both prototype.* and *.*
Customer.beforeRemote('**', function(ctx, user, next) {
  console.log(ctx.methodString, 'was invoked remotely'); // customers.prototype.save
  was invoked remotely
  next();
});

Other wildcard examples
// run before any static method eg. User.find
Customer.beforeRemote('*', ...);

// run before any instance method eg. User.prototype.save
Customer.beforeRemote('prototype.*', ...);

// prevent password hashes from being sent to clients
Customer.afterRemote('**', function (ctx, user, next) {
  if(ctx.result) {
    if(Array.isArray(ctx.result)) {
      ctx.result.forEach(function (result) {
        delete result.password;
      });
    } else {
      delete ctx.result.password;
    }
  }

  next();
});
```

A safer means of effectively white-listing the fields to be returned by copying the values into new objects:

### common/models/account.js

```
var WHITE_LIST_FIELDS = ['account_id', 'account_name'];

Account.afterRemote('**', function(ctx, modelInstance, next) {
  if (ctx.result) {
    if (Array.isArray(modelInstance)) {
      var answer = [];
      ctx.result.forEach(function (result) {
        var replacement = {};
        WHITE_LIST_FIELDS.forEach(function(field) {
          replacement[field] = result[field];
        });
        answer.push(replacement);
      });
    } else {
      var answer = {};
      WHITE_LIST_FIELDS.forEach(function(field) {
        answer[field] = ctx.result[field];
      });
    }
    ctx.result = answer;
  }
  next();
});
```

### Examples of afterRemoteError

Perform an additional action when the instance method `speak()` fails:

### common/models/dog.js

```
Dog.afterRemoteError('prototype.speak', function(ctx, next) {
  console.log('Cannot speak!', ctx.error);
  next();
});
```

Attach extra metadata to error objects:

### common/models/dog.js

```
Dog.afterRemoteError('**', function(ctx, next) {
  ie (!ctx.error.details) ctx.result.details = {};
  ctx.error.details.info = 'intercepted by a hook';
  next();
});
```

Report a different error back to the caller:

### common/models/dog.js

```
Dog.afterRemoteError('prototype.speak', function(ctx, next) {  
  console.error(ctx.error);  
  next(new Error('See server console log for details.'));  
});
```

## Context object

Remote hooks are provided with a Context `ctx` object that contains transport-specific data (for HTTP: `req` and `res`). The `ctx` object also has a set of consistent APIs across transports.

Applications that use [loopback.rest\(\)](#) middleware provide the following additional `ctx` properties:

- `ctx.req`: Express [Request](#) object.
- `ctx.result`: Express [Response](#) object.

The context object passed to `afterRemoteError()` hooks has an additional property `ctx.error` set to the Error reported by the remote method.

Other properties:

- `ctx.args` - Object containing the HTTP request argument definitions. Uses the arg definition to find the value from the request. These are the input values to the remote method.
- `ctx.result` - An object keyed by the argument names.  
Exception: If the root property is true, then it's the value of the argument that has root set to true.

### ***ctx.req.accessToken***

The `accessToken` of the user calling the remote method.



`ctx.req.accessToken` is undefined if the remote method is not invoked by a logged in user (or other principal).

### ***ctx.result***

During `afterRemote` hooks, `ctx.result` will contain the data about to be sent to a client. Modify this object to transform data before it is sent.



The value of `ctx.result` may not be available at all times.

If a remote method explicitly specifies the returned value, only then would `ctx.result` be set. So your remote method must do something like:

```
MyModel.remoteMethod(  
  'doSomething',  
  {  
    ...  
    returns: {arg: 'redirectUrl', type: 'string'}  
  }  
);
```

## Operation hooks

- [Overview](#)
  - [Operation hook context object](#)
  - [Shared hookState property](#)
- [Hooks](#)
- [afterInitialize hook](#)
  - [Example](#)
- [Migration guide](#)

### See also:

- [Remote hooks](#)
- [Remote methods](#)

## Overview

*Operation hooks* are not tied to a particular method, but rather are triggered from all methods that execute a particular high-level "operation," such as create, read, update, or delete. This enables you to intercept CRUD-related actions independently of the specific method that invoke them (for example, `create`, `save`, or `updateOrCreate`).



In general, use operation hooks instead of deprecated [model hooks](#) to do something when a model performs a specific operation.

The API is simple: the method `Model.observe(name, observer)`, where the `observer` is function `observer(context, callback)`.

### Operation hook context object

The `context` object is specific to operation hooks and does not have any relation to the context object passed to remote hooks registered via `Model.beforeRemote` and `Model.afterRemote`. See [Remote hooks](#) for more information. Note that the context object is not related to the "current context" provided by `loopback.getCurrentContext()` either.

Child models inherit observers, and you can register multiple observers for a hook.

### Options

The context object has an `options` property that enables hooks to access any options provided by the caller. For example:

```
var FILTERED_PROPERTIES = ['immutable', 'birthday'];
MyModel.observe('before save', function filterProperties(ctx, next) {
  if (ctx.options && ctx.options.skipPropertyFilter) return next();
  if (ctx.instance) {
    FILTERED_PROPERTIES.forEach(function(p) { ctx.instance.unsetAttribute(p); });
  } else {
    FILTERED_PROPERTIES.forEach(function(p) { delete ctx.data[p]; });
  }
  next();
});

// immutable is not updated
MyModel.updateOrCreate({ id: 1, immutable: 'new value' }, cb);

// immutable is changed
MyModel.updateOrCreate({ id: 2, immutable: 'new value' }, { skipPropertyFilter: true }, cb);
```

### Removing unneeded properties

To remove unwanted properties (fields) from the context object, use the following:

```
ctx.instance.unsetAttribute('unwantedField');
```

This completely removes the field and prevents inserting spurious data into the database.

### Using instance objects

Use the `ctx.instance` object to manipulate the data in as many places as possible, rather than the `data` object, since then you would have to build a new instance to use prototype methods.

Also because LoopBack performs validation of the updated model instance, in many cases you would have to pass the data back to the instance for validation.

Hooks can use the `ctx.instance` object in two basic ways:

- To modify the data that will be persisted to the database; this is specific to "before save" hook.
- To get more information about the model instance affected. There are only two cases where this data is not available: `prototype.remove` and `prototype.updateAttributes`.



For `updateAttributes`, for hooks interested in modifying the data, there is no instance to manipulate, and the hook must update the partial data object instead. You can no longer check `if(ctx.instance)` to decide whether he has a full instance or partial data for modifications.

When it comes to `prototype.remove`, there are no restrictions similar to `updateAttributes`.

All instance-level operations (`prototype.updateAttributes` and `prototype.delete`) have access to the current instance as part of the hook's `ctx` object:

- `prototype.save` and `before save`: the instance is available as `instance`.
- `prototype.save` and `after save`: the instance is available as `instance`.
- `prototype.updateAttributes` + `before save`: because the instance should not be manipulated directly, the instance is available as `ctx.currentInstance` to distinguish between the instance that *can* be directly modified. In other words, `ctx.currentInstance` provides the current state of the instance, and it is immutable. Any modifications should be applied to `context.data`, which incorporates the partial nature of the `updateAttributes` operation.
- `prototype.updateAttributes` and `after save`: in *after* hooks, this difference is not important, and thus, the instance will be simply be available as `ctx.instance`.
- `prototype.remove/destroy/delete` and `before save`: again, the difference is irrelevant, so the instance will be available as `instance`.
- `prototype.remove/destroy/delete` and `after save`: the instance will be available as `instance`.

### Shared hookState property

The `ctx.hookState` property is preserved across all hooks invoked for a single operation.

For example, both "access", "before save" and "after save" invoked for `Model.create()` have the same object passed in `ctx.hookState`.

This way the hooks can pass state data between "before" and "after" hook.

### Hooks

LoopBack provides the following operation hooks:

- [access](#)
- [before save](#)
- [after save](#)
- [before delete](#)
- [after delete](#)
- [loaded](#)
- [persist](#)

The following table lists hooks that `PersistedModel` methods invoke.

Method name	Hooks invoked
all	access
find findOne findById exists count	access, loaded
create	before save, after save, loaded, persist
upsert (aka updateOrCreate)	access, before save, after save, loaded, persist
findOrCreate	access, before save*, after save*, loaded, persist
deleteAll (aka destroyAll) deleteById (aka destroyById)	access, before delete, after delete
updateAll	access, before save, after save
prototype.save	before save, after save, persist
prototype.delete	before delete, after delete
prototype.updateAttributes	before save, after save, loaded, persist

\* When `findOrCreate` finds an existing model, the save hooks are not triggered. However, connectors providing atomic implementation may trigger `before save` hook even when the model is not created, since they cannot determine in advance whether the model will be created or not.

## access

The `access` hook is triggered whenever a database is queried for models, that is when *any* CRUD method of `PersistedModel` is called. Observers may modify the query, for example by adding extra restrictions.

Context properties

- `Model` - the constructor of the model that will be queried
- `query` - the query containing fields `where`, `include`, `order`, etc.

Examples:

```
MyModel.observe('access', function logQuery(ctx, next) {
  console.log('Accessing %s matching %s', ctx.Model.modelName, ctx.query.where);
  next();
});

MyModel.observe('access', function limitToTenant(ctx, next) {
  ctx.query.where.tenantId = loopback.getCurrentContext().tenantId;
  next();
});
```

## before save

The `before save` hook is triggered before a model instance is modified (created, updated), specifically when the following methods of `PersistedModel` are called:

- `create()`
- `upsert()`
- `findOrCreate()`\*
- `updateAll()`
- `prototype.save()`
- `prototype.updateAttributes()`

\* When `findOrCreate` finds an existing model, the save hooks are not triggered. However, connectors providing atomic implementation may trigger `before save` hook even when the model is not created, since they cannot determine in advance whether the model will be created or not.

The hook is triggered *before* `model validation` functions are called.



Since the `before save` hook is triggered before validators are called, you can use it to ensure that empty or missing values are filled with default values.

Depending on which method triggered this hook, the context will have one of the following sets of properties:

- Full save of a single model
  - `Model` - the constructor of the model that will be saved
  - `instance` - the model instance to be saved. The value is an instance of `Model` class.
- Partial update of possibly multiple models
  - `Model` - the constructor of the model that will be saved
  - `where` - the where filter describing which instances will be affected
  - `data` - the (partial) data to apply during the update

### ctx.isNewInstance

The `before save` hook provides the `ctx.isNewInstance` property when `ctx.instance` is set, with the following values:

- True for all CREATE operations
- False for all UPDATE operations
- Undefined for `updateOrCreate`, `prototype.save`, `prototype.updateAttributes`, and `updateAll` operations.



Only certain connectors support `ctx.isNewInstance`. With other connectors it is undefined. See [Checking for support of ctx.isNewInstance](#).

## Triggering with prototype.updateAttributes

In a `before save` hook triggered by `prototype.updateAttributes()`, `ctx.data` is populated with the data to be changed as normal for an update operation. However, rather than populating `ctx.instance` with the current instance as for a `prototype.save()` call, it instead populates `ctx.currentInstance` with the instance being saved. This value is immutable, but is readable.

### Examples

```
MyModel.observe('before save', function updateTimestamp(ctx, next) {
  if (ctx.instance) {
    ctx.instance.updated = new Date();
  } else {
    ctx.data.updated = new Date();
  }
  next();
});

MyModel.observe('before save', function computePercentage(ctx, next) {
  if (ctx.instance) {
    ctx.instance.percentage = 100 * ctx.instance.part / ctx.instance.total;
  } else if (ctx.data.part && ctx.data.total) {
    ctx.data.percentage = 100 * ctx.data.part / ctx.data.total;
  } else if (ctx.data.part || ctx.data.total) {
    // either report an error or fetch the missing properties from DB
  }
  next();
});
```

### after save

The `after save` hook is called after a model change was successfully persisted to the datasource, specifically when the following methods of `PersistedModel` are called:

- `create()`
- `upsert()`
- `findOrCreate()*`
- `updateAll()`
- `prototype.save()`
- `prototype.updateAttributes()`

\* When `findOrCreate` finds an existing model, the save hooks are not triggered. However, connectors providing atomic implementation may trigger `before save` hook even when the model is not created, since they cannot determine in advance whether the model will be created or not.

Depending on which method triggered this hook, the context will have one of the following sets of properties:

- Single model:
  - `Model` - the constructor of the model that will be saved.
  - `instance` - the model instance that was saved. The value is an instance of `Model` class and contains updated values computed by datastore (for example, auto-generated ID).
- Partial update of one or more models:
  - `Model` - the constructor of the model that will be saved.
  - `where` - the where filter describing which instances were queried. See caveat below.
  - `data` - the (partial) data applied during the update.

`Model.updateAll` exclusively uses the second set.



The `after save` hook returns the changes made to the caller (REST client), but does not persist them to the database!

The `after save` hook provides the `ctx.isNewInstance` property whenever `ctx.instance` is set, with the following values:

- True after all CREATE operations.
- False after all UPDATE operations.
- Undefined after `updateAll` operation.

- The operations `updateOrCreate`, `prototype.save`, and `prototype.updateAttributes` require connectors to report whether a new instance was created or an existing instance was updated. When the connector provides this information, `ctx.isNewInstance` is `True` or `False`. When the connector does not support this feature yet (see below), the value is `undefined`.



Only certain connectors support `ctx.isNewInstance`. With other connectors it is `undefined`. See [Checking for support of `ctx.isNewInstance`](#).

Examples:

```
MyModel.observe('after save', function(ctx, next) {
  if (ctx.instance) {
    console.log('Saved %s#%s', ctx.Model.modelName, ctx.instance.id);
  } else {
    console.log('Updated %s matching %j',
      ctx.Model.pluralModelName,
      ctx.where);
  }
  next();
});
```



You cannot reliably use the "where" query in an after save hook to find which models were affected.

Consider the following call:

```
MyModel.updateAll({ color: 'yellow' }, { color: 'red' }, cb);
```

At the time the "after save" hook is run, no records will match the query.

### Checking for support of `ctx.isNewInstance`

The initial implementation of `ctx.isNewInstance` included only support for memory, MongoDB, and MySQL connectors. You can check whether your connector supports this feature by testing the value returned in "after save" hook.

For example:

```
MyModel.observe('after save', function(ctx, next) {
  console.log('isNewInstance?', ctx.isNewInstance);
  next();
});
// It's important to provide a value for the id property
// Include also values for any required properties
MyModel.updateOrCreate({ id: 123 }, console.log);
```

Please report a GitHub issue in the connector project if the feature is not supported.

### ***before delete***

The `before delete` hook is triggered before a model is removed from a datasource, specifically when the following methods of `PersistedModel` are called:

- `destroyAll()` (same as `deleteAll()`)
- `destroyById()` (same as `deleteById()`)
- `prototype.destroy()` (same as `prototype.delete()`)



The `before delete` operation hook does not receive a list of deleted model instance IDs, because backend data stores such as relational or NoSQL databases don't provide this information. However, *when deleting a single model instance* the hook receives `ctx.instance` that contains the instance being deleted.

## Context properties

- `Model` - the constructor of the model that will be queried
- `where` - the where filter describing which instances will be deleted.

Example:

```
MyModel.observe('before delete', function(ctx, next) {
  console.log('Going to delete %s matching %j',
    ctx.Model.pluralModelName,
    ctx.where);
  next();
});
```

To reject the deletion of a model based on some condition, call `next()` with an error to abort the delete operation. For example:

```
if (subscriptions.length > 0) {
  //Stop the deletion of this Client
  var err = new Error("Client has an active subscription, cannot delete");
  err.statusCode = 400;
  console.log(err.toString());
  next(err);
} else {
  next();
}
```

## after delete



The `after delete` operation hooks do not receive a list of deleted model instance IDs, because backend data stores such as relational or NoSQL databases don't provide this information. However, *when deleting a single model instance* the hook receives `ctx`. instance that contains the instance being deleted.

The `after delete` hook is triggered after some models are removed from the datasource, specifically when the following methods of `PersistedModel` are called:

- `destroyAll()` (same as `deleteAll()`)
- `destroyById()` (same as `deleteById()`)
- `prototype.destroy()` (same as `prototype.delete()`)

## Context properties

- `Model` - the constructor of the model that will be queried
- `where` - the where filter describing which instances were deleted.

Example:

```
MyModel.observe('after delete', function(ctx, next) {
  console.log('Deleted %s matching %j',
    ctx.Model.pluralModelName,
    ctx.where);
  next();
});
```

## loaded

This hook is triggered by the following methods of `PersistedModel`:

- `find()`
- `findOne()`
- `findById()`
- `exists()`
- `count()`
- `create()`
- `upsert()` (same as `updateOrCreate()`)
- `findOrCreate()`\*
- `prototype.save()`
- `prototype.updateAttributes()`



By default, `create` and `updateAttributes` do not apply database updates to the model instance returned to the callback, therefore any changes made by "loaded" hooks are discarded. To change this behavior, set a per-model option `updateOnLoad: true`.

LoopBack invokes this hook after the connector fetches data, but before creating a model instance from that data. This enables hooks to decrypt data (for example). NOTE: This hook is called with the raw database data, not a full model instance.

### ***persist***

This hook is triggered by operations that persist data to the datasource, specifically, the following methods of `PersistedModel`:

- `create()`
- `upsert()` (same as `updateOrCreate()`)
- `findOrCreate()`\*
- `prototype.save()`
- `prototype.updateAttributes()`

Don't confuse this hook with the "before save" hook:

- **before save** – Use this hook to observe (and operate on) model instances that are about to be saved (for example, when the country code is set and the country name not, fill in the country name).
- **persist** – Use this hook to observe (and operate on) data just before it is going to be persisted into a data source (for example, encrypt the values in the database).

During `create` the updates applied through `persist` hook are reflected into the database, but the same updates are NOT reflected in the `instance` object obtained in callback of `create`.

Secondly, `findOrCreate`, creates a new instance of the object every time. So:

- Both `ctx.data.id` and `ctx.currentInstance.id` are set to new ID.
- `ctx.isNewInstance` is `true`

For this hook, `ctx.isNewInstance` is:

- True for all CREATE operations
- False for all UPDATE operations
- Undefined for `updateOrCreate`, `prototype.save`, `prototype.updateAttributes`, and `updateAll` operations.

### **afterInitialize hook**



`afterInitialize` is not strictly an operation hook. It is actually the only **model hook** that is not deprecated.

It is a synchronous method and does not take a callback function: You do not need to call `next()` after performing your logic in the hook.

This hook is called after a model is initialized.

### ***Example***

### /common/models/coffee-shop.js

```
...
CoffeeShop.afterInitialize = function() {
  //your logic goes here
};
...
```

Most operations require initializing a model before actually performing an action, but there are a few cases where the initialize event is not triggered, such as HTTP requests to the `exists`, `count`, or bulk update REST endpoints.

## Migration guide

The following table shows which new hook to use for each of the old [model hooks](#):

Model hook	Operation hook to use instead
beforeValidate	before save
beforeCreate	before save
afterCreate	after save
beforeSave	before save
afterSave	after save
beforeUpdate	before save
afterUpdate	after save
beforeDestroy	before delete
afterDestroy	after delete

The following hook doesn't have any counterpart: `afterValidate`. If you have a specific use case that cannot be implemented without that hook, then please open a GitHub issue and describe your requirements there. We will consider adding a replacement for this hook.

## Operation hooks summary

Hook	access	before save	persist	after save	before delete	after delete
<b>find</b>	Model query hookState options					
<b>count</b>	Model query hookState options					
<b>create</b>		Model instance isNewInstance hookState options	Model data isNewInstance currentInstance hookState options	Model instance isNewInstance hookState options		
<b>findOrCreate_found (Optimized)</b>	Model query hookState options	Model instance isNewInstance hookState options	Model where data isNewInstance currentInstance hookState options			

<b>findOrCreate_found (Unoptimized)</b>	Model query hookState options					
<b>findOrCreate_create (Optimized)</b>	Model query hookState options	Model instance isNewInstance hookState options	Model where data isNewInstance currentInstance hookState options	Model instance isNewInstance hookState options		
<b>findOrCreate_create (Unoptimized)</b>	Model query hookState options	Model instance isNewInstance hookState options	Model data isNewInstance currentInstance hookState options	Model instance isNewInstance hookState options		
<b>updateOrCreate_create (Optimized)</b>	Model query hookState options	Model where data hookState options	Model where data currentInstance hookState options	Model instance isNewInstance hookState options		
<b>updateOrCreate_create (Unoptimized)</b>	Model query hookState options	Model instance isNewInstance hookState options	Model data isNewInstance currentInstance hookState options	Model instance isNewInstance hookState options		
<b>updateOrCreate_update (Optimized)</b>	Model query hookState options	Model where data hookState options	Model where data currentInstance hookState options	Model instance isNewInstance hookState options		
<b>updateOrCreate_update (Unoptimized)</b>	Model query hookState options	Model where data currentInstance hookState options	Model where data currentInstance hookState options	Model instance isNewInstance hookState options		
<b>updateAll</b>	Model query hookState options	Model where data hookState options	Model where data hookState options	Model where data hookState options		
<b>prototypeSave</b>		Model instance hookState options	Model data where currentInstance hookState options	Model instance isNewInstance hookState options		
<b>prototypeUpdateAttributes</b>		Model where data currentInstance hookState options	Model where data currentInstance hookState options	Model instance isNewInstance hookState options		
<b>prototypeDelete</b>	Model query hookState options				Model where instance hookState options	Model where instance hookState options



<b>deleteAll</b>	Model query hookState options				Model where hookState options	Model where hookState options
------------------	--	--	--	--	--	--

## Model hooks



**Model hooks are deprecated, except for [afterInitialize](#).**

**Please use [operation hooks](#) instead.**

- [Overview](#)
- [afterInitialize](#)
- [beforeValidate](#)
- [afterValidate](#)
- [beforeCreate](#)
- [afterCreate](#)
- [beforeSave](#)
- [afterSave](#)
- [beforeUpdate](#)
- [afterUpdate](#)
- [beforeDestroy](#)
- [afterDestroy](#)

### See also:

- [Remote methods](#)
- [Remote hooks](#)

### Overview

Use model hooks to add custom logic to models that extend [PersistedModel](#). Each hook is called before or after a specific event in the model's lifecycle.

You can define the following model hooks, listed in the order that the events occur in a model lifecycle:

- [afterInitialize](#) - triggers after a model has been initialized.
- [beforeValidate](#) - triggers before validation is performed on a model.
- [afterValidate](#) - triggers after validation is performed on a model.
- [beforeSave](#) - triggers before a model is saved to a data source.
- [afterSave](#) - triggers after a model is saved to a data source.
- [beforeCreate](#) - triggers before a model is created.
- [afterCreate](#) - triggers after a model is created.
- [beforeUpdate](#) - triggers before a model is updated.
- [afterUpdate](#) - triggers after a model is updated.
- [beforeDestroy](#) - triggers before a model is destroyed.
- [afterDestroy](#) - triggers after a model is destroyed.

Best practice is to register model hooks in `/common/models/your-model.js`. This ensures hooks are registered during application initialization. If you need to register a hook at runtime, get a reference to the `app` object and register it right then and there.

### afterInitialize

This hook is called after a model is initialized.



This model hook is *not* deprecated and is still useful. It is a synchronous method: there is no callback function.

### Example

**/common/models/coffee-shop.js**

```
...
CoffeeShop.afterInitialize = function() {
  //your logic goes here
};
...
```

Most operations require initializing a model before actually performing an action, but there are a few cases where the initialize event is not triggered, such as HTTP requests to the `exists`, `count`, or `bulk update` REST endpoints.



This is the only hook that does not require you to explicitly call `next()` after performing your logic.

### **beforeValidate**

This hook is called before [validation](#) is performed on a model.

#### **Example**

##### **/common/models/coffee-shop.js**

```
...
CoffeeShop.beforeValidate = function(next, modelInstance) {
  //your logic goes here - don't use modelInstance
  next();
};
...
```



In the `beforeValidate` hook, use `this` instead of `modelInstance` to get a reference to the model being validated. In this hook, `modelInstance` is not valid.

You must call `next()` to let LoopBack now you're ready to go on after the hook's logic has completed.



If you don't call `next()`, the application will appear to "hang".

### **afterValidate**

This hook is called after [validation](#) is performed on a model.

#### **Example**

##### **/common/models/coffee-shop.js**

```
...
CoffeeShop.afterValidate(next) {
  //your logic goes here
  next();
};
...
```

You must call `next()` to let LoopBack now you're ready to go on after the hook's logic has completed.

### **beforeCreate**

This hook is called just before a model is created.

#### **Example**

#### **/common/models/coffee-shop.js**

```
...
CoffeeShop.beforeCreate = function(next, modelInstance) {
  //your logic goes here
  next();
};
...
```

LoopBack provides `modelInstance` as a reference to the model being created.

You must call `next()` to continue execution after the hook completes its logic. If you don't the application will appear to hang.

#### **afterCreate**

This hook is called after a model is created.

#### **Example**

#### **/common/models/coffee-shop.js**

```
...
CoffeeShop.afterCreate = function(next) {
  //your logic goes here
  this.name = 'New coffee shop name; //you can access the created model via `this`
  next();
};
...
```

Access the model being created with `this`.

You must call `next()` to continue execution after the hook completes its logic. If you don't the application will appear to hang.

#### **beforeSave**

This hook is called just before a model instance is saved.

#### **Example**

#### **/common/models/coffee-shop.js**

```
...
CoffeeShop.beforeSave = function(next, modelInstance) {
  //your logic goes here
  next();
};
...
```

LoopBack provides `modelInstance` as a reference to the model being saved.

You must call `next()` to continue execution after the hook completes its logic. If you don't the application will appear to hang.

#### **afterSave**

This hook is called after a model is saved.

### Example

#### /common/models/coffee-shop.js

```
...
CoffeeShop.afterSave = function(next) {
  //your logic goes here
  this.name = 'New coffee shop name; //you can access the created model via `this`
  next();
};
...
```

Access the model being saved with `this`.

You must call `next()` to continue execution after the hook completes its logic. If you don't the application will appear to hang.

### beforeUpdate

This hook is called just before a model is updated.

### Example

#### /common/models/coffee-shop.js

```
...
CoffeeShop.beforeUpdate = function(next, modelInstance) {
  //your logic goes here
  next();
};
...
```

LoopBack provides `modelInstance` as a reference to the model being updated.

You must call `next()` to continue execution after the hook completes its logic. If you don't the application will appear to hang.

### afterUpdate

This hook is called after a model is updated.

### Example

#### /common/models/coffee-shop.js

```
...
CoffeeShop.afterUpdate = function(next) {
  //your logic goes here
  this.name = 'New coffee shop name; //you can access the created model via `this`
  next();
};
...
```

LoopBack provides `modelInstance` as a reference to the model being saved.

You must call `next()` to continue execution after the hook completes its logic. If you don't the application will appear to hang.

## beforeDestroy

This hook is called just before a model is destroyed.

### Example

**/common/models/coffee-shop.js**

```
...
CoffeeShop.beforeDestroy = function(next, modelInstance) {
  //your logic goes here
  next();
};
...
```

LoopBack provides `modelInstance` as a reference to the model being saved.

You must call `next()` to continue execution after the hook completes its logic. If you don't the application will appear to hang.

## afterDestroy

This hook is called after a model is destroyed.

### Example

**/common/models/coffee-shop.js**

```
...
CoffeeShop.afterDestroy = function(next) {
  //your logic goes here
  next();
};
...
```

You must call `next()` to continue execution after the hook completes its logic. If you don't the application will appear to hang.

## Connector hooks

- Overview
- Hooks
  - [before execute](#)
  - [after execute](#)
- Context
  - [SQL based connectors \(MySQL, PostgreSQL, SQL Server, Oracle\)](#)
  - [MongoDB connector](#)
  - [REST connector](#)
  - [SOAP connector](#)

### Overview

Connectors are responsible for interacting with the backend systems on behalf of model methods. The connector hooks allow applications to intercept the connector execution.

### Hooks

#### *before execute*

The 'before execute' hook will be invoked before the connector sends a request to the backend.

```
var connector = MyModel.getDataSource().connector;
connector.observe('before execute', function(ctx, next) {
  // ...
  next();
});
```

To terminate the invocation, call `ctx.end(err, result)`.

```
var connector = MyModel.getDataSource().connector;
connector.observe('before execute', function(ctx, next) {
  // ...
  ctx.end(null, cachedResponse);
});
```

### **after execute**

The 'after execute' hook will be invoked after the connector receives a response from the backend.

```
connector.observe('after execute', function(ctx, next) {
  // ...
  next();
});
```

## **Context**

The context object contains information for the hooks to act on. It varies based on the type of connectors.

### **SQL based connectors (MySQL, PostgreSQL, SQL Server, Oracle)**

before: {req: {sql: 'SELECT ...', params: [1, 2]}, end: ...}

after: {req: {sql: 'SELECT ...', params: [1, 2]}, res: ..., end: ...}

### **MongoDB connector**

before: {req: {command: ..., params: ...}, end: ...}

after: {req: {...}, res: {...}, end: ...}

`req.command` is the command for the [mongodb](#) collection.

`req.params` is the parameters passing to the [mongodb](#) driver.

`res` is the object received from the [mongodb](#) driver.

### **REST connector**

before: {req: {...}, end: ...}

after: {req: {...}, res: {...}, end: ...}

`req` is the object passing to [request](#) module.

`res` is the object received from [request](#) module.

### **SOAP connector**

before: {req: {...}, end: ...}

after: {req: {...}, res: {...}, end: ...}

*req* is the object passing to [request](#) module.

*res* is the object received from [request](#) module.

## Tutorial: Adding application logic



This article is reproduced from [loopback-example-app-logic](#)

### loopback-example-app-logic

```
$ git clone https://github.com/strongloop/loopback-example-app-logic.git
$ cd loopback-example-app-logic
$ npm install
$ node .
# then in a different tab, run ./bin/remote-method-request or
./bin/datetime-request
```

In this example, we demonstrate remote methods, remote hooks, model operation hooks, boot scripts, and middleware as solutions for integrating user-defined logic into a LoopBack application.

### Prerequisites

#### Tutorials

- [Getting started with LoopBack](#)
- [Tutorial series - step 1](#)
- [Tutorial series - step 2](#)

#### Knowledge

- [LoopBack models](#)
- [LoopBack adding application logic](#)

### Procedure

#### Create the application

##### Application information

- Name: `loopback-example-app-logic`
- Directory to contain the project: `loopback-example-app-logic`

```
$ slc loopback loopback-example-app-logic
... # follow the prompts
$ cd loopback-example-app-logic
```

#### Add a model

##### Model information

- Name: `car`
- Datasource: `db (memory)`
- Base class: `PersistedModel`

- Expose via REST: *yes*
- Custom plural form: *Leave blank*
- Properties
  - make
  - String
  - Not required
  - model
  - String
  - Not required

```
$ slc loopback:model car
... # follow the prompts
```

### Define a remote method

Define a [remote method](#) in `car.js`.

*The remote method takes a "sound" and repeats it three times.*

Test it by starting the server (using `node .`) and running `curl -XPOST localhost:3000/api/cars/rev-engine -H 'content-type:application/json' -d '{"sound":"vroom"}'`.

*If you are using Windows, single quotes are treated as backticks in cmd. This means you will have to modify the curl command to use and escape double quotes instead: `curl -XPOST localhost:3000/api/cars/rev-engine -H "content-type:application/json" -d "{\"sound\":\"vroom\"}"`.*

You should see:

```
...
{"engineSound":"vroom vroom vroom"}
```

### Define a remote method before hook

Define a [remote method before hook](#) in `car.js`.

*The second parameter unused must be provided for legacy reasons. You may simply ignore it, but you must declare it to ensure next is the third parameter. This is a side effect of inheriting from the [jugglingdb](#) library.*

*context contains the [Express](#) request and response objects (ie. `context.req` and `context.res`).*

This method is triggered right before `revEngine` is called and prints a message to the console.

Restart the server.

```
$ ./bin/remote-method-request
```

You should see:

```
...
Putting in the car key, starting the engine.
```



### Define a remote method after hook

Define a `remote method after hook` in `car.js`.

This method is triggered after `revEngine` finishes execution and prints a message to the console.

Restart the server.

```
$ ./bin/remote-method-request
```

You should see:

```
...
Turning off the engine, removing the key.
```

### Create a boot script

Create `print-models.js` in the `boot` directory.

*The `app` argument is provided by LoopBack. You can use it to access the application context, which is required when you want to retrieve models, configs, and so on.*

#### Asynchronous boot scripts

*To use asynchronous boot scripts, you have to modify `boot` to take callback. You will also need to provide an additional `callback` argument in your boot scripts.*

Restart the server.

In the server output, you should see:

```
...
Models:  [ 'User', 'AccessToken', 'ACL', 'RoleMapping', 'Role', 'car' ]
...
```

### Define a model operation hook

Define a `model operation hook` in `car.js`.

Copy the `create-car.js` script to the `server/boot` directory.

```
$ cp examples/async-boot-script/create-car.js server/boot/
```

Restart the server.

You should see:

```
...
About to save a car instance: { make: 'honda', model: 'civic' }
A `car` instance has been created from a boot script: { make: 'honda',
model: 'civic', id: 1 }
...
```

This model operation hook is triggered **before** saving any car model instance.

*Many other operation hooks are available, such as `access`, `before save`, `after save`, `before delete`, and `after delete`. See the [model operation hooks documentation](#) for more information.*

### Add pre-processing middleware

Create the `middleware` directory to store middleware files.

```
$ mkdir server/middleware
```

Create the `tracker` middleware to respond with the request processing time.

Register the `tracker` middleware in `middleware.json`.

*We register `tracker` in the initial phase because we want it configured before other middleware. See the [official middleware phases documentation](#).*

Restart the server.

```
$ ./bin/remote-method-request
```

You should see:

```
...
The request processing time is 28.472051 ms.
```

*Your time will be different.*

### Add post-processing middleware

Create the `datetime` middleware, which responds with the current date and time when a request is made to `localhost:3000/datetime`.

Register the `tracker` middleware in `middleware.json`.

Create a shell script to test the middleware.

Restart the server.

```
$ ./bin/datetime-request
```

You should see:

```
...  
{"started": "2015-01-14T22:54:35.708Z", "uptime": 3.494}
```

*Your date and time will be different.*

- [Next tutorial](#)
- [All tutorials](#)

## Defining boot scripts

- [Overview](#)
- [Boot scripts](#)
- [Custom boot scripts](#)
  - [Bootstrap function arguments](#)
  - [Asynchronous boot scripts](#)
  - [Synchronous boot scripts](#)
- [Boot script loading order](#)

### See also:

- [Adding logic to models](#)
- [Defining middleware](#)

### Overview

The LoopBack bootstrapper, [loopback-boot](#), performs application initialization (also called *bootstrapping*). When an application starts, the bootstrapper:

- Configures data sources.
- Defines custom models
- Configures models and attaches models to data-sources.
- Configures application settings
- Runs boot scripts in the `/server/boot` directory.

The `loopback-boot` module exports a `boot()` function that initializes an application. For example, from the standard scaffolded [server.js](#) script:

#### `/server/server.js`

```
var loopback = require('loopback');  
var boot = require('loopback-boot');  
var app = module.exports = loopback();  
...  
boot(app, __dirname);  
...
```

See [loopback-boot API docs](#) for details.



If you create your application with `slc loopback`, the [Application generator](#), then you don't need to do anything to bootstrap your application--the above code is automatically scaffolded for you!

### Boot scripts

Use *boot scripts* to perform custom initialization, in addition to that performed by the LoopBack bootstrapper. When an application starts,

LoopBack loads all the scripts in the `/server/boot` directory. By default, LoopBack loads boot scripts in alphabetical order. You can customize the boot script load order using the `options` argument of `boot()`; see [Boot script loading order](#) for details.

The standard scaffolded LoopBack application created by the [application generator](#) contains the following standard boot scripts (in `/server/boot`) that perform basic initialization:

- `authentication.js` - Enables authentication for the application by calling `app.enableAuth()`.
- `explorer.js` - Enables [API Explorer](#). Delete or change the extension of this file to disable API Explorer.
- `rest-api.js` - Exposes the application's models over REST using `loopback.rest()` middleware.
- `root.js` - Binds `loopback.status()` middleware at the root endpoint ("/") to provide basic status information.

## Custom boot scripts

In addition to the standard boot scripts, you can define custom boot scripts to perform your own logic when an application starts. The easiest way to create a new boot script is with `slc loopback:boot-script`, the [boot script generator](#).

LoopBack supports both synchronous and asynchronous boot scripts. The type to use depends on the nature of the task. Asynchronous boot scripts are best for tasks for which you don't want to block program execution, such as database requests or network operations.

Both types of boot script must export a function that contains the actions of the script. The signature of this function is similar for both types of boot scripts, but asynchronous boot script functions take an additional callback argument.

Here is an example of the simplest possible boot script, a synchronous boot script:

### `/server/boot/hello.js`

```
module.exports = function(app) {  
  console.log('Hello from a boot script');  
};
```

## Bootstrap function arguments

```
module.exports = function(app, [callback]) { ... }
```

Name	Type	Required	Description
app	Object	Yes	The application context object. Provides a handle to the application, so (for example) you can get model objects:  <code>var User = app.models.User;</code>
callback	Function	Only for asynchronous boot scripts	Call the callback function when your application logic is done.

## Asynchronous boot scripts

An asynchronous boot script must export a function that takes two arguments:

1. The application object, `app`. This object enables you to access system-defined variables and configurations.
2. A callback function that enables you to time your response according to your application logic.



You must call the callback function when the script is finished to pass control back to the application.

For example, this boot script prints "hello world" and triggers the callback function after three seconds (3000 milliseconds).

### **/server/boot/script.js**

```
module.exports = function(app, callback) {
  setTimeout(function() {
    console.log('Hello world');
    callback();
  }, 3000);
};
```

If you add this boot script to an application, it will display "Hello world" to the console when it starts.

### **Synchronous boot scripts**

A synchronous boot script must export a function that takes one argument, the application object, `app`. This object enables you to access system-defined variables and configurations.

For example, this boot script retrieves the names of all models registered with the application and displays them to the console.

### **/server/boot/script.js**

```
module.exports = function(app) {
  var modelNames = Object.keys(app.models);
  var models = [];
  modelNames.forEach(function(m) {
    var modelName = app.models[m].modelName;
    if (models.indexOf(modelName) === -1) {
      models.push(modelName);
    }
  });
  console.log('Models:', models);
};
```

If you add this boot script to an "empty" application, you will see this:

### **shell**

```
...
Models: [ 'User', 'AccessToken', 'ACL', 'RoleMapping', 'Role' ]
...
```

### **Boot script loading order**

The easiest way to specify the order of loading boot scripts is by scripts' file names, since LoopBack always executes boot scripts in alphabetical order. For example, you could name boot scripts `01-your-first-script.js`, `02-your-second-script.js`, and so forth. This ensures LoopBack loads scripts in the order you want, for example before default boot scripts in `/server/boot`.

You can also specify the loading order with options to the `boot()` function call in `/server/server.js`. Replace the default scaffolded function call:

```
/server/server.js
```

```
...  
boot(app, __dirname);  
...
```

With something like this:

```
...  
bootOptions = { "appRootDir": __dirname,  
                "bootScripts" : [ "/full/path/to/boot/script/first.js",  
                                  "//full/path/to/boot/script/second.js", ... ] };  
boot(app, bootOptions);  
...
```

Then the application will then execute scripts in the order specified in the `bootScripts` array. Specify the full directory path to each script.



Using the technique shown above, the application will still run all the boot scripts in `/server/boot` in alphabetical order (unless you move or delete them) after your custom-ordered boot scripts specified in `bootScripts`.

If desired, you can also specify one or more directories in the `bootDirs` property, and the application will run scripts in that directory in alphabetical order after those specified in `bootScripts` but before those in the `/server/boot` directory.

## Defining mixins

- [Overview](#)
  - [Built-in model mixins](#)
- [Create a mixin script](#)
- [Reference mixins in model-config.js](#)
- [Enable a model with mixins](#)

See also [loopback-example-mixins](#).

### Overview

Mixins are used to apply common logic to a set of models. For example, a timestamp mixin could inject "created" and "modified" properties to model definitions.

You can apply mixins to any model, including [built-in models](#).

### Built-in model mixins

#### Basic model

By default, the basic LoopBack [Model object](#) has properties and methods "mixed in" from:

- [Inclusion object](#) - Enables you to load relations of several objects and optimize numbers of requests.
- [Validateable object](#) - provides validation methods; see [Validating model data](#).

When you define relations between models, the [RelationMixin object](#) object also gets mixed in to the model object.

#### Connected model

In addition to the methods of the [Basic model object](#), the following are mixed in when a model is connected to a data source:

- [Relation class](#)
- [PersistedModel class](#)

### Create a mixin script

Mixin scripts are JavaScript files in one of the following folders, depending on the scope of the mixin:

- `common/mixins/modelName.js`, for example `common/mixins/timestamp.js`.

- `server/mixins/modelName.js`, for example `server/mixins/timestamp.js`.

If the mixin applies to both client and server models, put it in the `common/mixins` directory; if it applies only to server models, put it in the `server/mixins` directory.

For example:

#### **common/mixins/timestamp.js**

```
module.exports = function(Model, options) {  
  // Model is the model class  
  // options is an object containing the config properties from model definition  
  Model.defineProperty('created', {type: Date, default: '$now'});  
  Model.defineProperty('modified', {type: Date, default: '$now'});  
}
```

## Reference mixins in model-config.js

The configuration file `server/model-config.json` specifies the list of directories to be searched for mixin scripts. By default, the [Application generator](#) `slc loopback` sets them up as follows:

#### **server/model-config.json**

```
{  
  "_meta": {  
    "sources": [  
      "loopback/common/models",  
      "loopback/server/models",  
      "../common/models",  
      "../models"  
    ],  
    "mixins": [  
      "loopback/common/mixins",  
      "loopback/server/mixins",  
      "../common/mixins",  
      "../mixins"  
    ]  
  },  
  ...  
}
```

## Enable a model with mixins

To apply a mixin to a model, add "mixins" to the model definition JSON file. The value of mixins is an object keyed by normalized mixin names. The value for each mixin is passed into the script as the options argument.

#### common/models/note.json

```
{
  "name": "note",
  "base": "PersistedModel",
  ...
  "mixins": { "Timestamp": { "myOption": 1 } },
  "properties": {
    ...
  },
  ...
}
```

In the example above, `common/mixins/timestamp.js` will be invoked with `(note, { "myOption": 1 })`.

## Defining middleware

- [Overview](#)
  - [How to add middleware](#)
  - [Middleware phases](#)
- [Specifying a middleware function](#)
  - [Using built-in middleware](#)
  - [Using other middleware](#)
  - [Defining a new middleware handler function](#)
  - [Packaging a middleware function](#)
- [Registering middleware in middleware.json](#)
  - [Path to middleware function](#)
  - [Middleware configuration properties](#)
    - [Using variables in values](#)
  - [Adding a custom phase](#)
  - [Environment-specific configuration](#)
- [Registering middleware in JavaScript](#)
  - [Using the LoopBack API](#)
  - [Using the Express API](#)
    - [Specifying routes](#)
    - [Caveats](#)
- [Examples](#)
  - [Static middleware](#)
  - [Pre-processing middleware](#)
  - [Routing middleware](#)
  - [Error-handling middleware](#)

#### See also:

- [middleware.json](#)
- [Upgrading applications to use phases](#)
- [Example app](#)
- [loopback-faq-user-management](#)

## Overview

*Middleware* refers to functions executed when HTTP requests are made to REST endpoints. Since LoopBack is based on [Express](#), LoopBack middleware is the same as [Express middleware](#). However, LoopBack adds the concept of *middleware phases*, to clearly define the order in which middleware is called. Using phases helps to avoid ordering issues that can occur with standard Express middleware.

LoopBack supports the following types of middleware:

- **Pre-processing middleware** for custom application logic. See [example of static middleware](#).
- **Dynamic request handling middleware** to serve dynamically-generated responses, for example HTML pages rendered from templates and JSON responses to REST API requests. See [example of pre-processing middleware](#).
- **Static middleware** to serve static client-side assets. See [example of static middleware](#).
- **Error-handling middleware** to deal with request errors. See [example of error-handling middleware](#).

## How to add middleware

To add middleware to your application:

1. **Specify the middleware function:**
  - a. If using an existing function or package, add the code to your application or install the package.
  - b. If you are creating a new middleware function, write it. See [Defining a new middleware handler function](#).
2. **Register the middleware:**



- Edit `server/middleware.json`. This is the recommended way to register middleware. See [Registering middleware in middleware.json](#).
- Alternatively, register the middleware in application code. See [Registering middleware in JavaScript](#).

## Middleware phases

LoopBack defines a number of *phases*, corresponding to different aspects of application execution. When you register middleware, you can specify the phase in which the application will call it. See [Registering middleware in middleware.json](#) and [Using the LoopBack API](#). If you register middleware (or routes) with the Express API, then it is executed at the beginning of the `routes` phase.

The predefined phases are:

1. **initial** - The first point at which middleware can run.
2. **session** - Prepare the session object.
3. **auth** - Handle authentication and authorization.
4. **parse** - Parse the request body.
5. **routes** - HTTP routes implementing your application logic. Middleware registered via the Express API `app.use`, `app.route`, `app.get` (and other HTTP verbs) runs at the beginning of this phase. Use this phase also for sub-apps like `loopback/server/middleware/rest` or `loopback-explorer`.
6. **files** - Serve static assets (requests are hitting the file system here).
7. **final** - Deal with errors and requests for unknown URLs.

Each phase has "before" and "after" subphases in addition to the main phase, encoded following the phase name, separated by a colon. For example, for the "initial" phase, middleware executes in this order:

1. `initial:before`
2. `initial`
3. `initial:after`

Middleware within a single subphase executes in the order in which it is registered. However, you should not rely on such order. Always explicitly order the middleware using appropriate phases when order matters.

## Specifying a middleware function

### Using built-in middleware

LoopBack provides convenience middleware for commonly-used Express/Connect middleware, as described in the following table.

When you use this middleware, you don't have to write any code or install any packages; you just specify in which phase you want it to be called; see [Registering middleware in middleware.json](#).

Middleware ID	Code accessor	External package
<code>loopback#favicon</code>	<code>loopback.favicon()</code>	<a href="#">serve-favicon</a>
<code>loopback#rest</code>	<code>loopback.rest()</code>	N/A
<code>loopback#static</code>	<code>loopback.static()</code>	<a href="#">serve-static</a>
<code>loopback#status</code>	<code>loopback.status()</code>	N/A
<code>loopback#token</code>	<code>loopback.token()</code>	N/A
<code>loopback#urlNotFound</code>	<code>loopback.urlNotFound()</code>	N/A

To simplify migration from LoopBack 1.x and Express 3.x, LoopBack provides middleware that was built-in to in Express 3.x, as shown in the following table. Best practice is to load this middleware directly via `require()` and not rely on LoopBack's compatibility layer.

You can use any middleware compatible with Express; see [Express documentation](#) for a partial list. Simply install it:

```
$ npm install --save <module-name>
```

Then simply register it so that it is called as needed; see [Registering middleware in middleware.json](#) and [Registering middleware in JavaScript](#).

### Defining a new middleware handler function

If no existing middleware does what you need, you can easily write your own middleware handler function. To register the middleware function in `middleware.json`, you need to create a constructor (factory) function that returns the middleware function.

By convention, place middleware functions in the `server/middleware` directory.

A middleware handler function accepts three arguments, or four arguments if it is error-handling middleware. The general form is:

```
function myMiddlewareFunc([err,] req, res, next) { ... };
```

Name	Type	Optional?	Description
err	Object	Required for error-handling middleware.	Use <i>only</i> for error-handling middleware. Error object, usually an instance of <code>Error</code> ; for more information, see <a href="#">Error object</a> .
req	Object	No	The Express <a href="#">request object</a> .
res	Object	No	The Express <a href="#">response object</a> .
next	Function	No	Call <code>next()</code> after your application logic runs to pass control to the next middleware handler.

An example of a middleware function with three arguments, called to process the request when previous handlers did not report an error:

#### Regular middleware

```
return function myMiddleware(req, res, next) {  
  // ...  
}
```

Here is a constructor (factory) for this function; use this form when registering it in `middleware.json`:

#### Regular middleware

```
module.exports = function() {  
  return function myMiddleware(req, res, next) {  
    // ...  
  }  
}
```

An example a middleware function with four arguments, called only when an error was encountered.

#### Error handler middleware

```
function myErrorHandler(err, req, res, next) {  
  // ...  
}
```

### Packaging a middleware function

To share middleware across multiple projects, create a package that exports a middleware constructor (factory) function that accepts configuration options and returns a middleware handler function; for example, as shown below.

If you have an existing project created via `slc loopback`, to implement a new middleware handler that you can share with other projects, place the file with the middleware constructor in the `server/middleware` directory, for example, `server/middleware/myhandler.js`.

```
module.exports = function(options) {
  return function customHandler(req, res, next) {
    // use options to control handler's behavior
  };
};
```

## Registering middleware in middleware.json

The easiest way to register middleware is in `server/middleware.json`. This file specifies all an application's middleware functions and the phase in which they are called.

When you create an application using the `slc loopback application` generator, it creates a default `middleware.json` file that looks as follows:

```
server/middleware.json
{
  "initial:before": {
    "loopback#favicon": {}
  },
  "initial": {
    "compression": {}
  },
  "session": {
  },
  "auth": {
  },
  "parse": {
  },
  "routes": {
  },
  "files": {
  },
  "final": {
    "loopback#urlNotFound": {}
  },
  "final:after": {
    "errorhandler": {}
  }
}
```

Each top-level key in `middleware.json` defines a middleware phase or sub-phase, for example "initial", "session:before", or "final". Phases run in the order they occur in the file.

Each phase is a JSON object containing a key for each middleware function to be called in that phase. For example, "loopback/server/middleware/favicon" or "compression".

In general, each phase has the following syntax:

```
phase[:sub-phase]: {
  middlewarePath: {
    [ enabled: [true | false] ]
    [ name: nameString ]
    [ params: paramSpec ]
    [ methods: methodSpec ]
    [ paths: routeSpec ]
  }
}
```

Where:

- *phase* is one of the predefined phases listed above (initial, session, auth, and so on) or a custom phase; see [Adding a custom phase](#).
- *sub-phase* (optional) can be *before* or *after*.
- *name*: optional middleware name. See [Middleware configuration properties](#) below.
- *middlewarePath*: path to the middleware function. See [Path to middleware function](#) below.
- *paramSpec*: value of the middleware parameters, typically a JSON object. See [Middleware configuration properties](#) below.
- *methodSpec*: HTTP methods, such as 'GET', 'POST', and 'PUT'. If not present, applies to all methods.
- *routeSpec*: REST endpoint(s) that trigger the middleware.

## Path to middleware function

Specify the path to the middleware function (*middlewarePath*) in the following ways:

- For an external middleware module installed in the project, just use the name of the module; for example `compression`. See [Using other middleware](#).
- For a script in a module installed in the project, use the path to the module; for example `loopback/server/middleware/rest`.
- For a script with a custom middleware function, use the path relative to `middleware.json`, for example `./middleware/custom`.
- Absolute path to the script file (not recommended).

Additionally, you can use the shorthand format `{module}#{fragment}`, where *fragment* is:

- A property exported by *module*, for example `loopback#favicon` is resolved to `require('loopback').favicon`.
- A file in *module's* `server/middleware` directory, for example `require('loopback/server/middleware/favicon')`
- A file in *modules'* `middleware` directory, for example `require('loopback/middleware/favicon')`

## Middleware configuration properties

You can specify the following properties in each middleware section. They are all optional:

Property	Type	Description	Default
name	String	An optional name for the entry. It can be used to identify an entry within the same phase/path for the purpose of merging	N/A
enabled	Boolean	Whether to register or enable the middleware. You can override this property in environment-specific files, for example to disable certain middleware when running in production. For more information, see <a href="#">Environment-specific configuration</a>	true
params	Object or Array	Parameters to pass to the middleware handler (constructor) function. Most middleware constructors take a single "options" object parameter; in that case the <code>params</code> value is that object.  To specify a project-relative path (for example, to a directory containing static assets), start the string with the prefix <code>\$!</code> . Such values are interpreted as paths relative to the file <code>middleware.json</code> .  See examples below.	N/A
methods	String[]	Specifies the HTTP methods, such as 'GET', 'POST', and 'PUT'. If not present, it will apply to all methods.	N/A
paths	String[]	Specifies the REST endpoint(s) that trigger the middleware. In addition to a literal string, route can be a path matching pattern, a regular expression, or an array including all these types. For more information, see the <a href="#">ap.p.use (Express documentation)</a> .	Triggers on all routes

Example of a typical middleware function that takes a single "options" object parameter:

```
"compression": {
  "params": { "threshold": 512 }
}
```

Example of a middleware function that takes more than one parameter, where you use an array of arguments:

```
"morgan": {
  "params": [ "dev", { "buffer": true } ]
}
```

Example of an entry for static middleware to serve content from the `client` directory in the project's root:

```
...
  "files": {
    "loopback#static": {
      "params": "$!../client"
    }
  }
  ...
```

Example of an entry for static middleware to serve content from the `multiple` directories in the project's root:

```
...
  "files": {
    "loopback#static": [{
      "name": "x",
      "paths": ["/x"],
      "params": "$!../client/x"
    },
    {
      "name": "y",
      "paths": ["/y"],
      "params": "$!../client/y"
    }
  ]
  ...
```

### ***Using variables in values***

For any middleware configuration property, you can specify a variable in the value using the following syntax:

```
${var}
```

Where `var` is a property of the `app` object. These properties include:

- [Application-wide properties](#) such as those defined in `config.json`.
- [Express app object properties](#).

For example, the following `middleware.json` configuration will load LoopBack's built-in rest middleware (`loopback.rest`) during the routes phase at the path resolved by `app.get('restApiRoot')`, which defaults to `/api`.

```
{
  "routes": {
    "loopback#rest": {
      "paths": ["${restApiRoot}"]
    }
  }
}
```

The following example loads hypothetical middleware named `environmental` during the routes phase at the return value of `app.get(env)`, typically either `/development` or `/production`.

```
{
  "routes": {
    "environmental": {
      "paths": "${env}"
    }
  }
}
```

### Adding a custom phase

In addition to the predefined phases in `middleware.json`, you can add your own custom phase simply by adding a new top-level key.

For example, below is a `middleware.json` file defining a new phase "log" that comes after "parse" and before "routes":

#### server/middleware.json

```
{
  ...
  "parse": {},
  "log": { ... },
  "routes": {}
  ...
}
```

### Environment-specific configuration

You can further customize configuration through `middleware.local.js`, `middleware.local.json`, and `middleware.env.js` or `middleware.env.json`, where `env` is the value of `NODE_ENV` environment variable (typically `development` or `production`).

See [Environment-specific configuration](#) for more information.

### Registering middleware in JavaScript

You can register middleware in JavaScript code with:

- LoopBack API; you can specify the phase in which you want the middleware to execute.
- Express API; the middleware is executed at the beginning of the `routes` phase.

### Using the LoopBack API

To register middleware with the LoopBack phases API, use the following `app` methods:

- `middleware()`
- `middlewareFromConfig()`
- `defineMiddlewarePhases()`

For example:

#### server/server.js

```
var loopback = require('loopback');
var morgan = require('morgan');
var errorHandler = require('error-handler');

var app = loopback();

app.middleware('routes:before', morgan('dev'));
app.middleware('final', errorHandler());
app.middleware('routes', loopback.rest());
```

## Using the Express API



When you register middleware with the Express API, it is always executed at the beginning of the `routes` phase.

You can define middleware the "regular way" you do with Express in the main application script file, `/server/server.js` by calling `app.use()` to specify middleware for all HTTP requests to the specified route; You can also use `app.get()` to specify middleware for only GET requests, `app.post()` to specify middleware for only POST requests, and so on. For more information, see [app.METHOD](#) in Express documentation.

Here is the general signature for `app.use()`:

```
app.use([route], function([err,] req, res, next) {
  ...
  next();
});
```

As usual, `app` is the LoopBack application object: `app = loopback()`.

The parameters are:

1. `route`, an optional parameter that specifies the URI route or "mount path" to which the middleware is bound. When the application receives an HTTP request at this route, it calls (or *triggers*) the handler function. See [Specifying routes](#).
2. The middleware handler function (or just "middleware function"). See [Defining a new middleware handler function](#).

For example:

#### server/server.js

```
var loopback = require('loopback');
var boot = require('loopback-boot');

var app = module.exports = loopback();

// Bootstrap the application, configure models, datasources and middleware.
// Sub-apps like REST API are mounted via boot scripts.
boot(app, __dirname);
// this middleware is invoked in the "routes" phase
app.use('/status', function(req, res, next) {
  res.json({ running: true });
});
```

## Specifying routes

The `route` parameter is a string that specifies the REST endpoint that will trigger the middleware. If you don't provide the parameter, then the middleware will trigger on all routes. In addition to a literal string, `route` can be a path matching pattern, a regular expression, or an array

including all these types. For more information, see the [Express documentation for app.use\(\)](#).

For example, to register middleware for all endpoints that start with `/greet`:

#### `/server/server.js`

```
app.use('/greet', function(req, res, next) {  
  ...  
})
```



The above middleware is triggered by all routes that begin with `/greet`, so `/greet/you`, `/greet/me/and/you` will all trigger it..

To register middleware for *all* endpoints:

#### `server/server.js` or `server/boot/scripts.js`

```
app.use(function(req, res, next) {  
  ...  
})
```

## Caveats

There are some things to look out for when using middleware, mostly to do with middleware declaration order. Be aware of the order of your middleware registration when using "catch-all" routes. For example:

#### `server/server.js`

```
...  
app.get('/', function(req, res, next) {  
  res.send('hello from `get` route');  
});  
app.use(function(req, res, next) {  
  console.log('hello world from "catch-all" route');  
  next();  
});  
app.post('/', function(req, res, next) {  
  res.send('hello from `post` route')  
});  
...
```

In this case, since the `GET /` middleware ends the response chain, the "catch-all" middleware is never triggered when a get request is made. However, when you make a `POST` request to `/`, the "catch-all" route is triggered because it is declared **before** the post route. Doing a `POST` will show the console message from both the "catch-all" route and the `POST /` route.

## Examples

### Static middleware

Example or an entry for static middleware to serve content from the `client` directory in the project's root:



### server/middleware.json

```
...
  "files": {
    "loopback#static": {
      "params": "$!../client"
    }
  }
}
...
```

## Upgrading applications to use phases

- [Introduction](#)
- [Middleware added after boot](#)
  - [Error handlers](#)
  - [404 handler](#)
- [Static middleware](#)
- [Other post-boot handlers](#)
- [Middleware added before boot](#)
- [Middleware registered from boot scripts](#)
- [Example of migrated files](#)

### Introduction

LoopBack version 2.8 introduced middleware phases. Before that, middleware was registered in `server/server.js`, for example:

```
// Set up the /favicon.ico
app.use(loopback.favicon());

// request pre-processing middleware
app.use(loopback.compress());

// -- Add your pre-processing middleware here --

// boot scripts mount components like REST API
boot(app, __dirname);

// -- Mount static files here--
// All static middleware should be registered at the end, as all requests
// passing the static middleware are hitting the file system
// Example:
var path = require('path');
app.use(loopback.static(path.resolve(__dirname, '../client')));

// Requests that get this far won't be handled
// by any middleware. Convert them into a 404 error
// that will be handled later down the chain.
app.use(loopback.urlNotFound());

// The ultimate error handler.
app.use(loopback.errorHandler());
```

To upgrade your project to use middleware phases, you need to move the middleware configuration from `server/server.js` to `server/middleware.json`.

### Middleware added after boot

## Error handlers

Replace the line `app.use(loopback.errorHandler())` with the following entry in the JSON file:

```
{
  "final:after": {
    "errorhandler": {}
  }
}
```

## 404 handler

Replace the line `app.use(loopback.urlNotFound())` with the following entry in the JSON file:

```
{
  "final": {
    "loopback#urlNotFound": {}
  }
}
```

## Static middleware

Register middleware serving static assets (files) in the `files` phase. Prefix the relative path to assets with `$!` so the path is resolved relative to `middleware.json`.

For example, replace the following line in `server/server.js`:

```
app.use(loopback.static(path.resolve(__dirname, '../client')));
```

with this middleware entry:

```
...
  "files": {
    "loopback#static": {
      "params": "$!../client"
    }
  },
  ...
```

## Other post-boot handlers

If your `server/server.js` file registers any other middleware after calling `boot(app, __dirname)`, you need to move that registration to `server/middleware.json`. Insert a new phase just before `final` and register the middleware there.

## Middleware added before boot

The middleware registered **before** `boot(app, __dirname)` is usually pre-processing the requests.

LoopBack provides multiple phases for such middleware, you need to pick up the right phase for each of them.

- `favicon` should be called as the very first middleware, even before request loggers. Register it in `initial:before` phase.
- `compression` should be called very early in the middleware chain to enable response compression as soon as possible. Register it in `initial` phase.
- `express-session` (a.k.a. `loopback.session()`) should be registered in `session` phase.
- `loopback#token` (a.k.a. `loopback.token()`) belongs to `auth` phase.
- `morgan` (a.k.a. `loopback.logger()`) should usually go to `initial` phase.

- Request body parsers like `bodyParser#json` belong to `parse` phase.

### Middleware registered from boot scripts

Any middleware installed via `app.use(fn)` is added to the `routes` phase. Call `app.middleware(phase, fn)` to add the middleware to a different phase.

Example:

```
module.exports = function(app) {  
  app.middleware('initial', mylogger());  
};
```

### Example of migrated files

After you have applied the steps outlined above to the example `server/server.js` listed at the beginning of this guide, you should end up with the following two files.

The main server script does not register any middleware, but just calls `boot()`:

#### **server/server.js**

```
// boot scripts mount components like REST API  
boot(app, __dirname);
```

All the middleware registration now occurs in `middleware.json`:

### server/middleware.json

```
{
  "initial:before": {
    "loopback#favicon": {}
  },
  "initial": {
    "compression": {}
  },
  "session": {
  },
  "auth": {
  },
  "parse": {
  },
  "routes": {
  },
  "files": {
    "loopback#static": {
      "params": "$!../client"
    }
  },
  "final": {
    "loopback#urlNotFound": {}
  },
  "final:after": {
    "errorhandler": {}
  }
}
```

## Working with LoopBack objects

- [Overview](#)
- [Getting the app object](#)
  - [From a boot script](#)
  - [From middleware](#)
  - [From a custom script](#)
  - [From a model script](#)
- [Working with the app object](#)
- [Working with model objects](#)
  - [Getting references to models](#)
  - [Using model objects](#)
- [Overview](#)
- [Events](#)
- [Working with data source objects](#)
  - [Getting references to data sources](#)
  - [Using data source objects](#)



This is a new article, and is still a work in progress.

### Overview

The primary LoopBack JavaScript objects are:

- [App object](#)
- [Models](#)

- [Data sources](#)

How to get a reference to these objects depends on where the code is (in a boot script, in a model JavaScript file `/common/models/model.js`, and so on) as well as which object you want to reference.

## Getting the app object

Getting a reference to the `app` object is crucial, since from it you can obtain references to other objects such as models and data sources. You'll typically want to get a handle on the `app` object in:

- Model scripts: `/common/models/modelName.js` (where `modelName` is the name of the model).
- Boot scripts in `/server/boot`
- Middleware (the ones you register in boot scripts and the ones in `/server/server.js`)
- Your own custom scripts

The `app` object provides context into various parts of a typical LB app.

### From a boot script

To get a reference to the `app` object in a boot script, pass it as the first parameter in the exported function.

Asynchronous boot script with a callback function:

#### Asynchronous boot script - `/server/boot/your-script.js`

```
module.exports = function(app, cb) { //app is injected by LoopBack
  ...
};
```

Synchronous boot script without a callback function:

#### Synchronous boot script - `/server/boot/your-script.js`

```
module.exports = function(app) { //app is injected by loopback
  ...
};
```

As you can see from both examples, LoopBack provides the `app` object automatically as the first parameter in your boot scripts.

See [Defining boot scripts](#) for more information about boot scripts.

### From middleware

LoopBack sets `app` object automatically in the `request` object in middleware (actually, under the hood, Express does it). You can access in `server/server.js` as follows:

#### Middleware - `/server/server.js`

```
...
app.use(function(req, res, next) {
  var app = req.app;
  ...
});
...
```

See [Defining middleware](#) for more information on middleware.

### From a custom script

If you need a reference to `app` in your own custom scripts, simply require it (as in the models example):

#### A custom script - `/server/your-script.js`

```
var app = require('/server/server');  
...
```

You simply require `/server/server.js` as you would any Node module.

#### From a model script

To get a handle on the `app` object in a model scaffolded by the [Model generator](#), "require" it as you would any Node module:

#### Model - `/common/models/book.js`

```
var app = require('../../server/server'); //require `server.js` as you would normally  
do in any node.js app  
  
module.exports = function(Book) {  
  ...  
};
```

With models, there is a special case. From anywhere except `/common/models/model.js`, you can actually get a reference to `app` through a model using `model.app`. For instance:

```
...  
Book.app  
...
```

However, the one caveat to this is that you cannot reference `model.app` in `/common/model/model.js` because this file does not add the `app` property until bootstrapping has finished. This means you **cannot** do the following in `/common/models/model.js`:

#### CANNOT do this in a model script

```
module.exports = function(Book) {  
  Book.app... //won't work because `.app` has not been added to the Book object yet  
};
```

However, you can get a reference to the `app` INSIDE remote methods, remote hooks, and model hooks because those are trigger after the application finishes loading (that is, after `loopback.boot` runs | after `/server/server.js` calls `boot(..)`). This means you CAN do:

```

module.exports = function(Book) {
  Book.read(cb) {
    var app = Book.app;
    console.log(app.models...)
    cb();
  };
  Book.remoteMethod(
    'read',
    ...
  });
};

```

Of course, you can do the same in remote hooks and remote methods, but be aware of the load timing. Simply put, `model.app` will not be available until the application has completed bootstrapping, that is run `boot()` in `/server/server.js`. The idea here is to define our models *before* they are added to the application. Once the application finishes bootstrapping, you can then access a model's `app` property.

## Working with the app object

The LoopBack app object is defined in the main script as follows:

### **/server/server.js**

```

var loopback = require('loopback');
var app = loopback();

```

The app object extends the [Express app object](#); it inherits all of its properties and methods, as well as all the additional properties and methods of the [LoopBack app object](#).



In some places such as boot scripts, `server` is used as the name of this object instead of `app`.

## Working with model objects

### Getting references to models

Once you get a handle on the `app` object, you can get a handle on to specific models via the `models` property on the `app` object.

### **Boot script - /server/boot/your-script.js**

```

module.exports = function(app) {
  var app = app.models.Book;
  ...
};

```

In your own custom script:

### **A custom script - /server/your-script.js**

```

var app = require('/server/server');

```

## Using model objects

## Basic models

### Overview

By default, the basic LoopBack [Model object](#) has properties and methods "mixed in" from:

- [Inclusion object](#) - Enables you to load relations of several objects and optimize numbers of requests.
- [Validateable object](#) - provides validation methods; see [Validating model data](#).

When you define relations between models, the [RelationMixin object](#) also gets mixed in to the model object.

### Events



The following events are deprecated in favor of [operation hooks](#):

- changed
- deleted
- deletedAll

The following table summarizes the events that LoopBack models can emit.

Event	Emitted when...	Arguments	Argument type	Class methods that emit	Instance methods that emit
'attached'	Model is attached to an app.	Model class	Object	<code>app.model(modelName)</code>	
'dataSourceAttached'	Model is attached to a Data source.	Model class	Object		<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>DataSource.prototype.createModel</code></li><li>• <code>DataSource.prototype.define</code></li></ul>
'set'	Model property is set.	Model instance	Object		<code>Model.prototype.setAttributes()</code>

### Connected models

In addition to the methods of the [Basic model object](#), the following are mixed in when a model is connected to a data source:

- [Relation class](#)
- [PersistedModel class](#)

### Working with data source objects

#### Getting references to data sources

Similar to getting a handle on a model you first get a handle onto the `app` object, then you access the `app.datasources` property:

#### Boot script - `/server/boot/your-script.js`

```
module.exports = function(app) {  
  var dataSource = app.datasources.db; //db can be any registered datasource in  
  `server/datasources.json`  
  ...  
};
```

And in your own script:



### A custom script - /server/your-script.js

```
var app = require('./server/server');
...
var datasource = app.datasources.db;
...
```

In middleware:

### Middleware - /server/server.js

```
...
app.use(function(req, res, next) {
  var dataSource = app.datasources.db;
  ...
});
...
```

In models:

### Model - /common/models/model.js

```
module.exports = function(Book) {
  Book.read = function() {
    var dataSource = Book.app.datasources.db;
  };
  Book.remoteMethod(
    'read',
    ...
  );
};
```

Be careful in models, because the following *will not work*:

### Model - /common/models/model.js

```
module.exports = function(Book) {
  Book.app... //`Book` is not registered yet! This WON'T WORK.
};
```

## Using data source objects



This section is still in progress. Thanks for your patience.

## Prototype versus instance methods

### Question

When I use the swagger spec to generate a javascript client I end up with something like the attached UsedModel client file. From a Node.js best practices perspective, I want to find out: what's the point of dividing methods between prototype and object in a client?

Why have:

```
this.login = function(parameters) {...};
UserModel.prototype.updateAttributes = function(parameters) {...};
```

When both can be:

```
this.login = function(parameters) {...};
this.updateAttributes = function(parameters) {...};
```

## Answer

One visible difference is in the URLs. Static methods have URL `/api/modelName/methodName`, while prototype methods have URL `/api/modelName/id/methodName`.

The second difference is in the way how to use the method on the server. Static methods always have to fetch the model instance from the database, which is inefficient when a single HTTP request involves several calls. On the other hand, prototype methods operate on the same instance.

Example (using sync code to keep it simple):

```
/** static-only methods */
OrderItem.addCount(id, count); // database calls - read, write
OrderItem.updatePrice(id); // 2 database calls - read, write

/* prototype methods */
var order = OrderItem.findById(123); // database call - read
order.addCount(1);
order.updatePrice();
order.save(); // database call - write
```

When it comes to client SDKs, the situation is little bit more complex. The isomorphic client can share the implementation of `addCount` and `updatePrice` with the server, thus the code above would involve two REST requests only - `GET /api/OrderItems/123` and `PUT /api/OrderItems/123`.

Other clients (iOS, Android, Angular, swagger-generated js client) are not able to use that. However, it is always possible to wrap the code in a new shared method and call this new method from the client, e.g. `POST /api/OrderItems/123/add/1` or `POST /api/OrderItems/add { id: 123, amount: 1 }`.

As a rule of thumb, you should use static methods for actions that are not necessarily bound to a model instance known by a client (e.g. `User.login`, `PersistedModel.create`, `PersistedModel.find`). Use prototype (instance) methods for actions that operate on a single given model instance (`PersistedModel.prototype.updateAttributes`, `OrderItem.prototype.updatePrice()`).

Looking at the problem from the client side, the benefit of saving DB calls is not applicable. It all boils down to what kind of API do you prefer. Since all prototype methods require model id, you can convert prototype methods to static methods with an extra argument - this is exactly what we do in Angular SDK.

```
// server
var pm = new PersistedModel({ id: modelId });
pm.updateAttributes(data, cb)

// Angular client
PersistedModel.prototype$updateAttributes({ id: modelId }, data);
If your client is smart enough to map model properties to request parameters (e.g.
path params), then a prototype method may keep the code more concise.

OrderItem.find({ where: { productName: 'pen' } }, function(err, list) {
  async.each(list, function(it, next) {
    // 1. prototype method
    it.updateAttributes({ count: 2 }, next); // automagically build URL using `it.id`

    // 2. static method
    OrderItem.updateAttributes(it.id, { count: 2 }, next);

  }, cb);
});
```

To make it short, there is no hard rule for the client SDK (API) prescribing how to map static and prototype methods. Use whatever works best for you.

## Using current context

LoopBack applications sometimes need to access context information to implement the business logic, for example to:

- Access the currently logged-in user.
- Access the HTTP request (such as URL and headers).

See also: [Example in LoopBack repository](#).

A typical request to invoke a LoopBack model method travels through multiple layers with chains of asynchronous callbacks. It's not always possible to pass all the information through method parameters.

## Configure context propagation

LoopBack context is now enabled by default for REST APIs via `loopback.rest()` middleware. Configure it in `server/config.json` as follows:

```
"remoting": {
  "context": {
    "enableHttpContext": false
  },
  ...
}
```



By default, the HTTP req/res objects are not set onto the current context. You need to set `enableHttpContext` to `true` to enable automatic population of req/res objects.

## Use the current context

Once you've enabled context propagation, you can access the current context object using `loopback.getCurrentContext()`. The context should be available in middleware (those come after the context middleware), remoting hooks, model hooks, and custom methods.

```

MyModel.myMethod = function(cb) {
  var ctx = loopback.getCurrentContext();
  // Get the current access token
  var accessToken = ctx.get('accessToken');
  ...
  // Set more information on current context
  ctx.set('foo', { bar: 'val' } );

  ...
}

```

## Use current authenticated user in remote methods

The `loopback.context()` has been added to `loopback.rest()` to ensure that all REST applications have the context available, even if they don't add the middleware explicitly. In advanced use cases, for example when you want to add custom middleware, you have to add the context middleware at the right position in the middleware chain (before the middleware that depends on `loopback.getCurrentContext()`).



`loopback.context()` detects the situation when it is invoked multiple times on the same request and returns immediately in subsequent runs.

Here's sample code which uses a middleware function to place the currently authenticated user into the context so that remote methods may use it:

**/server/server.js**

[Expand](#)

[source](#)

```

...
// -- Add your pre-processing middleware here --
app.use(loopback.context());
app.use(loopback.token());
app.use(function setCurrentUser(req, res, next) {
  if (!req.accessToken) {
    return next();
  }
  app.models.UserModel.findById(req.accessToken.userId, function(err, user) {
    if (err) {
      return next(err);
    }
    if (!user) {
      return next(new Error('No user with this access token was found.'));
    }
    var loopbackContext = loopback.getCurrentContext();
    if (loopbackContext) {
      loopbackContext.set('currentUser', user);
    }
    next();
  });
});

// boot scripts mount components like REST API
...

```

### /common/models/YourModel.js

› Expand

```
var loopback = require('loopback');
module.exports = function(YourModel) {
  ...
  //remote method
  YourModel.someRemoteMethod = function(arg1, arg2, cb) {
    var ctx = loopback.getCurrentContext();
    var currentUser = ctx && ctx.get('currentUser');
    console.log('currentUser.username: ', currentUser.username); // voila!
    ...
    cb(null);
  };
  ...
};
```

source

## Events

In addition to the [standard Node events](#), LoopBack applications and models emit other events.

### Application events

By default, the scaffolded application emits a 'started' event when it starts up, after running [boot scripts](#).

### Model events

By default, the basic LoopBack [Model object](#) has properties and methods "mixed in" from:

- [Inclusion object](#) - Enables you to load relations of several objects and optimize numbers of requests.
- [Validateable object](#) - provides validation methods; see [Validating model data](#).

When you define relations between models, the [RelationMixin object](#) object also gets mixed in to the model object.

Other events:

- `User.resetPassword()` emits the 'resetPasswordRequest' event.

## Running and debugging apps

In general, when you are developing an application, use the `node` command to run it. This enables you to see stack traces and console output immediately. For example:

```
$ cd myapp
$ node .
```

When you're ready to start tuning your app, use `slc start` to run it locally under the control of StrongLoop Process Manager; this enables you to profile it and monitor app metrics to help find memory leaks and optimize performance. See [Profiling](#) and [Monitoring app metrics](#) for more information.



When running an application, you can specify debug strings that the application will display to the console (or save to a file), and you can also use [Node Inspector](#) to debug the running app. For more information, see [Setting debug strings](#).

## Running local apps with slc

Run a Node application (including a LoopBack application) under control of StrongLoop PM to:

- [View CPU profiles and heap snapshots](#) to optimize performance and diagnose memory leaks.
- Keep processes and clusters alive forever.

- [View performance metrics.](#)
- [Run the app as a cluster](#) of Node processes.

For more information, see [Using Process Manager](#).



The `slc start` command does not run on Windows systems. However, you can run StrongLoop PM on a Windows system and deploy to it. See [Building and deploying](#) for more information.

To run an app locally under control of StrongLoop Process Manager:

```
$ cd <app-root-dir>
$ slc start
```

Where `<app-root-dir>` is the application's root directory.

This starts a local instance of StrongLoop Process Manager (StrongLoop PM) and runs the specified application under its control. If PM is unable to start the application, it will periodically try to start the app until the PM is shut down.

StrongLoop PM will display some suggested commands, followed by information from the log file, for example:

```
...
--- tail of /Users/rand/.strong-pm/start.log ---
slc start(32276): StrongLoop PM v5.0.49 (API v6.1.0) on port `8701`
slc start(32276): Base folder `/Users/rand/.strong-pm`
slc start(32276): Applications on port `3000 + service ID`
Run request for commit "default-app/local-directory" on current (none)
Start Runner: commit default-app/local-directory
2015-08-14T17:07:23.361Z pid:32289 worker:0 INFO strong-agent v1.6.54 profiling app
'default-app' pid '32289'
2015-08-14T17:07:23.368Z pid:32289 worker:0 INFO strong-agent[32289] started profiling
agent
2015-08-14T17:07:23.369Z pid:32289 worker:0 INFO supervisor starting (pid 32289)
2015-08-14T17:07:23.374Z pid:32289 worker:0 INFO strong-agent strong-agent using
strong-cluster-control v2.1.2
2015-08-14T17:07:23.377Z pid:32289 worker:0 INFO supervisor reporting metrics to
`internal:`
2015-08-14T17:07:23.388Z pid:32289 worker:0 INFO supervisor size set to 1
2015-08-14T17:07:23.500Z pid:32289 worker:0 INFO supervisor started worker 1 (pid
32290)
2015-08-14T17:07:23.501Z pid:32289 worker:0 INFO supervisor resized to 1
2015-08-14T17:07:23.828Z pid:32290 worker:1 INFO strong-agent v1.6.54 profiling app
'default-app' pid '32290'
2015-08-14T17:07:23.832Z pid:32290 worker:1 INFO strong-agent[32290] started profiling
agent
```

You can also run an application from another directory. For example, if your application is in the `myApp` directory under the current working directory:

```
$ slc start myapp
```

To run an application remotely, use Process Manager; see [Operating Node applications](#) for more information.

To view the status of the application, use the `slc ctl` command, which by default displays the status of the locally-running StrongLoop PM:

```
$ slc ctl
Service ID: 1
Service Name: myapp
Environment variables:
  No environment variables defined
Instances:
  Version  Agent version  Cluster size
    4.1.1      1.5.1           4
Processes:
  ID          PID    WID  Listening Ports  Tracking objects?  CPU profiling?
  1.1.48554   48554   0    0.0.0.0:3001    0.0.0.0:3001      0.0.0.0:3001
  1.1.48557   48557   1    0.0.0.0:3001    0.0.0.0:3001      0.0.0.0:3001
  1.1.48563   48563   2    0.0.0.0:3001    0.0.0.0:3001      0.0.0.0:3001
  1.1.48565   48565   3    0.0.0.0:3001    0.0.0.0:3001      0.0.0.0:3001
  1.1.48566   48566   4    0.0.0.0:3001    0.0.0.0:3001      0.0.0.0:3001
```

Where `myapp` is your application's service name (by default, the `name` property in `package.json`).

To see log output (including error messages and a stack trace), use this command:

```
$ slc ctl log-dump myapp
```



If PM cannot successfully run the application, you can make changes to the application code, and PM will automatically try to run it: you don't have to use `slc start` again.

Stop the application with:

```
$ slc ctl stop myapp
```

## Setting debug strings

- [Using debug strings](#)
- [Debug string format](#)
- [Debug strings reference](#)

You can specify debug strings when you run an application, as explained below, to display specific log output to the console. You can also redirect the output to a file, if desired. These techniques are often helpful in debugging applications.

The `slc` command-line tool includes a debugger, Node Inspector, that you can use to debug a running application; see [Debugging applications](#) for more information.

### Using debug strings

The LoopBack framework has a number of built-in debug strings to help with debugging. Specify a string on the command-line via an environment variable as follows:

```
$ DEBUG=<pattern>[,<pattern>...] node .
```

where `<pattern>` is a string-matching pattern specifying debug strings to match. You can specify as many matching patterns as you wish.

For example:

```
$ DEBUG=loopback:datasource node .
```

You'll see output such as (truncated for brevity):

```
loopback:datasource Settings: { "name":"db", "debug":true} +0ms
loopback:datasource Settings: { "name":"geo", "connector":"rest", ...
```

You can use an asterisk (\*) in the pattern to match any string. For example the following would match any debug string containing "oracle":

```
$ DEBUG=*oracle node .
```

You can also exclude specific debuggers by prefixing them with a "-" character. For example, `DEBUG=*,-strong-remoting:*` would include all debuggers except those starting with "strong-remoting:".

## Debug string format

These strings have the format

```
module[:area]:fileName
```

Where

- *module* is the name of the module, for example `loopback` or `loopback-connector-rest`.
- *area* is an optional identifier such as `security` or `connector` to identify the purpose of the module
- *fileName* is the name of the JavaScript source file, such as `oracle.js`.

For example

```
loopback:security:access-context
```

identifies the source file `access-context.js` in the `loopback` module (used for security features).

## Debug strings reference

Module / Source file	String
<b>loopback</b>	
loopback/lib/connectors/base-connector.js	connector
loopback/lib/connectors/mail.js	loopback:connector:mail
loopback/lib/connectors/memory.js	memory
loopback/lib/models/access-context.js	loopback:security:access-context
loopback/lib/models/acl.js	loopback:security:acl
loopback/lib/models/change.js	loopback:change
loopback/lib/models/role.js	loopback:security:role
loopback/lib/models/user.js	loopback:user
<b>loopback-datasource-juggler</b>	
loopback-datasource-juggler/lib/datasource.js	loopback:datasource
<b>loopback-boot</b>	
loopback-boot/lib/compiler.js	loopback:boot:compiler
loopback-boot/lib/executor.js	loopback:boot:executor
<b>Components</b>	
loopback-component-push/lib/providers/apns.js	loopback:component:push:provider:apns
loopback-component-push/lib/providers/gcm.js	loopback:component:push:provider:gcm



loopback-component-push/lib/push-manager.js	loopback:component:push:push-manager
<b>Connectors</b>	
loopback-connector-mongodb/lib/mongodb.js	loopback:connector:mongodb
loopback-connector-mssql/lib/mssql.js	loopback:connector:mssql
loopback-connector-mysql/lib/mysql.js	loopback:connector:mysql
loopback-connector-oracle/lib/oracle.js	loopback:connector:oracle
loopback-connector-postgresql/lib/postgresql.js	loopback:connector:postgresql
loopback-connector-rest/lib/rest-builder.js	loopback:connector:rest
loopback-connector-rest/lib/rest-connector.js	loopback:connector:rest
loopback-connector-rest/lib/rest-model.js	loopback:connector:rest
loopback-connector-rest/lib/swagger-client.js	loopback:connector:rest:swagger
loopback-connector-soap/lib/soap-connector.js	loopback:connector:soap
<b>strong-remoting</b>	
strong-remoting/lib/dynamic.js	strong-remoting:dynamic
strong-remoting/lib/exports-helper.js	strong-remoting:exports-helper
strong-remoting/lib/http-context.js	strong-remoting:http-context
strong-remoting/lib/http-invocation.js	strong-remoting:http-invocation
strong-remoting/lib/jsonrpc-adapter.js	strong-remoting:jsonrpc-adapter
strong-remoting/lib/remote-objects.js	strong-remoting:remotes
strong-remoting/lib/rest-adapter.js	strong-remoting:rest-adapter
strong-remoting/lib/shared-class.js	strong-remoting:shared-class
strong-remoting/lib/shared-method.js	strong-remoting:shared-method
strong-remoting/lib/socket-io-adapter.js	strong-remoting:socket-io-adapter
strong-remoting/lib/socket-io-context.js	strong-remoting:socket-io-context
<b>loopback-explorer</b>	
loopback-explorer/lib/route-helper.js	loopback:explorer:routeHelpers
<b>loopback-workspace</b>	
loopback-workspace/connector.js	workspace:connector
loopback-workspace/connector.js	workspace:connector:save-sync
loopback-workspace/models/config-file.js	workspace:config-file
loopback-workspace/models/definition.js	workspace:definition
loopback-workspace/models/facet.js	workspace:facet
loopback-workspace/models/facet.js:	var workspace:facet:load: + facetName
loopback-workspace/models/facet.js:	var workspace:facet:save: + facetName
loopback-workspace/models/workspace.js	workspace

## Preparing for deployment

- [Configuration for deployment](#)

- [Disabling API Explorer](#)
- [Other changes](#)
- [Using SSL](#)
  - [Generate your own SSL certificate](#)
  - [Load the SSL certificate](#)
  - [Create the HTTPS server](#)
- [Using StrongLoop Process Manager](#)

## Configuration for deployment

When you move from deployment to production or staging, you typically want to change your datasource from your internal testing database (or even the in-memory data store) to a production database where your live application data will reside. Additionally, you may want to change application properties such as host name and port number.

By default, a LoopBack application created with the [application generator](#) has two kinds of configuration files in the server directory that you use to configure production settings:

- `config.json` containing general application configuration. You can override the settings in this file with `config.env.json`, where `env` is the value of `NODE_ENV` environment variable.
- `datasources.json` containing data source configuration. You can override the settings in this file with `datasources.env.json`, where `env` is the value of `NODE_ENV` environment variable.

Set `NODE_ENV` to a string reflecting the host environment, for example "development" or "production".

To get ready for production, create at least two copies of these files: `config.production.json` and `config.development.json`; and `datasources.production.json` and `datasources.development.json`. You can create additional files (for example, `config.staging.json`) if desired. Then, make sure on your development system you set the `NODE_ENV` to "development" and on your production system you set `NODE_ENV` to "production".



Setting `NODE_ENV` to "production" will automatically turn off stack traces in JSON responses.

For more information, see [Environment-specific configuration](#).

## Disabling API Explorer

LoopBack [API Explorer](#) is great when you're developing your application, but for security reasons you may not want to expose it in production. To disable API Explorer entirely, if you created your application with the [Application generator](#), simply delete or rename `server/boot/explorer.js`.

## Other changes

When you move your app from development to staging, you may want to make additional changes; for example, you might want to customize REST error responses. See [Customizing REST error handling](#) for more information.

## Using SSL

For a working example app demonstrating how to use SSL with LoopBack, see [loopback-example-ssl](#). The example code below is drawn from that repository.

### Generate your own SSL certificate

Here's an example of generating an SSL certificate:

```
$ openssl genrsa -out privatekey.pem 1024
$ openssl req -new -key privatekey.pem -out certrequest.csr
$ openssl x509 -req -in certrequest.csr -signkey privatekey.pem -out certificate.pem
```

### Load the SSL certificate

Once you've generated a certificate, load it in your app, for example:

### ssl-config.js

```
var path = require('path'),
    fs = require("fs");
exports.privateKey = fs.readFileSync(path.join(__dirname,
    './private/privatekey.pem')).toString();
exports.certificate = fs.readFileSync(path.join(__dirname,
    './private/certificate.pem')).toString();
```

## Create the HTTPS server

### server/server.js

```
var https = require('https');
var sslConfig = require('./ssl-config');
...
var options = {
    key: sslConfig.privateKey,
    cert: sslConfig.certificate
};
...

server.listen(app.get('port'), function() {
    var baseUrl = (httpOnly? 'http://' : 'https://') + app.get('host') + ':' +
    app.get('port');
    app.emit('started', baseUrl);
    console.log('LoopBack server listening @ %s%s', baseUrl, '/');
});
return server;
```

## Using StrongLoop Process Manager

Until now, you've run your application using the `node` command. This is fine for development, since it enables you to see stack traces directly in your console window, and to easily stop and restart your app when you need to. Once you're ready to move to production, however, you should start running your application with StrongLoop Process Manager (StrongLoop PM) because it enables you to:

- [View CPU profiles and heap memory snapshots](#), to help you optimize performance and resource consumption. Often, you'll want to profile your application before you deploy to production, and then periodically thereafter as needed.
- [Set up your build and deployment process](#) so you can easily modify your app as needed. StrongLoop PM enables you to do this with zero downtime.
- Automatically restart the application if it crashes, providing high availability and high reliability.
- [Cluster your app](#) to use multiple CPU cores. This enables rapid vertical scalability to meet growing traffic.
- [Scale horizontally](#) using StrongLoop PM's built-in NGINX integration when your app outgrows a single host.
- [Monitor application metrics](#) such as event loop times, CPU and memory consumption to ensure that app performance is acceptable.

There are two ways to use StrongLoop PM:

- [Run your app locally](#) under management of PM with `slc start`. This is a quick way to start using StrongLoop PM, and is typical when you're preparing for deployment.
- When you're ready to go to production, [set up a production host](#) with StrongLoop PM then [build and deploy](#) your app to PM using `slc` or StrongLoop Arc.

## Tutorials and examples

- [Overview](#)
- [Tutorials](#)
- [Topic-specific examples](#)

- [Community examples](#)
- [Deprecated examples](#)

## Overview

This README provides a complete reference for all LoopBack example apps and tutorials. You can complete each [tutorial](#) in the listed order.

Refer to the remaining [topic-specific examples](#) as needed in any order.

## Tutorials

In general, these tutorials are intended to be followed in order.

*You only have to complete **ONE** tutorial number 3 before moving onto tutorial number 4*

Order	Name	Description
1	<a href="#">loopback-getting-started</a>	The basics of LoopBack. Follow along in <a href="#">Getting started with LoopBack</a> to build the example.
2	<a href="#">loopback-getting-started-intermediate</a>	Full-stack example that builds on <a href="#">loopback-getting-started</a> to demonstrate intermediate level features of LoopBack. Follow instructions in <a href="#">Getting started part II</a> to build the example.
3	<a href="#">loopback-example-mongodb</a>	LoopBack with MongoDB.
3	<a href="#">loopback-example-mssql</a>	LoopBack with Microsoft SQL Server.
3	<a href="#">loopback-example-mysql</a>	LoopBack with MySQL.
3	<a href="#">loopback-example-oracle</a>	LoopBack with Oracle.
3	<a href="#">loopback-example-postgresql</a>	LoopBack with PostgreSQL.
4	<a href="#">loopback-example-relations</a>	Model relations and filtering via REST
5	<a href="#">loopback-example-app-logic</a>	How to add your own logic to a LoopBack app
6	<a href="#">loopback-example-access-control</a>	Controlling access to your API endpoints

## Topic-specific examples

You can follow these examples in any order since they are self-contained and specific to a particular topic.

Name	Description
<a href="#">loopback-android-getting-started</a>	How to use the LoopBack Android SDK
<a href="#">loopback-component-push</a>	LoopBack 2.x examples are in the <code>example/serve-2.0</code> directory.
<a href="#">loopback-component-storage</a>	LoopBack 2.0 examples are in the <code>example-2.0</code> directory.
<a href="#">loopback-example-APIClientApp</a>	iOS client example
<a href="#">loopback-example-angular</a>	A simple "to do" list using AngularJS on the client and LoopBack on the server.
<a href="#">loopback-example-app</a>	A full-stack LoopBack application (iCars).
<a href="#">loopback-example-isomorphic</a>	Using the LoopBack API on both client and server.
<a href="#">loopback-example-mixins</a>	Loading mixins from directories and modules and performing different actions like observing changes and adding model attributes.
<a href="#">loopback-example-pubsub</a>	Example using strong-pubsub
<a href="#">loopback-example-offline-sync</a>	Offline sync with Loopback

<a href="#">loopback-example-passport</a>	PassportJS with Loopback
<a href="#">loopback-example-recipes</a>	Sample recipes demonstrating LoopBack use patterns. <b>NOTE:</b> Work-in-progress
<a href="#">loopback-example-remote</a>	How to use the LoopBack remote connector. <b>NOTE:</b> Work-in-progress
<a href="#">loopback-example-ssl</a>	SSL with LoopBack
<a href="#">loopback-example-xamarin</a>	Using Xamarin SDK
<a href="#">angular-live-set-example</a>	Example of realtime LoopBack/AngularJS app using HTML5 server-sent events.
<a href="#">loopback-example-embedded-relations</a>	Using embedded model relations.
<a href="#">loopback-example-file-storage</a>	Storing and retrieving files using loopback-component-storage.
<a href="#">loopback-faq-email</a>	Sending email from a LoopBack app.
<a href="#">loopback-faq-middleware</a>	Using middleware.
<a href="#">loopback-faq-operation-hooks</a>	Using operation hooks.
<a href="#">loopback-faq-rest-connector</a>	Basic use of loopback-connector-rest.
<a href="#">loopback-faq-user-management</a>	How to register, log in / log out, and verify users; how to reset a user's password.
<a href="#">strong-gateway-demo</a>	OAuth2 with StrongLoop API Gateway

## Additional documentation tutorials

- [Push notifications](#)

## Community examples

These are examples contributed by the LoopBack community. Let us know if you have an example to contribute and we'll send you some swag in return for your efforts!

- [loopback-angular-admin](#)
- [loopback-examples-ios](#)
- [loopback-example-user-organization](#)

## Deprecated examples

- [loopback-example-database](#) was replaced with 5 separate repos:
  - [loopback-example-mongodb](#)
  - [loopback-example-mssql](#)
  - [loopback-example-mysql](#)
  - [loopback-example-postgresql](#)
  - [loopback-example-oracle](#)

However, per <https://github.com/strongloop-internal/scrum-loopback/issues/468>, we are going to merge these back into [loopback-example-database](#) to make them easier to maintain.

## LoopBack example app

This section will get you up and running with LoopBack and the LoopBack example app in just a few minutes.

**NOTE: This app has not been fully migrated to LoopBack 2.0**

### Prerequisites

You must have already installed [Node.js](#).

Install StrongLoop:

```
$ npm install -g strongloop
```

If you run into any issues, see [Installing StrongLoop](#) for more information.

## i-Car Rentals Corp

i-Car is an (imaginary) car rental dealer with locations in major cities around the world. They need to replace their existing desktop reservation system with a new mobile app.

This application was created using LoopBack tools.  
See [Building from scratch](#) below for more details.

### Run the application

Start the application back-end by running the following command:

```
$ node .
```

Now open your browser and point it to  
<http://127.0.0.1:3000> to access the application UI.

### End user experience

The app enables customers to find the closest available cars using the i-Car app on a smartphone. The app shows a map of nearby rental locations and lists available cars in the area shown on the map. In addition, the customer can filter the list of cars by make, model, class, year and color. The customer can then select the desired car and reserve it via the app. If not logged in the app prompts the customer to login or register. The app indicates if the desired car is available and if so, confirms the reservation.

### Features

- Authenticates and verifies customers' identities.
- Securely exposes inventory data to mobile applications.
- Allow customers to find cars available **within a specific area**.
- Allow customers to reserve cars for rental.

### REST APIs

- `/cars` exposes a queryable (filter, sort) collection of available cars over HTTP / JSON
- `/cars/nearby?&lat=...&long=...` or `?zip=...` returns a filtered set of available cars nearby the requesting user
- `/cars/nearby?id=24&zip=94555` returns nearby cars of id 24.
- `/cars/:id` returns a specific car from the inventory, with specific pricing and images
- `/users/login` allows a customer to login
- `/users/logout` allows a customer to logout

### Configuring the data source

By default, the sample application uses the memory connector and listens on the port 3000 on all network interfaces.

You can configure other data sources by adding a new key to `DATASTORES` object in `rest/datasources.local.js`:

The sample can be configured using the following environment variables:

- `DB`: The db type, use `memory`, `mongodb` or `oracle`
- `IP`: The http server listener ip address or hostname, default to `0.0.0.0` (any address)
- `PORT`: The http server listener port number, default to `3000`

For example,

- To run the application at port 3001 with MongoDB:

```
$ DB=mongodb PORT=3001 node .
```

- To run the application at port 3002 with Oracle:

```
$ DB=oracle PORT=3002 node .
```

## Schema and specifications

### Customer Database

The app will get all customer information from the Salesforce API.

### Inventory Database

All car inventory is already available in an **existing** Oracle X3-8 Exadata database.

The Inventory DB schema looks like this:

#### ***Customers***

- id string
- name string
- username string
- email string
- password string
- realm string
- emailverified boolean
- verificationtoken string
- credentials string[]
- challenges string[]
- status string
- created date
- lastupdated date

#### ***Reservations***

- id string
- product\_id string
- location\_id string
- customer\_id string
- qty number
- status string
- reserve\_date date
- pickup\_date date
- return\_date date

#### ***Inventory\_Levels***

- id string
- product\_id string
- location\_id string
- available number
- total number

#### ***Car***

- id string
- vin string
- year number
- make string
- model string
- image string
- carClass string
- color string

#### ***Location***

- id string
- street string
- city string
- zipcode string
- name string
- geo GeoPoint

### ***Inventory\_View***

**View** to return qty of available products for the given city.

- product (product name)
- location (location name)
- available (qty available)

### **Geo Lookup**

Google's location API is used to return the users city from a given zip or lat/long.

### **Project files**

The project is composed from multiple components.

- `models/` contains definition of models and implementation of custom model methods.
- `rest/` contains the REST API server, it exposes the shared models via REST API.
- `website/` contains a simple single-page-application that is served when users open the project in the browser.
- `server/` is the main HTTP server that brings together all other components.
- `sample-data/` contains a set of sample models that are used to initialize the database with some data.
- `test/` provides few basic unit-tests to verify that the server provides the expected API.

Refer to

[Creating an application](#)

for more information.

### **Building from scratch**

You can create most of the sample application using LoopBack's Yeoman generators.

See the `slc loopback` [command-line reference](#) for more information.

Install StrongLoop with `npm install -g strongloop` to install the LoopBack generators.

Once you have the generators installed, run the following command to recreate the sample app from scratch:

```
$ slc loopback:example example-app -l
```

This will call other generators like `slc loopback` and `slc loopback:model` to scaffold the application. You can learn more about these generators in the [slc command-line reference](#).

When run with the `-l` option, the example generator prints a detailed list of steps that are executed to walk you through the scaffolding process. You can re-run the steps manually yourself to get a better understanding of how the loopback generators work.

This is how the output looks like:



```

Create initial project scaffolding
$ slc loopback:app loopback-example
[?] Enter a directory name where to create the project: .
[?] What's the name of your application? loopback-example

I'm all done. Just run npm install to install the required dependencies.

Add datasource geo
$ slc loopback:datasource geo
[?] Select the connector for geo: rest
Set datasource options: operations
Add model Car
$ slc loopback:model Car
[?] Select the data-source to attach Car to: db
[?] Expose Car via the REST API?
[?] Property name:
$ slc loopback:property
[?] Select the model: Car
[?] Enter the property name: id
[?] Property type: string
[?] Required? false
Set property options: id
(more properties follow in the output)
Add relation Car hasMany Reservation
Set model options: mysql mongodb oracle
Add model Customer
(and so on)

```

The first step is to prepare the project infrastructure by running `slc loopback:app`, which is an alias for `slc loopback`.

Then there is a `geo` datasource added by running `slc loopback:datasource geo`. When prompted for the connector to use, the `rest` is selected. After the datasource was created, the REST operations are added to the generated file `datasources.json` manually.

The next step is to create all application models. The generator `slc loopback:model` is called to define a new model, `slc loopback:property` to add a property definition to the new model. Some property options like `"id": true` are not supported by the generator, they are added manually.

Also model relations and per-datasource model configurations are not supported by the generator yet, as can be seen from these two lines:

```
Add relation Car hasMany Reservation
Set model options: mysql mongodb oracle
```

Open the file `models/car.json` too see what has been added by the generator.

When all models are defined, the example generator performs steps that you would do manually when working on a new application: add more dependencies to `package.json`, extend the models with custom behaviour, implement unit-tests, etc.

## Next steps

If you haven't gone through [Getting started with LoopBack](#), that's a good place to start.

To gain a deeper understanding of LoopBack and how it works, read [Defining models](#) and [Connecting models to data sources](#).

## LoopBack example app extra material

### Overview

LoopBack example app is a mobile app for i-Cars, an (imaginary) car rental dealer with outlets in major cities around the world.

The application enables customers to find the closest available cars using the i-Car app on a smartphone. The app shows a map of nearby rental locations and lists available cars in the area shown on the map. In addition, the customer can filter the list of cars by make, model, class, year and color. The customer can then select the desired car and reserve it via the app. If not logged in the app prompts the customer to login or register. The app indicates if the desired car is available and if so, confirms the reservation.

Note that the example app is the backend functionality only; that is, the app has a REST API, but no client app or UI to consume the interface.

### Prerequisites



You must first install StrongLoop software as described in [Getting started with LoopBack](#).

If you don't have a C compiler installed, you will see error messages when you create or run the example application. You'll still be able to run it, but you won't be able to connect to Oracle or view certain strong agent metrics. See [Installing compiler tools](#) for more information.

### Creating the example app

You can create the LoopBack example app:

- By cloning it from GitHub:

```
$ git clone https://github.com/strongloop/loopback-example-app.git
$ cd loopback-example-app
$ npm install
```

- By using `slc loopback:example`, as described below. This is the [Example generator](#) that uses [Yeoman](#) under the hood.

### Creating the example app using slc

Follow these steps:

1. Create the example app with this command:

```
$ slc loopback:example
```

You'll be prompted for the name of the directory in which to create the application. The default is the current directory.

```
[?] Enter a directory name where to create the project: (.) my-lb-example
```

For example, suppose you create the app in `my-lb-example`.

2. Run the example application by entering these commands:

```
$ cd my-lb-example
$ node .
```

3. To view the application in a browser, load <http://localhost:3000>. The homepage (illustrated below) lists sample requests you can make against the LoopBack REST API. Click the GET buttons to see the JSON data returned. You can also see the API explorer at <http://localhost:3000/explorer>.
- 

## Connecting to other data sources

By default, the LoopBack example app connects to the in-memory data source. To connect to other data sources, use the following command to run the application:

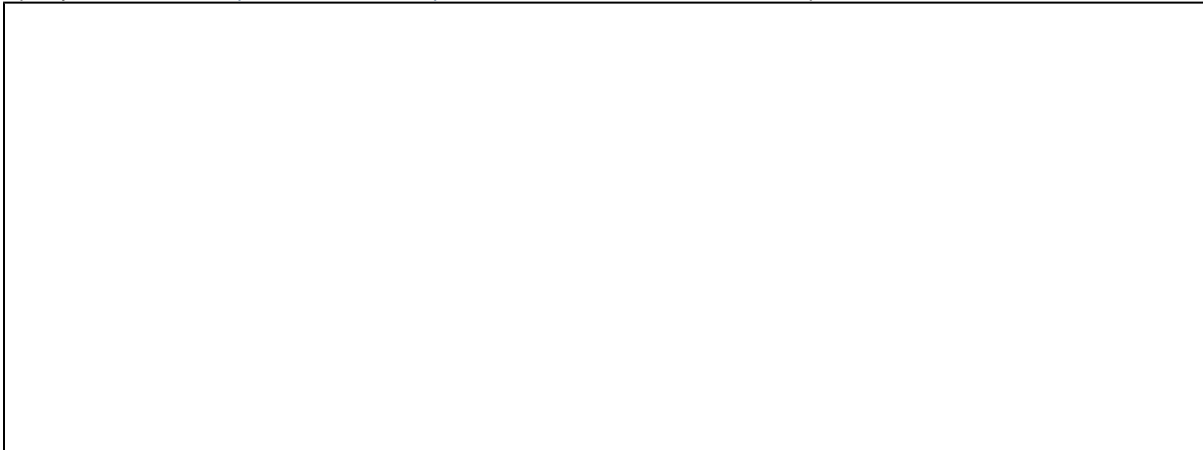
```
$ DB=<datasource> slc run
```

where `<datasource>` is either "mongodb", "mysql", or "oracle". The example app will connect to the specified database running on [demo.strongloop.com](http://demo.strongloop.com).

## Using the API Explorer

Follow these steps to explore the example app's REST API:

1. Open your browser to <http://localhost:3000/explorer>. You'll see a list of REST API endpoints as illustrated below.



The endpoints are grouped by the model names. Each endpoint consists of a list of operations for the model.

2. Click on one of the endpoint paths (such as `/locations`) to see available operations for a given model. You'll see the CRUD operations mapped to HTTP verbs and paths.

3. Click on a given operation to see the signature; for example, as shown below for `GET /locations/{id}`. Notice that each operation has the HTTP verb, path, description, response model, and a list of request parameters.
4. Now, invoke the GET locations operation: click the **Try it out!** button. Just leave the filter field blank, to get all the locations. You'll see something like this:

You can see the request URL, the JSON in the response body, and the HTTP response code and headers.

## Blog posts

The [StrongLoop blog](#) contains lots of helpful posts relevant to LoopBack. Much of the information gets incorporated into the documentation, but you can still find lots of helpful tidbits in the blog!

### LoopBack

Error rendering macro 'rss' : javax.net.ssl.SSLHandshakeException:  
Received fatal alert: handshake\_failure

### Latest blog posts (any topic)

Error rendering macro 'rss' : javax.net.ssl.SSLHandshakeException:  
Received fatal alert: handshake\_failure

### API tips

Error rendering macro 'rss' : javax.net.ssl.SSLHandshakeException:  
Received fatal alert: handshake\_failure

## Setting up an MBaaS

End-to-end instructions on setting up an MBaaS with:

- Push
- Geopoint
- Offline sync and replication
- Social login

## Using promises



Promise support in LoopBack is not complete. See [LoopBack issue #418](#) for current status.

PLEASE NOTE: This documentation is a work in progress.

- [What is a promise?](#)
- [Setup](#)
- [Promises in LoopBack](#)
- [References](#)

Promises are an alternative for asynchronous operations that can be simpler to write and understand than traditional callback-based approaches. Promises also enable you to handle asynchronous errors with something similar to a synchronous `try/catch` block.

## What is a promise?

A promise represents the result of an asynchronous operation. A promise is in one of the following states:

- **pending** - The initial state of a promise (neither fulfilled nor rejected).
- **fulfilled** - The action relating to the promise succeeded. When a successful promise is fulfilled, all of the pending callbacks are called with the value. If more callbacks are registered in the future, they will be called with the same value. Fulfillment is the asynchronous analog for returning a value.
- **rejected** - The action relating to the promise failed. When a promise is rejected it invokes the errbacks that are waiting and remembers the error that was rejected for future errbacks that are attached. Rejection is the asynchronous analog for throwing an exception.
- **settled** - The promise has been fulfilled or rejected. Once a promise is settled, it is immutable (it can never change again).

Additional terminology:

- *Callback*: A function executed if a promise is fulfilled with a value.
- *Errback*: A function executed if a promise is rejected, with an exception.
- *Progressback*: A function executed to show that progress has been made toward resolution of a promise.

## Setup

When using Node v0.12+ or io.js 1.0+, you can use the native [global Promise object](#).

With earlier versions of Node, use [Bluebird](#). When running in an environment that supports native promises, Bluebird will automatically "fall back" to use them, so typically, it's easier to set up Bluebird so you don't need to be concerned with platform support. Simply, enter this command to update your application's dependencies in `package.json`:

```
$ npm install -save bluebird
```

Then, in your code:

```
var Promise = require('bluebird');  
...
```

## Promises in LoopBack



If using CoffeeScript, make sure your models don't accidentally return a Promise.

For example, here is how you would call a CRUD operation on a model that extends [PersistedModel](#) with standard callbacks:

```
MyModel.find(function(err, result){  
  ...  
  if (err) cb(err)  
})
```

With promises, you would instead do the following:

```
MyModel.find()  
  .then(function(result){  
    ... // Called if the operation succeeds.  
  })  
  .catch(function(err){  
    ... // Called if the operation encounters an error.  
  })
```

Another example:

```

var Promise = require('bluebird');
CoffeeShop.status = function() {
  var currentDate = new Date();
  var currentHour = currentDate.getHours();
  var OPEN_HOUR = 6;
  var CLOSE_HOUR = 20;
  console.log('Current hour is ' + currentHour);
  var response;
  if (currentHour > OPEN_HOUR && currentHour < CLOSE_HOUR) {
    response = 'We are open for business.';
  } else {
    response = 'Sorry, we are closed. Open daily from 6am to 8pm.';
  }

  return Promise.resolve(response);
};

```

Promises can simplify, for example, defining asynchronous remote methods. Instead of:

#### **common/models/my-model.js**

```

module.exports = function(MyModel) {
  MyModel.myFunc = function(input, cb) {
    Todo.find(function(err, data) {
      if(err) return cb(err);
      cb(null, generateStats(input, data));
    });
  };
};

```

With promises, this is reduced to:

#### **common/models/my-model.js**

```

MyModel.myFunc = function(input, cb) {
  return Todo.find()
    .map(generateStats(input));
};
MyModel.remoteMethod('myFunc', ...);
}

```

## References

See also:

- [Understanding JavaScript Promises](#)
- [JavaScript Promises: There and Back Again](#)
- [Promises \(by Forbes Lindsay\)](#)
- [Promise \(Mozilla Developer Network\)](#)

## Reference

- [Command-line reference \(slc loopback\)](#)
- [Project layout reference](#)

- [LoopBack API reference](#)
- [LoopBack types](#)
- [Valid names in LoopBack](#)
- [LoopBack 2.0 release notes](#)
- [Latest updates](#)
- [LoopBack Definition Language \(LDL\)](#)
- [Error object](#)

## Command-line reference (slc loopback)



**Prerequisite:** Install StrongLoop software following the instructions in [Getting started with LoopBack](#).

Use the `slc loopback` command to create and *scaffold* applications. Scaffolding simply means generating the basic code for your application. You can then extend and modify the code as desired for your specific needs.

The `slc loopback` command provides an [Application generator](#) to create a new LoopBack application and a number of sub-generators to scaffold an application, as described in the following table. The commands are listed roughly in the order that you would use them.

Command	See	Description
<code>slc loopback:example</code>	<a href="#">Example generator</a>	Create the <a href="#">LoopBack example app</a> .
<code>slc loopback</code>	<a href="#">Application generator</a>	Create a new LoopBack application.
<code>slc loopback:datasource</code>	<a href="#">Data source generator</a>	Add a new data source to a LoopBack application
<code>slc loopback:model</code>	<a href="#">Model generator</a>	Add a new model to a LoopBack application.
<code>slc loopback:property</code>	<a href="#">Property generator</a>	Add a new property to an existing model.
<code>slc loopback:acl</code>	<a href="#">ACL generator</a>	Add a new access control list (ACL) entry to the LoopBack application.
<code>slc loopback:middleware</code>	<a href="#">Middleware generator</a>	Add a new <a href="#">middleware</a> configuration.
<code>slc loopback:boot-script</code>	<a href="#">Boot script generator</a>	Add a new <a href="#">boot scripts</a> .
<code>slc loopback:swagger</code>	<a href="#">Swagger generator</a>	Generates a fully-functional application that provides the APIs conforming to the <a href="#">Swagger 2.0</a> specification.



The `slc` command has many additional sub-commands not specific to LoopBack for building, deploying, and managing Node applications. See [Operating Node applications](#) for more information and [Command-line reference](#) for the command reference.

Under the hood, `slc loopback` uses [Yeoman](#). If you are already using Yeoman and are comfortable with it, you can install the LoopBack generator directly with

```
npm install -g generator-loopback.
```

Then everywhere the documentation says to use `slc loopback` just use `yo loopback` instead. For example, to create a new model, use `yo loopback:model`.

## ACL generator

The LoopBack ACL generator adds a new access control list (ACL) entry to the LoopBack application.



Before running this generator, you must create an application using `slc loopback`, the [application generator](#).



You cannot modify [built-in models](#) using the ACL generator.

```
$ cd <loopback-app-dir>
$ slc loopback:acl
```

The tool will prompt you for the necessary information and then modify the [Model definition JSON file](#) accordingly.

The generator prompts for:

- Name of the model to which you want to apply access control or all models.
- Scope of access control: All methods and properties or a specific method.
- If you choose a specific method, the method's name.
- Access type: read, write, execute, or all.
- Role: all users, any unauthenticated user, any authenticated user, the object owner.
- Permission to apply: explicitly grant access or explicitly deny access.

For general information about setting up ACLs, see [Controlling data access](#).

## Application generator

The LoopBack application generator creates a new LoopBack application:

```
$ slc loopback
```

You will be greeted by the friendly Yeoman ASCII art (under the hood `slc` uses [Yeoman](#)) and prompted for:

- Name of the directory in which to create your application. Press **Enter** to create the application in the current directory.
- Name of the application, that defaults to the directory name you previously entered.

The tool creates the standard LoopBack application structure. See [Project layout reference](#) for details.



By default, a generated application exposes only the User model over REST. To expose other [built-in models](#), edit `/server/model-config.json` and change the model's "public" property to "true". See [model-config.json](#) for more information.

## Boot script generator

The LoopBack boot script generator adds a new [boot script](#) to the LoopBack application.



Before running this generator, you must create an application using `slc loopback`, the [application generator](#).

```
$ cd <loopback-app-dir>
$ slc loopback:boot-script [script_name]
```

The tool will prompt you for:

- The name of the boot script, if you didn't provide it on the command-line.
- Whether you want to create an asynchronous or synchronous boot script.

Then `slc` will create a JavaScript file with the specified name in the application's `server/boot` directory, depending on your selection.

Asynchronous:

```
module.exports = function(app, cb) {
  process.nextTick(cb);
};
```

Synchronous:



```
module.exports = function(app) {  
};
```

## Data source generator

The LoopBack data source generator adds a new data source definition to an existing application.



Before running this generator, you must create an application using `slc loopback`, the [application generator](#).

```
$ cd <loopback-app-dir>  
$ slc loopback:datasource [name]
```

The tool will prompt you:

- To enter the name of the new data source. If you supplied a name on the command-line, just hit **Enter** to use it.
- To select the connector to use for the data source.

For example:

```
$ slc loopback:datasource  
[?] Enter the data-source name: corp2  
[?] Select the connector for corp2: (Use arrow keys)  
  other  
In-memory db (supported by StrongLoop)  
MySQL (supported by StrongLoop)  
PostgreSQL (supported by StrongLoop)  
Oracle (supported by StrongLoop)  
Microsoft SQL (supported by StrongLoop)  
MongoDB (supported by StrongLoop)  
SOAP webservices (supported by StrongLoop)  
REST services (supported by StrongLoop)  
Neo4j (provided by community)  
Kafka (provided by community)  
other
```



By default, not all the choices are shown initially. Move the cursor down to display additional choices.

## Example generator

The LoopBack example generator (technically, sub-generator) creates a LoopBack example application.

```
$ slc loopback:example
```

Use the `-l` option to list the operations performed.



To connect to a relational or NoSQL database (not just the in-memory connector), you need a build environment to install native Node modules. For more information, see [Installing compiler tools](#).

### About the sample app

The StrongLoop sample is a mobile app for i-Cars, an (imaginary) car rental dealer with outlets in major cities around the world.

The application enables customers to find the closest available cars using the i-Car app on a smartphone. The app shows a map of nearby rental locations and lists available cars in the area shown on the map. In addition, the customer can filter the list of cars by make, model, class, year and color. The customer can then select the desired car and reserve it via the app. If not logged in the app prompts the customer to login or register. The app indicates if the desired car is available and if so, confirms the reservation.

Note that the sample app is the backend functionality only; that is, the app has a REST API, but no client app or UI to consume the interface.

Explore the sample app REST API at <http://localhost:3000/explorer>. See [Use API Explorer](#) for more information.

For more details on the sample app, see <https://github.com/strongloop/loopback-example-app>.

### Connecting to other data sources

By default, the LoopBack sample app connects to the in-memory data source. To connect to other data sources, use the following command to run the application:

```
$ DB=datasource node app
```

where *datasource* is either "mongodb", "mysql", or "oracle". The sample app will connect to database servers running on [demo.strongloop.com](http://demo.strongloop.com).

## Middleware generator

The LoopBack middleware generator adds a new middleware configuration to an existing LoopBack application.

- [Defining middleware](#)
- [middleware.json](#)



Before running this generator, you must create an application using `slc loopback`, the [application generator](#).

```
$ cd <loopback-app-dir>
$ slc loopback:middleware [name]
```

The tool will prompt you to:

- Enter the name of the new middleware. If you supplied a name on the command-line, just hit **Enter** to use it.
- Select the phase to use for the middleware.
- Select the sub-phase to use for the middleware.
- Add a list of paths.
- Add the JSON parameters.



You must install the middleware package for your application with `npm install -save <middleware-package>`.

Here is an example to add a middleware to an existing phase.

```
$ slc loopback:middleware

? Enter the middleware name: m1
? Select the phase for m1: 5. routes
? Select the sub phase for m1: 1. before
Specify paths for m1:
Enter an empty path name when done.
? Path uri: /x
Let's add another path.
Enter an empty path name when done.
? Path uri:
? Configuration parameters in JSON format: {"a": 1}
Middleware m1 is added to phase routes.
```

The following is an example to add a middleware to a custom phase.

```

$ slc loopback:middleware
? Enter the middleware name: m2
? Select the phase for m2: (custom phase)
? Enter the phase name: p1
? Select the phase before which the new one will be inserted: 4. parse
? Select the sub phase for m2: 2. regular
Specify paths for m2:
Enter an empty path name when done.
? Path uri: /a
Let's add another path.
? Configuration parameters in JSON format: {"x": "2"}
Middleware m2 is added to phase p1.

```

## Model generator

The LoopBack model generator creates a new model in an existing LoopBack application.



Before running this generator, you must create an application using `slc loopback`, the [application generator](#).

```

$ cd <loopback-app-dir>
$ slc loopback:model [model-name]

```

where *model-name* is the name of the model you want to create (optional on command line).

The tool will prompt you for:

- The name of the model. If you supplied a name on the command-line, just hit **Enter** to use it.
- The data source to which to attach the model. By default, only the [Memory connector](#) data source exists. You can add additional data sources using the [Data source generator](#).
- Whether you want to expose the model over a REST API. If the model is exposed over REST, then all the standard create, read, update, and delete (CRUD) operations are available via REST endpoints; see [PersistedModel REST API](#) for more information. You can also add your own custom remote methods that can be called via REST operations; see [Remote methods](#).
- If you choose to expose the model over REST, the custom plural form of the model. By default, the LoopBack uses the standard English plural of the word. The plural form is used in the REST API; for example `http://localhost:3000/api/locations`.

The tool will create a new file `/common/models/model-name.json` defining the specified model. See [Model definition JSON file](#) for details.

Then, the tool will invoke the [Property generator](#) and prompt you to enter model properties; for example:

```

$ slc loopback:model
[?] Enter the model name: inventory
[?] Select the data-source to attach inventory to: db (memory)
[?] Expose inventory via the REST API? Yes
Let's add some inventory properties now.
...

```

## Property generator

The LoopBack property generator adds a property to an existing model in a LoopBack application.



Before running this generator, you must create an application using `slc loopback`, the [application generator](#).

```
$ cd <loopback-app-dir>
$ slc loopback:property
```

The tool will then prompt you to:

- Select from the models in the application, to which it will add the new property.
- Enter the name of the property to add.
- Select the data type of the property.
- Whether the property is required.

For example:

```
$ slc loopback:property
[?] Select the model: inventory
[?] Enter the property name: price
[?] Property type: (Use arrow keys)
  string
  number
  boolean
  object
  array
  date
  buffer
  geopoint
  (other)
```

## Relation generator

The LoopBack relation generator creates a new [model relation](#) in the LoopBack application.



Before running this generator, you must create an application using `slc loopback`, the [application generator](#).

```
$ cd <loopback-app-dir>
$ slc loopback:relation
```

Then `slc` will prompt you for:

- Name of the model to create the relationship from.
- Relation type ([HasMany](#), [BelongsTo](#), [HasAndBelongsToMany](#), or [HasOne](#)).
- Name of the model to create a relationship with.
- Name for the relation (property name).
- Custom foreign key (optional)
- Whether a "through" model is required. Reply "Y" to create a [HasManyThrough relations](#).
  - Name of the "through" model, if appropriate.

## Swagger generator

The LoopBack Swagger generator creates a fully-functional application with an API defined using the [Swagger 2.0](#) specification.

See also: [Swagger RESTful API Documentation Specification \(version 2.0\)](#).



Before running this generator, you must create an application using `slc loopback`, the [application generator](#).

```
$ cd <loopback-app-dir>
$ slc loopback:swagger
```

The tool will prompt you for the location of the Swagger spec file (in JSON):

```
[?] Enter the swagger spec url or file path:
```

Enter a URL or a relative file path. Based on the REST API defined in this file, the tool will then prompt you for the models to generate. For example, if you enter the Swagger simple petstore example URL:

```
https://raw.githubusercontent.com/wordnik/swagger-spec/master/examples/v2.0/json/petstore-simple.json
```

The tool will display:

```
[?] Select models to be generated:
swagger_api
pet
petInput
errorModel
```

Move the cursor with the arrow keys, and press the space bar to de-select the model next to the cursor. Then press Return to generate all the selected models.

The tool will prompt you for the data source to use then display information on what it's doing; for example:

```
[?] Select the data-source to attach models to: db (memory)
Creating model definition for swagger_api...
Creating model definition for pet...
Creating model definition for petInput...
Creating model definition for errorModel...
...
```

## Project layout reference



The following describes the application structure as created by the `slc loopback` command. LoopBack does not require that you follow this structure, but if you don't, then you can't use `slc loopback` commands to modify or extend your application.


LoopBack project files and directories are in the *application root directory*. Within this directory the standard LoopBack project structure has three sub-directories:

- `server` - Node application scripts and configuration files.
- `client` - Client JavaScript, HTML, and CSS files.
- `common` - Files common to client and server. The `/models` sub-directory contains all model JSON and JavaScript files.



All your model JSON and JavaScript files go in the `/common/models` directory.

File or directory	Description	How to access in code
-------------------	-------------	-----------------------

Top-level application directory		
<code>package.json</code>	Standard npm package specification. See <code>package.json</code> .  Additionally, the top-level directory contains the stub <code>README.md</code> file, and <code>node_modules</code> directory (for Node dependencies).	N/A
/server directory - Node application files		
<code>server.js</code>	Main application program file.	N/A
<code>config.json</code>	Application settings. See <code>config.json</code> .	<code>app.get('setting-name')</code>
<code>datasources.json</code>	Data source configuration file. See <code>datasources.json</code> . For an example, see <a href="#">Create new data source</a> .	<code>app.datasources['datasource-name']</code>
<code>model-config.json</code>	Model configuration file. See <code>model-config.json</code> . For more information, see <a href="#">Connecting models to data sources</a> .	N/A
<code>middleware.json</code>	Middleware definition file. For more information, see <a href="#">Defining middleware</a> .	N/A
<code>/boot</code> directory	Add scripts to perform initialization and setup. See <a href="#">boot scripts</a> .	Scripts are automatically executed in alphabetical order.
/client directory - Client application files		
<code>README.md</code>	LoopBack generators create empty README file in markdown format.	N/A
Other	Add your HTML, CSS, client JavaScript files.	
/common directory - shared application files		
<code>/models</code> directory	<p>Custom model files:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Model definition JSON files</a>, by convention named <code>model-name.json</code>; for example <code>customer.json</code>.</li> <li>• Custom model scripts by convention named <code>model-name.js</code>; for example, <code>customer.js</code>.</li> </ul> <p>For more information, see <a href="#">Model definition JSON file</a> and <a href="#">Customizing models</a>.</p> <div>  <p>The LoopBack <a href="#">model generator</a>, <code>slc loopback:model</code>, automatically converts camel-case model names to lowercase dashed names. For example, if you create a model named "FooBar" with the model generator, it creates files <code>foo-bar.json</code> and <code>foo-bar.js</code> in <code>common/models</code>. However, the model name ("FooBar") will be preserved via the model's name property.</p> </div>	<p>Node:</p> <pre>myModel = app.models.myModelName</pre>

## package.json

The `package.json` file is the standard file for npm package management. Use it to set up package dependencies, among other things. This file must be in the application root directory.

For more information, see the [package.json documentation](#).

For example:

```
{
  "name": "loopback-example-app",
  "version": "0.0.0",
  "main": "server/server.js",
  "dependencies": {
    "compression": "^1.0.3",
    "errorhandler": "^1.1.1",
    "loopback": "~2.0.0-beta5",
    "loopback-boot": "2.0.0-beta2",
    "loopback-datasource-juggler": "~2.0.0-beta2",
    "function-rate-limit": "~0.0.1",
    "async": "~0.9.0",
    "loopback-connector-rest": "^1.1.4"
  },
  "optionalDependencies": {
    "loopback-explorer": "^1.1.0",
    "loopback-connector-mysql": "^1.2.1",
    "loopback-connector-mongodb": "^1.2.5",
    "loopback-connector-oracle": "^1.2.1"
  },
  "devDependencies": {
    "mocha": "^1.20.1",
    "supertest": "^0.13.0"
  },
  "scripts": {
    "test": "mocha -R spec server/test",
    "pretest": "jshint ."
  }
}
```

## server directory

The `/server` directory contains files that create the backend LoopBack (Node) application.

The standard files in this directory are:

- [component-config.json](#)
- [config.json](#)
- [datasources.json](#)
- [middleware.json](#)
- [model-config.json](#)
- [server.js](#)

The `boot` sub-directory contains the following boot scripts by default:

- [authentication.js](#)
- [rest-api.js](#)
- [explorer.js](#)
- [root.js](#)

## component-config.json



This document is incomplete and still being written. Please check for updates soon.

- [API Explorer](#)
- [OAuth2](#)
- [Push Notifications](#)
- [Storage](#)
- [Third-party login \(Passport\)](#)



The `slc loopback application generator` does not currently create this file. You must create it yourself if your app needs to use a component.

This file contains a top-level key for each component to be loaded, where the key is the **module name** of a LoopBack component.

Component	Description	Module
API Explorer	Enables the Swagger UI for the API. See <a href="#">Use API Explorer</a> for an example.	<a href="#">loopback-component-explorer</a>
OAuth 2.0	Enables LoopBack applications to function as oAuth 2.0 providers to authenticate and authorize client applications and users to access protected API endpoints.	<a href="#">loopback-component-oauth2</a>
Push Notifications	Adds push notification capabilities to your LoopBack application as a mobile back end service.	<a href="#">loopback-component-push</a>
Storage component	Adds an interface to abstract storage providers like S3, filesystem into general containers and files.	<a href="#">loopback-component-storage</a>
Synchronization	Adds replication capability between LoopBack running in a browser or between LoopBack back-end instances to enable offline synchronization and server-to-server data synchronization.	Built into LoopBack; will be refactored into <a href="#">loopback-component-sync</a>
Third-party login (Passport)	Adds third-party login capabilities to your LoopBack application like Facebook, GitHub etc.	<a href="#">loopback-component-passport</a>

The configuration properties depend on the component. See the component documentation for details.

### API Explorer

To load LoopBack API Explorer, add the following:

#### server/component-config.json

```
{
  "loopback-explorer": {
    "mountPath": "/explorer"
  }
}
```

### OAuth2

Example:

#### server/component-config.json

```
{
  "loopback-component-oauth2": {
    "dataSource": "db",
    "loginPage": "/login",
    "loginPath": "/login",
    "addHttpHeaders": "X-"
  }
}
```

### Push Notifications

TBD



## Storage

TBD

## Third-party login (Passport)

### server/component-config.json

```
{
  "loopback-component-passport": {
    ...
  }
}
```

TBD

## config.json

- [Overview](#)
  - [Top-level properties](#)
  - [Remoting properties](#)
- [Environment-specific settings](#)

## Overview

Define application server-side settings in `/server/config.json`. For example here are the default settings:

### config.json

```
{
  "restApiRoot": "/api",
  "host": "0.0.0.0",
  "port": 3000,
  "remoting": {
    ... // See below
  },
  "legacyExplorer": false
}
```

## Top-level properties

The following table describes the properties you can configure.

Property	Description	Default
aclErrorStatus	When an authenticated user is denied access because of an ACL, by default the application returns HTTP error status code <b>401 unauthorized</b> . If you want instead to return 403 (forbidden) set the value here. This may be required, for example, when using an AngularJS interceptor to differentiate between the need to show an access denied/request access page instead of a login dialog.  Can also set this in the <a href="#">Model definition JSON file</a> to define per-model.	401
host	Host or IP address used to create the Node HTTP server. If a request comes to a different host or IP address, then the application won't accept the connection. See <a href="#">server.listen()</a> for more information.	localhost
legacyExplorer	Set to <code>false</code> to disable old routes <code>/models</code> and <code>/routes</code> that are exposed, but no longer used by API Explorer; use <code>true</code> or omit the option to keep them enabled.  When upgrading to v2.14.0, set <code>"legacyExplorer": false</code>	true

port	TCP port to use.	3000
remoting	See <a href="#">Remoting properties</a> below.	N/A
restApiRoot	Root URI of REST API	/api

To access the settings in application code, use `app.get('property')`.

You can also retrieve [Express app object properties](#) with this method. See `app.get()` in [Express documentation](#) for more information.

### Remoting properties

Properties under the `remoting` top-level property determine how the application performs remote operations using [strong-remoting](#).

```
"remoting": {
  "context": {
    "enableHttpContext": false
  },
  "rest": {
    "normalizeHttpPath": false,
    "xml": false
  },
  "json": {
    "strict": false,
    "limit": "100kb"
  },
  "urlencoded": {
    "extended": true,
    "limit": "100kb"
  },
  "cors": false,
  "errorHandler": {
    "disableStackTrace": false
  }
}
```

For example, here are the default remoting properties:

Property	Type	Description	Default
context.enableHttpContext	Boolean	Advanced feature. For more information, see <a href="#">Using current context</a> .	false
rest.normalizeHttpPath	Boolean	<p>If <code>true</code>, in HTTP paths, converts:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Uppercase letters to lowercase.</li> <li>Underscores (<code>_</code>) to dashes (<code>-</code>).</li> <li>CamelCase to dash-delimited.</li> </ul> <p>Does not affect placeholders (for example <code>":id"</code>).</p> <p>For example, <code>"MyClass"</code> or <code>"My_class"</code> becomes <code>"my-class"</code>.</p>	false
rest.supportedTypes	Array	<p>List of content types that the API supports in HTTP responses.</p> <p>The response type will match that specified in the HTTP request <code>"accepts"</code> header, if it is in this list of supported types.</p> <p>If this property is set, then <code>rest.xml</code> is ignored.</p>	'application/json', 'application/javascript', 'application/xml', 'text/javascript', 'text/xml', 'json', 'xml'

rest.xml	Boolean	If true, then 'xml' is added to the supported content types. Then, the API will then respond with XML when the HTTP request "accepts" type contains 'xml'.	false
json.strict	Boolean	Parse only objects and arrays.  You can set other JSON properties as well; see <a href="#">body-parser.json()</a> .	false
json.limit	String	Maximum request body size.  You can set other JSON properties as well; see <a href="#">body-parser.json()</a> .	100kb
urlencoded.extended	Boolean	Parse extended syntax with the <a href="#">qs</a> module.  For more information, see <a href="#">bodyParser.urlencoded()</a> .	true
urlencoded.limit	String	Maximum request body size.  For more information, see <a href="#">bodyParser.urlencoded()</a> .	100kb
cors	Boolean	If false, use the CORS settings in <a href="#">middleware.json</a> .	false
errorHandler.disableStackTrace	Boolean	Set to true to disable stack traces; removes the <code>stack</code> property from the <a href="#">Error object</a> .  Ignored when <code>NODE_ENV</code> is "production", when stack traces are always disabled.	false

### Environment-specific settings

You can override values that are set in `config.json` in:

- `config.local.js` or `config.local.json`
- `config.env.js` or `config.env.json`, where `env` is the value of `NODE_ENV` (typically `development` or `production`); so, for example `config.production.json`.



The additional files can override the top-level keys with value-types (strings, numbers) only. Nested objects and arrays are not supported at the moment.

For example:

#### config.production.js

```
module.exports = {
  host: process.env.CUSTOM_HOST,
  port: process.env.CUSTOM_PORT
};
```

For more information, see [Environment-specific configuration](#).

### datasources.json

- [Overview](#)
- [Standard properties](#)
- [Properties for database connectors](#)
- [Environment-specific configuration](#)

#### Overview

Configure data sources in `/server/datasources.json`. You can set up as many data sources as you want in this file.

For example:

```
{
  "db": {
    "name": "db",
    "connector": "memory"
  },
  "myDB": {
    "name": "myDB",
    "connector": "mysql",
    "host": "demo.strongloop.com",
    "port": 3306,
    "database": "demo",
    "username": "demo",
    "password": "L00pBack"
  }
}
```

To access data sources in application code, use `app.datasources.dataSourceName`.

### Standard properties

All data sources support a few standard properties. Beyond that, specific properties and defaults depend on the connector being used.

Property	Description
connector	<p>LoopBack connector to use; one of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>memory</li> <li>loopback-connector-oracle or just "oracle"</li> <li>loopback-connector-mongodb or just "mongodb"</li> <li>loopback-connector-mysql or just "mysql"</li> <li>loopback-connector-postgresql or just "postgresql"</li> <li>loopback-connector-soap or just "soap"</li> <li>loopback-connector-mssql or just "mssql"</li> <li>loopback-connector-rest or just "rest"</li> <li>loopback-storage-service</li> </ul>
name	Name of the data source being defined.

### Properties for database connectors

To connect a model to a data source, follow these steps:

1. Use the [data source generator](#), `slc loopback:datasource`, to create a new data source. For example:

```
$ slc loopback:datasource
? Enter the data-source name: mysql-corp
? Select the connector for mysql: MySQL (supported by StrongLoop)
```

Follow the prompts to name the datasource and select the connector to use. See [Connecting models to data sources](#) for more information. This adds the new data source to `datasources.json`.

2. Edit `server/datasources.json` to add the necessary authentication credentials: typically hostname, username, password, and database name. For example:

### server/datasources.json

```
"mysql-corp": {
  "name": "mysql-corp",
  "connector": "mysql",
  "host": "your-mysql-server.foo.com",
  "user": "db-username",
  "password": "db-password",
  "database": "your-db-name"
}
```

For information on the specific properties that each connector supports, see:

- [MongoDB connector](#)
- [MySQL connector](#)
- [Oracle connector](#)
- [PostgreSQL connector](#)
- [Redis connector](#)
- [SQL Server connector](#)

3. Install the corresponding connector with `npm`, for example:

```
$ npm install --save loopback-connector-mysql
```

See [Connectors](#) for the list of connectors.

4. Use the [model generator](#), `slc loopback:model`, to create a model. When prompted for the data source to attach to, select the one you just created.



The model generator lists the [memory connector](#), "no data source," and data sources listed in `datasources.json`. That's why you created the data source first in step 1.

```
$ slc loopback:model
? Enter the model name: myModel
? Select the data-source to attach myModel to: mysql (mysql)
? Select model's base class: PersistedModel
? Expose myModel via the REST API? Yes
? Custom plural form (used to build REST URL):
Let's add some test2 properties now.
...
```

You can also create models from an existing database; see [Creating models](#) for more information.

## Environment-specific configuration

You can override values set in `datasources.json` in the following files:

- `datasources.local.js` or `datasources.local.json`
- `datasources.env.js` or `datasources.env.json`, where `env` is the value of `NODE_ENV` environment variable (typically development or production); for example, `datasources.production.json`.



The additional files can override the top-level data-source options with string and number values only. You cannot use objects or array values.

Example data sources:

### **datasources.json**

```
{
  // the key is the datasource name
  // the value is the config object to pass to
  // app.dataSource(name, config).
  db: {
    connector: 'memory'
  }
}
```

### **datasources.production.json**

```
{
  db: {
    connector: 'mongodb',
    database: 'myapp',
    user: 'myapp',
    password: 'secret'
  }
}
```

## **middleware.json**

- [Overview](#)
- [Phases](#)
- [CORS settings](#)

### **Overview**

Set up [middleware](#) in `middleware.json`. Here is the default version created by the [Application generator](#):

```
{
  "initial:before": {
    "loopback#favicon": {}
  },
  "initial": {
    "compression": {},
    "cors": {
      "params": {
        "origin": true,
        "credentials": true,
        "maxAge": 86400
      }
    },
  },
  "session": {
  },
  "auth": {
  },
  "parse": {
  },
  "routes": {
  },
  "files": {
  },
  "final": {
    "loopback#urlNotFound": {}
  },
  "final:after": {
    "loopback#errorhandler": {}
  }
}
```

## Phases

Each top-level property in `middleware.json` corresponds to one of the following [middleware phases](#):

1. **initial** - The first point at which middleware can run.
2. **session** - Prepare the session object.
3. **auth** - Handle authentication and authorization.
4. **parse** - Parse the request body.
5. **routes** - HTTP routes implementing your application logic. Middleware registered via the Express API `app.use`, `app.route`, `app.get` (and other HTTP verbs) runs at the beginning of this phase. Use this phase also for sub-apps like `loopback/server/middleware/rest` or `loopback-explorer`.
6. **files** - Serve static assets (requests are hitting the file system here).
7. **final** - Deal with errors and requests for unknown URLs.

Each phase has "before" and "after" subphases in addition to the main phase, encoded following the phase name, separated by a colon. For example, for the "initial" phase, middleware executes in this order:

1. `initial:before`
2. `initial`
3. `initial:after`

Middleware within a single subphase executes in the order in which it is registered. However, you should not rely on such order. Always explicitly order the middleware using appropriate phases when order matters.

In general, each phase has the following syntax:

```
phase[:sub-phase]: {
  middlewarePath: {
    [ enabled: [true | false] ]
    [, name: nameString ]
```

```
[, params : paramSpec ]
[, methods: methodSpec ]
[ paths : routeSpec ]
}
}
```

Where:

- *phase* is one of the predefined phases listed above (initial, session, auth, and so on) or a custom phase; see [Adding a custom phase](#).
- *sub-phase* (optional) can be *before* or *after*.
- *name*: optional middleware name.
- *middlewarePath*: path to the middleware function.
- *paramSpec*: value of the middleware parameters, typically a JSON object.
- *methodSpec*: An array containing HTTP methods for which the middleware is triggered; for example: "methods" : [ "GET" , "POST" ]. If not present, applies to all methods.
- *routeSpec*: REST endpoint(s) that trigger the middleware.

For more information, see [Defining middleware](#).

## CORS settings

Set Cross-origin resource sharing (CORS) settings as `cors.params` properties in the initial phase.

You can set other CORS properties as well. For more information, see [cors](#).

Property	Type	Description	Default
<code>cors.params.origin</code>	Boolean	Configures the <b>Access-Control-Allow-Origin</b> CORS header. Expects a string (ex: " <a href="#">http://example.com/</a> "). Set to <code>true</code> to reflect the <a href="#">request origin</a> , as defined by <code>req.header('Origin')</code> . Set to <code>false</code> to disable CORS. Can also be set to a function, which takes the request origin as the first parameter and a callback (which expects the signature <code>err [object], allow [bool]</code> ) as the second.	<code>true</code>
<code>cors.params.credentials</code>	Boolean	Configures the <b>Access-Control-Allow-Credentials</b> CORS header. Set to <code>true</code> to pass the header, otherwise it is omitted.  You can set other cors properties as well. For more information, see <a href="#">cors</a> .	<code>true</code>
<code>cors.params.maxAge</code>	Number	Configures the <b>Access-Control-Allow-Max-Age</b> CORS header. Set to an integer to pass the header, otherwise it is omitted.	86400

## model-config.json

- [Overview](#)
- [Top-level properties](#)
  - [Model properties](#)

### Overview

The file `/server/model-config.json` configures LoopBack models, for example it binds models to data sources and specifies whether a model is exposed over REST. The models referenced in this file must be either a [built-in models](#) or custom models defined by a JSON file in the `common/models/` folder.



You can also use a `/client/model-config.json` for client-specific (browser) model configuration.

For example, here is the default `model-config.json` that lists all the built-in models:



### model-config.json

```
{
  "_meta": {
    "sources": [
      "loopback/common/models",
      "loopback/server/models",
      "../common/models",
      "./models"
    ],
    "mixins": [
      "loopback/common/mixins",
      "loopback/server/mixins",
      "../common/mixins",
      "./mixins"
    ]
  },
  "User": {
    "dataSource": "db"
  },
  "AccessToken": {
    "dataSource": "db",
    "public": false
  },
  "ACL": {
    "dataSource": "db",
    "public": false
  },
  "RoleMapping": {
    "dataSource": "db",
    "public": false
  },
  "Role": {
    "dataSource": "db",
    "public": false
  }
}
```

### Top-level properties

Property	Type	Description
<code>_meta.sources</code>	Array	Array of relative paths to custom model definitions.  By default, LoopBack applications load models from <code>/common/models</code> subdirectory. To specify a different location (or even multiple locations) use the <code>_meta.sources</code> property, whose value is an array of directory paths.
<code>_meta.mixins</code>	Array	Array of relative paths to custom mixin definitions. See <a href="#">Defining mixins</a> for more information.
<code>modelName</code>	String	Name of a model, either a <a href="#">built-in model</a> or a custom model defined in the <code>common/models/</code> folder.

### Model properties

Each JSON key is the name of a model and an object with the following properties.

Property	Type	Description
----------	------	-------------

datasource	String	Name of the data source to which the model is connected. Must correspond to a data source defined in <a href="#">datasources.js</a> on.
public	Boolean	Whether the model API is exposed.  If true, then the model is exposed over REST. Does not affect accessibility of Node API.

## server.js

This is the main application script in the standard scaffolded application, as created by `slc loopback`.

**1 - 3:** Require LoopBack modules and set up standard objects `loopback`, `app`, and `boot`.

**6:** Initialize (`boot`) the application.

**7+:** Start the application and web server.

```
var loopback = require('loopback');
var boot = require('loopback-boot');
var app = module.exports = loopback();
// Bootstrap the application, configure models,
// datasources and middleware.
// Sub-apps like REST API are mounted via boot scripts.
boot(app, __dirname);
app.start = function() {
  // start the web server
  return app.listen(function() {
    app.emit('started');
    console.log('Web server listening at: %s',
app.get('url'));
  });
};
// start the server if `node server.js`
if (require.main === module) {
  app.start();
}
```

## common directory

The `/common` directory contains files shared by the server and client parts of the application. By default, `slc loopback` creates a `/models` sub-directory with one JSON file per model in the application. See [Model definition JSON file](#) for a description of the format of this file.



Put all your model JSON and JavaScript files in the `/common/models` directory.

## Model definition JSON file

- [Overview](#)
- [Top-level properties](#)
- [Options](#)
  - [Advanced options](#)
  - [Data source-specific options](#)
- [Properties](#)
  - [General property properties](#)
  - [ID properties](#)
  - [Composite IDs](#)
  - [Data mapping properties](#)
- [Exclude properties from base model](#)
- [Hidden properties](#)
- [Protected properties](#)
- [Validations](#)
- [Relations](#)
- [ACLs](#)
- [Scopes](#)
  - [Default scope](#)
- [Methods](#)
- [Indexes](#)

### Related articles

- [Creating models](#)
- [Customizing models](#)
- [Creating model relations](#)
- [Querying data](#)
- [Model definition JSON file](#)
- [PersistedModel REST API](#)

## Overview

The LoopBack [Model generator](#) creates model JSON files in the `/common/models` directory named `model-name.json`, where `model-name` is the model name of each model; for example, `customer.json`. The model JSON file defines models, relations between models, and access to models.



The LoopBack [model generator](#), `slc loopback:model`, automatically converts camel-case model names to lowercase dashed names. For example, if you create a model named "FooBar" with the model generator, it creates files `foo-bar.json` and `foo-bar.js` in `common/models`. However, the model name ("FooBar") will be preserved via the model's name property.

For example, here is an excerpt from a model definition file for a customer model that would be in `/common/models/customer.json`:

#### customer.json

```
{
  "name": "Customer", // See Top-level properties below
  "description": "A Customer model representing our customers.",
  "base": "User",
  "idInjection": false,
  "strict": true,
  "options": { ... }, // See Options below - can also declare as top-level properties
  "properties": { ... }, // See Properties below
  "hidden": [...], // See Hidden properties below
  "validations": [...], // See Validations below
  "relations": {...}, // See Relations below
  "acls": [...], // See ACLs below
  "scopes": {...}, // See Scopes below
  "indexes" : { ... }, // See Indexes below
  "methods": [...], // See Methods below - New for LB2.0 - Remoting metadata
  "http": {"path": "/foo/mypath"}
}
```

### Top-level properties

Properties are required unless otherwise designated.

Property	Type	Description
name	String	Name of the model.
description	String or Array	Optional description of the model. You can split long descriptions into arrays of strings (lines) to keep line lengths manageable. <pre>[   "Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit,"   "sed do eiusmod tempor incididunt ut labore et dolore",   "magna aliqua." ]</pre>
plural	String	Plural form of the model name. <b>Optional:</b> Defaults to plural of name property using standard English conventions.
base	String	Name of another model that this model extends. The model will "inherit" properties and methods of the base model.
idInjection	Boolean	Whether to automatically add an id property to the model: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>true</code>: id property is added to the model automatically. This is the default.</li><li>• <code>false</code>: id property is not added to the model</li></ul> See <a href="#">ID properties</a> for more information. <b>Optional;</b> default is <code>true</code> . If present, the <code>idInjection</code> property in <code>options</code> takes precedence.

http.path	String	Customized HTTP path for REST endpoints of this model.
strict	Boolean	Specifies whether the model accepts only predefined properties or not. One of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>true</code>: Only properties defined in the model are accepted. Use if you want to ensure the model accepts only predefined properties.</li> <li><code>false</code>: The model is an open model and accepts all properties, including ones not predefined in the model. This mode is useful to store free-form JSON data to a schema-less database such as MongoDB.</li> <li><code>"validate"</code>: The unknown properties will be reported as validation errors.</li> <li><code>"throw"</code>: Throws an exception if properties not defined for the model are used in an operation.</li> <li>Undefined: Defaults to <code>false</code> unless the data source is backed by a relational database such as Oracle or MySQL.</li> </ul>
options	Object	JSON object that specifies model options. See <a href="#">Options</a> below.
properties	Object	JSON object that specifies the properties in the model. See <a href="#">Properties</a> below.
relations	Object	Object containing relation names and relation definitions. See <a href="#">Relations</a> below.
acls	Array	Set of ACL specifications that describes access control for the model. See <a href="#">ACLs</a> below.
scopes	Object	See <a href="#">Scopes</a> below.

## Options

The `options` key specifies advanced options, for example data source-specific options.



You can set `idInjection` here in `options` or at the top-level. The value set here takes precedence over the top-level value of `idInjection`.

## Advanced options

Property	Type	Description
<code>validateUpsert</code>	Boolean	<p>By default, the <code>upsert()</code> method (also known as <code>updateOrCreate()</code>) does not enforce valid model data. Instead, it logs validation errors to the console. This is not optimal, but necessary to preserve backwards compatibility with older 2.x versions.</p> <p>Set this property to <code>true</code> to ensure that <code>upsert()</code> returns an error when validation fails. The next major version of LoopBack will enable this option (set the property to <code>true</code>) by default.</p> <p>Set this property to <code>false</code> to prevent <code>upsert()</code> from calling any validators at all.</p> <p>By default, <code>upsert()</code> calls all validators and reports any validation errors to the console log.</p>

## Data source-specific options

When a model is attached a data source of certain type such as Oracle or MySQL, you can specify the name of the database schema and table as properties under the key with the name of the connector type.

```

...
"options": {
  "mysql": {
    "table": "location"
  },
  "mongodb": {
    "collection": "location"
  },
  "oracle": {
    "schema": "BLACKPOOL",
    "table": "LOCATION"
  }
},
...

```

## Properties

The `properties` key defines one or more properties, each of which is an object that has keys described in the following table. Below is an example a basic property definition:

```

...
"properties": {
  "firstName": {
    "type": "String",
    "required": "true"
  },
  "id": {
    "type": "Number",
    "id": true,
    "doc": "User ID"
  },
...

```

## General property properties

Each model property can have the properties described in the following table. Only the `type` property is required; for properties with only a `type`, you can use the following shorthand:

```
"propertyName": "type"
```

For example:

```

...
"emailVerified": "boolean",
"status": "string",
...

```

Key	Required?	Type	Description
default	No	Any*	Default value for the property. The type must match that specified by <code>type</code> .

defaultFn	No	String	<p>A name of the function to call to set the default value for the property. Must be one of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>"guid" or "uuid": generate a new globally unique identifier (universally unique identifier) using the computer MAC address and the current time (UUID version 1).</li> <li>"now": use the current date and time as returned by <code>new Date()</code></li> </ul> <p>NOTE: For discussion of providing additional options, see <a href="#">LoopBack issue 292</a> on GitHub.</p>
description	No	String or Array	<p>Documentation for the property.</p> <p>You can split long descriptions into arrays of strings (lines) to keep line lengths manageable.</p> <pre>[   "Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit,"   "sed do eiusmod tempor incididunt ut labore et dolore",   "magna aliqua." ]</pre>
doc	No	String	Documentation for the property. <b>Deprecated, use "description" instead.</b>
id	No	Boolean	<p>Whether the property is a unique identifier. Default is false.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Id property</a> below.</p>
required	No	Boolean	<p>Whether a value for the property is required.</p> <p>Default is false.</p>
type	Yes	String	Property type. Can be any type described in <a href="#">LoopBack types</a> .
*	No	Any	See below.

## ID properties

A model representing data to be persisted in a database usually has one or more *ID properties* that uniquely identify the model instance. For example, the `user` model might have user IDs.

By default, if no ID properties are defined and the `idInjection` property is `true` (or is not set, since `true` is the default), LoopBack automatically adds an `id` property to the model as follows:

```
id: {type: Number, generated: true, id: true}
```

The `generated` property indicates the ID will be automatically generated by the database. If `true`, the connector decides what type to use for the auto-generated key. For relational databases, such as Oracle or MySQL, it defaults to `number`. If your application generates unique IDs, set it to `false`.

To explicitly specify a property as ID, set the `id` property of the option to `true`. The `id` property value must be one of:

- `true`: the property is an ID.
- `false` (or any value that converts to false): the property is not an ID (default).
- Positive number, such as 1 or 2: the property is the index of a composite ID.

In database terms, ID properties are primary key column(s) are. Such properties are defined with the 'id' attribute set to `true` or a number as the position for a composite key.

For example,

```
{
  "myId": {
    "type": "string",
    "id": true
  }
}
```

Then:

1. If a model doesn't have explicitly-defined ID properties, LoopBack automatically injects a property named "id" unless the `idInjection`

- n option is set to false.
2. If an ID property has `generated` set to true, the connector decides what type to use for the auto-generated key. For example for SQL Server, it defaults to `number`.
  3. LoopBack CRUD methods expect the model to have an "id" property if the model is backed by a database.
  4. A model without any "id" properties can only be used without attaching to a database.

### Composite IDs

LoopBack supports the definition of a composite ID that has more than one property. For example:

```
var InventoryDefinition = {
  productId: {type: String, id: 1},
  locationId: {type: String, id: 2},
  qty: Number
}
```

The composite ID is (productId, locationId) for an inventory model.



Composite IDs are not currently supported as query parameters in REST APIs.

### Data mapping properties

When using a relational database data source, you can specify the following properties that describe the columns in the database.

Property	Type	Description
columnName	String	Column name
dataType	String	Data type as defined in the database
dataLength	Number	Data length
dataPrecision	Number	Numeric data precision
dataScale	Number	Numeric data scale
nullable	Boolean	If true, data can be null

For example, to map a property to a column in an Oracle database table, use the following:

```
...
"name": {
  "type": "String",
  "required": false,
  "length": 40,
  "oracle": {
    "columnName": "NAME",
    "dataType": "VARCHAR2",
    "dataLength": 40,
    "nullable": "Y"
  }
}
...
```

### Exclude properties from base model

By default, a model inherits all properties from the base. To exclude some base properties from being visible, you need to set the property to `false` or `null`. For example,

#### common/models/customer.json

```
...
"base": "User",
"properties": {
  "lastUpdated": false,
  "credentials": null,
  "challenges": null,
  "modified": "date"
}
...
```

### **Hidden properties**

A hidden property is not sent in the JSON data in the application's HTTP response. The property value is an array of strings, and each string in the array must match a property name defined for the model.

An example of a hidden property is User.password:

#### common/models/user.json

```
...
"properties": {
  ...
  "password": {
    "type": "string",
    "required": true
  },
  ...
  "hidden": ["password"],
  ...
}
```

If you want to white-list the fields returned instead of black-listing them, consider:

- Applying the `fields` of the model's default `scope`. This will operate at the database response layer so limiting your ability to check a field in the database that you otherwise would not wish exposed to the outside world (a private flag, for example).
- Overriding your model's `toJSON` method

See discussion of white-listing on [GitHub](#).

### **Protected properties**

A protected property is not sent in the JSON data in the application's HTTP response if the object is nested inside another object. For instance if you have an Author object and a Book object. A book has a relation to with Author, and book is public API. Author will have personal information such as social security number etc, and they can now be "protected" such that anyone looking up the author of the book will not get those information back (from [GitHub](#) pull request). The property value is an array of strings, and each string in the array must match a property name defined for the model.

An example of a hidden property is User.email:



### common/models/user.json

```
...
  "properties": {
    ...
    "email": {
      "type": "string",
      "required": true
    },
    ...
    "protected": ["email"],
    ...
  }
```

## Validations



This is not yet implemented. You must currently validate in code; see [Validating model data](#).

Specify constraints on data with `validations` properties. See also [Validatable class](#).

Key	Type	Description
default	Any	Default value of the property.
required	Boolean	Whether the property is required.
pattern	String	Regular expression pattern that a string should match
max	Number	Maximum length for string types.
min	Number	Minimum length for string types.
length	Number	Maximum size of a specific type, for example for CHAR types.

For example:

```
"username": {
  "type": "string",
  "doc": "User account name",
  "min": 6,
  "max": 24
}
```

## Relations

The `relations` key defines relationships between models through a JSON object. Each key in this object is the name of a related model, and the value is a JSON object as described in the table below. For example:

```

...
  "relations": {
    "accessTokens": {
      "model": "accessToken",
      "type": "hasMany",
      "foreignKey": "userId"
    },
    "account": {
      "model": "account",
      "type": "belongsTo"
    },
    "transactions": {
      "model": "transaction",
      "type": "hasMany"
    }
  },
  ...

```

Key	Type	Description
foreignKey	String	Optional foreign key used to find related model instances.
keyThrough	String	Foreign key to be used in a <a href="#">HasMany relation</a> .
model	String	Name of the related model. Required.
type	String	<p>Relation type. Required. See <a href="#">Creating model relations</a> for more information.</p> <p>One of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>hasMany</li> <li>belongsTo</li> <li>hasAndBelongsToMany</li> </ul> <p>For hasMany, you can also specify a hasManyThrough relation by adding a "through" key:</p> <pre>{through: 'modelName'}</pre> <p>See example below.</p>
through	String	Name of model creating hasManyThrough relation. See example below.

Example of hasManyThrough:

```

"patient": {
  "model": "physician",
  "type": "hasMany",
  "through" : "appointment"
}

```


## ACLs

The value of the `acls` key is an array of objects that describes the access controls for the model. Each object has the keys described in the table below.

```

"acls": [
  {
    "permission": "ALLOW",
    "principalType": "ROLE",
    "principalId": "$everyone",
    "property": "myMethod"
  },
  ...
]

```

Key	Type	Description
accessType	String	<p>The type of access to apply. One of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• READ</li> <li>• WRITE</li> <li>• EXECUTE</li> <li>• * (default)</li> </ul>
permission	String	<p>Type of permission granted. Required.</p> <p>One of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>ALLOW</b> - Explicitly grants access to the resource.</li> <li>• <b>DENY</b> - Explicitly denies access to the resource.</li> </ul>
principalId	String	<p>Principal identifier. Required.</p> <p>The value must be one of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A user ID (String number any)</li> <li>• One of the following predefined dynamic roles: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• \$everyone - Everyone</li> <li>• \$owner - Owner of the object</li> <li>• \$related - Any user with a relationship to the object</li> <li>• \$authenticated - Authenticated user</li> <li>• \$unauthenticated - Unauthenticated user</li> </ul> </li> <li>• A static role name</li> </ul> <div>  \$related principalId is not yet implemented. </div>
principalType	String	<p>Type of the principal. Required.</p> <p>One of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Application</li> <li>• User</li> <li>• Role</li> </ul>
property	String Array of Strings	<p>Specifies a property/method/relation on a given model. It further constrains where the ACL applies.</p> <p>Can be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A string, for example: "create"</li> <li>• An array of strings, for example: ["create", "update"]</li> </ul>

## Scopes

Scopes enable you to specify commonly-used queries that you can reference as method calls on a model.

The `scopes` key defines one or more scopes (named queries) for models. A scope maps a name to a predefined filter object to be used by the model's `find()` method; for example:

```
"scopes": {
  "vips": {"where": {"vip": true}},
  "top5": {"limit": 5, "order": "age"}
}
```

The snippet above defines two named queries for the model:

- vips: Find all model instances with vip flag set to true
- top5: Find top five model instances ordered by age

Within the scopes object, the keys are the names, and each value defines a filter object for [Model.find\(\)](#).

You can also define a scope programmatically using a model's `scope()` method, for example:

```
User.scope('vips', {where: {vip: true}});
User.scope('top5': {limit: 5, order: 'age'});
```

Now you can call the methods defined by the scopes; for example:

```
User.vips(function(err, vips) {
  ...
});
```

### Default scope

If you wish for a scope to be applied across all queries to the model, you can use the default scope for the model itself.

For example:

```
{
  "name": "Product",
  "properties": {
    ...
  }
  "scope": {
    "order": "name",
    "limit": 100
    "where": {
      "deleted": false
    }
  }
}
```

Now, any CRUD operation with a query parameter runs in the default scope will be applied; for example, assuming the above scope, a find operation such as

```
Product.find({offset: 0}, cb);
```

Becomes the equivalent of this:

```
Product.find({order: "name", offset: 0, limit: 100, where: {deleted: false}}, cb)
```

## Methods

You can declare remote methods here. Until this feature is implemented, you must declare remote methods in code; see [Remote methods](#).



This feature is not yet implemented.

## Indexes

Declare indexes for a model with the `indexes` property, for example:

```
"indexes": {
  "name_age_index": {
    "keys": { "name": 1, "age": -1 }
  },
  "age_index": { "age": -1 }
}
```

The snippet above creates two indexes for the declaring model:

- A composite index named `name_age_index` with two keys: `name` in ascending order and `age` in descending order.
- A simple index named `age_index` with one key: `age` in descending order.

The full syntax for an individual index is:

```
"<indexName>": {
  "keys": {
    "<key1>": 1,
    "<key2>": -1
  },
  "options": {
    "unique": true
  }
}
```



A key value of 1 specifies ascending order, and -1 specifies descending order.

If you don't need to specify any options, you can use a shortened form:

```
"<indexName>": {
  "<key1>": 1,
  "<key2>": -1
}
```

You can specify indexes at the model property level too, for example:

```
{
  "name": { "type": "String", "index": true },
  "email": { "type": "String", "index": { "unique": true } },
  "age": "Number"
}
```

This example creates two indexes: one for the `name` key and another one for the `email` key. The `email` index is unique.

## client directory

The `/client` directory is where you put client JavaScript, HTML, and CSS files.

Currently, [slc loopback](#) does not generate any files in this directory, except for a stub `README.md`.

For information on creating a client LoopBack application, see [LoopBack in the client](#).

## LoopBack types

- [Overview](#)
- [Array types](#)
  - [Array of objects](#)
- [Object types](#)

### Overview

Various LoopBack methods accept type descriptions, for example [remote methods](#) and [dataSource.createModel\(\)](#). The following is a list of supported types.

Type	Description	Example
null	JSON null	<code>null</code>
Boolean	JSON Boolean	<code>true</code>
Number	JSON number	<code>3.1415</code>
String	JSON string	<code>"StrongLoop"</code>
Object	JSON object or any type See <a href="#">Object types</a> below.	<code>{ "firstName": "John", "lastName": "Smith", "age": 25 }</code>
Array	JSON array See <a href="#">Array types</a> below.	<code>[ "one", 2, true ]</code>
Date	JavaScript <a href="#">Date object</a>	<code>new Date("December 17, 2003 03:24:00");</code>
Buffer	Node.js <a href="#">Buffer object</a>	<code>new Buffer(42);</code>
GeoPoint	LoopBack <a href="#">GeoPoint object</a>	<code>new GeoPoint({lat: 10.32424, lng: 5.84978});</code>

In general, a property will have ``undefined`` value if no explicit or default value is provided.



The type name is case-insensitive; so for example you can use either "Number" or "number."

### Array types

LoopBack supports array types as follows:

- `{emails: [String]}`
- `{"emails": ["String"]}`
- `{"emails": [{"type": "String", "length": 64}]}`
- `{"emails": "array"}` (a shorthand notation for `{"emails": ["any"]}`)

### Array of objects

Define an array of objects as follows (for example):

```
...
"Address": {
  "type": [
    "object"
  ],
  "required": true
}
...
```

## Object types

Use the Object type when you need to be able to accept values of different types, for example a string or an array.

A model often has properties that consist of other properties. For example, the user model can have an `address` property that in turn has properties such as `street`, `city`, `state`, and `zipCode`. LoopBack allows inline declaration of such properties, for example:

```
var UserModel = {
  firstName: String,
  lastName: String,
  address: {
    street: String,
    city: String,
    state: String,
    zipCode: String
  },
  ...
}
```

The value of the `address` is the definition of the `address` type, which can be also considered an "anonymous" model.

If you intend to reuse the `address` model, define it independently and reference it in the user model. For example:

```
var AddressModel = {
  street: String,
  city: String,
  state: String,
  zipCode: String
};

var Address = ds.define('Address', AddressModel);

var UserModel = {
  firstName: String,
  lastName: String,
  address: 'Address', // or address: Address
  ...
}

var User = ds.define('User', UserModel);
```



The user model has to reference the Address constructor or the model name - 'Address'.

## Valid names in LoopBack

In general, names of LoopBack applications, models, data sources, and so on must at a minimum be [valid JavaScript identifiers](#), with the additional restriction that the dollar sign (\$) is not allowed.

The rules for JavaScript identifiers are fairly broad (for example, you can use Unicode characters). However, as a best practice, follow these more restrictive guidelines:

- Begin names with a letter or underscore (\_). Don't begin a name with a number.
- Other characters can be letters, numbers, or underscore (\_).
- Application names can contain the dash, that is, the minus-sign character (-).



In general, LoopBack allows other characters in names, including other non-alphanumeric characters and Unicode characters. But using them is not recommended as a best practice. If you have questions, inquire on the [LoopBack Google Group](#).

It is also a good idea to avoid using JavaScript [reserved words](#) as names, since doing so may be problematic.

## LoopBack 2.0 release notes



The current version of loopback is .

For a list of the latest commits, see the [change log](#).

- [LoopBack generators](#)
- [Express 4.x](#)
- [New project structure](#)
  - [Support for external configuration](#)
- [Bootstrapper](#) was moved to its own module
- [Email connector](#) uses nodemailer 1.x
- The method `loopback.getModel` throws for unknown model names
- [Remote methods](#)
- [New loopback-component modules](#)

### LoopBack generators

For LoopBack 2.0, the Command-line tool, `slc loopback`, now uses Yeoman generators to create and scaffold applications. The `slc lb` and `slc example` commands are no longer available.

### Express 4.x

LoopBack 2.0 uses Express v4.x, which introduces some major backwards-incompatible changes. For more information, see [Express 4.0: New Features and Upgrading from 3.0](#). For instructions on migrating your existing app to LoopBack 2.0, see [Migrating apps to version 2.0](#).

### New project structure

LoopBack 2.0 has a [new canonical project structure](#). Although you're not required to use this structure, when you create an app with `slc loopback`, it will have the new structure. And if your app does have the new structure, you can use the Yeoman generators to add new models, properties, data sources, and access control settings.

### Support for external configuration

Applications now have greater flexibility in managing application configuration for multiple environments (for example: development, staging, and production). For example, you can have a `config.json` with development settings, `config.staging.json` with settings for the staging environment, and `config.production.json` with settings for production.

## New object PersistedModel

The base `Model` class is now specifically for defining data structures. `PersistedModel` is the default class for models defined with `app.model(name, ...)` and `models.json`.

Note: loopback 1.x comes with `DataModel`, which is a predecessor of `PersistedModel`. The `DataModel` is no longer available in loopback 2.0.

### Bootstrapper was moved to its own module

The implementation of `app.boot` was moved to the module `loopback-boot`. The 1.x versions are backwards compatible with `app.boot`, the



current 2.x versions are using the new project layout.

## Email connector uses nodemailer 1.x

See <http://www.nodemailer.com/> for details.

## The method `loopback.getModel` throws for unknown model names

In loopback 1.x, `loopback.getModel('unknown-name')` returns `undefined`. In loopback 2.x, the method throws an error instead. Use `loopback.findModel` if you need the old semantics.

## Remote methods

The function `loopback.remoteMethod()` is deprecated along with attaching remote configuration directly to model objects. Instead you should use the actual `SharedMethod` object.

Now, define a remote method by calling the `remoteMethod()` method on the model, for example, as follows:

```
// static
MyModel.greet = function(msg, cb) {
  cb(null, 'greetings... ' + msg);
}

MyModel.remoteMethod(
  'greet',
  {
    accepts: [{arg: 'msg', type: 'string'}],
    returns: {arg: 'greeting', type: 'string'}
  }
);
```



Remote instance method support is also now deprecated. Use static methods instead. If you absolutely need it, you can set `options.isStatic = false`. Remote instance methods will likely not be supported at all in future releases.

## New loopback-component modules

Several modules used by LoopBack have been renamed.

Version 1	Version 2
loopback-passport	loopback-component-passport
loopback-storage-service	loopback-component-storage
loopback-push-notification	loopback-component-push

## Migrating apps to version 2.0

- Runtime
  - [Update package.json](#)
  - [Use Express 4.x](#)
  - [Model definitions](#)
  - [Remote methods](#)
  - [Not exposing methods over REST](#)
  - [Troubleshooting](#)
- [Project layout](#)
  - [App settings](#)
  - [Data sources](#)
  - [Models](#)

- [Boot scripts](#)

This guide describes steps to upgrade your LoopBack 1.x project to LoopBack 2.0. There are two steps:

1. Upgrade the runtime to LoopBack 2.0.
2. Upgrade the project structure (layout) to the new convention.



The second step is optional. You can use the LoopBack 2.0 runtime while keeping the old 1.x project structure.

However, if you want to be able to use the `slc loopback command`, you need to move to the new project structure.

## Runtime

Follow the procedures in this section to run your application with the LoopBack 2.0 framework.

### Update package.json

The first step is to change the module versions in your `package.json`:

#### package.json

```
{
  "dependencies": {
    "loopback": "^2.0.0",
    "loopback-datasource-juggler": "^2.0.0"
  }
}
```

You must also update the names of modules that were renamed if they are in your `package.json`:

Version 1	Version 2
loopback-passport	loopback-component-passport
loopback-storage-service	loopback-component-storage
loopback-push-notification	loopback-component-push

If your application calls `app.boot()` (true for all projects scaffolded using `slc loopback`), add `loopback-boot@1.x` to your dependencies:

```
$ npm install --save-dev loopback-boot@1.x
```



Use `loopback-boot` version 1.x, unless you plan to change your application to use the 2.0 project layout. The `loopback-boot 2.x` module is for applications using the new layout.

## Use Express 4.x

LoopBack 2.0 uses ExpressJS v4.x, which introduces some major backwards-incompatible changes. For more information, see [ExpressJS 4.0: New Features and Upgrading from 3.0](#).

### Middleware

First of all, Express 4.x no longer bundles middleware: applications must install middleware. LoopBack 2.0 makes the transition easier by providing wrapper methods exposing the Express 3.x API and printing a helpful error message when the middleware module is not installed.

To determine all middleware you need to install, (repeatedly) run your application and follow the error messages; for example:

### An example error message

Error: The middleware `loopback.errorHandler` is not installed.  
Please run ``npm install --save errorhandler`` to fix the problem.

## Routing

The second important change is the removal of `app.router`.

### app.js (loopback 1.x)

```
// ...  
app.use(app.router);  
// ...
```

If your application adds custom Express routes, move all your route definitions out of the main app file and use `loopback.Router` to provide a middleware that can be mounted instead of `app.router`.

### app.js (loopback 2.x)

```
// ...  
app.use(require('./routes'));  
// ...
```

### routes/index.js (loopback 2.x)

```
var loopback = require('loopback');  
var router = module.exports = loopback.Router();  
  
// define your custom routes on the router object  
  
router.get('/custom', function(req, res, next) {  
  // ...  
});
```

If your application does not define any custom routes, you can remove the `app.router` code from your `app.js` file instead.

## Model definitions

In LoopBack 1.x, all models were descendants of `loopback.Model`.

In LoopBack 2.x, all models with CRUD operations have to descend from `PersistedModel`. When the model options do not specify a base model, `PersistedModel` is used by default. This is different from LoopBack 1.x, where models extend `Model` by default.

Projects started on LoopBack 1.x are affected in two ways:

1. Models attached to database datasources (for example, MySQL, Oracle, MongoDB) must extend `PersistedModel`. If your `models.js` on file specifies `Model` as the base class, you should either remove this option or change the value to `PersistedModel`.

#### model.json (database-backed model)

```
{
  "options": {
    "base": "PersistedModel"
  },
  "properties": {
  },
  "dataSource": "db"
}
```

2. Models attached to non-database-like datasources like REST or SOAP must explicitly specify `Model` as the base class.

#### models.json (model attached to a REST-connector datasource)

```
{
  "options": {
    "base": "Model"
  },
  "properties": {
  },
  "dataSource": "rest"
}
```

### Remote methods

You define remote methods differently in LoopBack 2.0. Instead of calling `loopback.remoteMethod()`, you call `remoteMethod()` on the model object itself. For details, see:

- [LoopBack 2.0 release notes](#)
- [Remote methods](#)

### Not exposing methods over REST

In LoopBack 1.x, to not expose (or "hide") a method via REST, you did, for example:

```
var Location = app.models.Location;
Location.deleteById.shared = false;
```

In version 2.0, you do, for example:

```
var isStatic = true;
MyModel.sharedClass.find('deleteById', isStatic).shared = false;
```

For more information, see [Exposing models over a REST API](#)

### Troubleshooting

**The REST API created for a database-backed model does not expose CRUD operations.**

Your model is extending `Model` instead of `PersistedModel`. See the section "Model definitions" above.

**The REST API created for a REST-connector based model incorrectly includes CRUD operations.**

Your model is extending `PersistedModel` instead of `Model`. See the section "Model definitions" above.

## Project layout

The first step is to update the loopback-boot dependency in project's `package.json` file.

### package.json

```
{
  "dependencies": {
    "loopback-boot": "^2.0.0"
  }
}
```

## App settings

The files with applications settings were renamed from `app.*` to `config.*`, and moved to `server` sub-directory. Rename and move the following files to upgrade a 1.x project for loopback-boot 2.x.

LoopBack 1.x	LoopBack 2.0
<code>app.json</code>	<code>server/config.json</code>
<code>app.local.json</code>	<code>server/config.local.json</code>
<code>app.local.js</code>	<code>server/config.local.js</code>

## Data sources

Data source configuration is the same in both 1.x and 2.x versions, but the configuration file was moved to `server` sub-directory.

LoopBack 1.x	LoopBack 2.0
<code>datasources.json</code>	<code>server/datasources.json</code>
<code>datasources.local.json</code>	<code>server/datasources.local.json</code>
<code>datasources.local.js</code>	<code>server/datasources.local.js</code>

## Models

Model definitions are now in JSON files in the `/common/models` directory.

The file `models.json` that contained both model definition and model configuration is no longer used. It is replaced by a new file, `server/model-config.json` that describes the models in the application. Models referenced in this file must be either built-in models (for example, `User`) or be custom models defined by a JSON file in the `common/models/` folder.

The folder `models/` has different semantics in 2.x than in 1.x. Instead of extending models already defined by `app.boot` and `models.json`, it provides a set of model definitions that do not depend on any application that may use them.

Perform the following steps to update a 1.x project for loopback-boot 2.x. All code samples are referring to the sample project described above.

1. Move all model definition metadata from `models.json` to new per-model JSON files in `common/models/` directory.

### models/car.json

```
{
  "name": "car",
  "properties": { "color": "string", }
}
```

Keep only the data source configuration in `models.json` (which you will rename to `/server/model-config.json`).

#### model-config.json

```
{ "car": { "dataSource": "db" } }
```

2. Change per-model JavaScript files to export a function that adds custom methods to the model class.

#### models/car.js

```
module.exports = function(Car) {  
  // Please note that other models might NOT be available using app.models yet  
  Car.prototype.honk = function(duration, cb) {  
    // make some noise for `duration` seconds  
    cb();  
  };  
};
```

3. Move `models.json` to `server/model-config.json`.
4. Add an entry to `server/model-config.json` to specify the paths where to look for model definitions.

#### models.json

```
{  
  "_meta": { "sources": [ "../common/models", "../models" ] },  
  "Car": { "dataSource": "db" }  
}
```

### Accessing the application object and other models

The [LoopBack application object](#) is not available at the time when the function exported from the custom model file is executed. However, it is available when custom model methods are executed.

#### common/models/my-model.js

```
module.exports = function(MyModel) {  
  MyModel.custom = function(cb) {  
    // Get the main app object created using  
    // var app = loopback();  
    var app = MyModel.app;  
    // Access another model configured in models-config.json  
    var User = app.models.User;  
    // etc.  
  };  
};
```

If your model's setup requires the application object (or other models), you have to defer it until the model was added to the application.

### common/models/my-model.js

```
module.exports = function(MyModel) {
  MyModel.on('attached', function() {
    var app = MyModel.app;
    // Execute the setup steps that require the app object
  });
};
```

### Attaching built-in models

Models provided by LoopBack, such as `User` or `Role`, are no longer automatically attached to default data sources. The data source configuration entry `defaultForType` is silently ignored.

You have to explicitly configure the built-in models that your application uses in the `server/model-config.json` file.

```
{
  "Role": { "dataSource": "db" }
}
```

### Boot scripts

The boot scripts from `boot` folder must be moved to `server/boot`.

In loopback 1.x, the recommended way of accessing the main application object was to use `require('../app')`. While this option is still supported by loopback-boot 2.0, it is recommended to export a function accepting the application object as the first argument.

### server/boot/authentication.js

```
module.exports = function enableAuthentication(server) {
  // enable authentication
  server.enableAuth();
};
```

## Multi-module bundles

Previously, you had to install and declare dependencies for individual modules; for example:

```
npm install -g strong-cli
npm install loopback --save
npm install loopback-connector-mongodb --save
```

This is flexible, but not very fun when you have to deal with a lot of modules – especially keeping straight what versions work together.

The [StrongLoop multi-module bundles](#):

- Simplify the dependency management, as now we have the aggregate modules serving as groups
- Ensure consistency: as the modules under a given parafait are tested to work together
- Get what you want without any more anything less
- Allow you to install more as you evolve your application.



When you do `npm install -g strongloop`, you may run into `peerDependency` conflicts for modules that are already installed globally either through `npm install -g` or `npm link`.

If this occurs, you may have conflicting versions of modules installed globally. Inspect your global Node module directory (typically `/usr`

`r/local/lib/node_modules`) and evaluate whether to remove the conflicting modules manually. Be aware that `slc` update will update them automatically.

Behind the scenes, each bundle module has a `package.json` that lists child modules as peer dependencies, as detailed below.

Module	Purpose	Peer Deps
<b>strongloop</b>	Installs all command-line utilities and tools for StrongLoop products that need to be installed globally. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>All StrongLoop Controller (slc) commands available</li><li>Yeoman generators to scaffold LoopBack applications through <code>slc loopback</code> (or, equivalently, <code>yo loopback</code>)</li><li>Angular SDK generator to automatically bind LoopBack models to native Angular models.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>"strong-cli": "2.x",</li><li>"generator-loopback": "0.x",</li><li>"loopback-sdk-angular-cli": "1.x"</li></ul>
<b>loopback-base</b>	Add models, the in-memory connector and db to your existing Node applications and expose as REST endpoints. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Build Express-based web applications using models that are server -ide rendered.</li><li>Can be added to any Node application to get model and REST capabilities without persistence methods.</li><li>Can be used to develop mock REST endpoints.</li><li>Build Angular based web applications pre-scaffolded through the LoopBack Angular SDK and CLI.</li><li>Build any single page application (SPA) web apps integrated to your choice of JavaScript client MVC (Backbone, Ember, Knockout, etc.) through REST.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>"loopback": "2.x",</li><li>"loopback-boot": "2.x",</li><li>"loopback-datasource-juggler": "2.x",</li><li>"loopback-explorer": "1.x",</li><li>"strong-remoting": "2.x"</li></ul>
<b>loopback-mobile</b>	In addition to loopback-base, adds pre-built mobile models and services to your application and also provides SDKs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Adds LoopBack component that adds pre-built mobile functionality like push notifications</li><li>Provides all client SDKs for mobile platforms including iOS, Android and Angular for hybrid or mobile web apps</li><li>Provides all open source LoopBack connectors to back end data sources and services</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>"loopback-framework": "2.x",</li><li>"loopback-sdk-ios": "1.x",</li><li>"loopback-sdk-android": "1.x",</li><li>"loopback-connectors": "2.x",</li><li>"loopback-component-push": "1.x",</li><li>"loopback-component-storage": "1.x"</li></ul>
<b>loopback-connectors</b>	Provides persistent methods to models so that you can do CRUD against data sources along with LoopBack open source connectors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Can be installed on top of loopback-base or loopback-mobile</li><li>Comes with all open source LoopBack connectors</li><li>Adds CRUD methods to models like <code>.find</code> and <code>save</code> with extensive filter support</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>"loopback-datasource-juggler": "2.x",</li><li>"loopback-connector": "1.x",</li><li>"loopback-connector-mongodb": "1.x",</li><li>"loopback-connector-mysql": "1.x",</li><li>"loopback-connector-postgresql": "1.x",</li><li>"loopback-connector-rest": "1.x"</li></ul>
<b>strongloop-connectors</b>	Provides commercial connectors to LoopBack based applications to access enterprise data sources and integrate with enterprise systems.: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Can be installed in addition to loopback-base or loopback-mobile</li><li>Can be used in conjunction with loopback-connectors</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>"loopback-datasource-juggler": "2.x",</li><li>"loopback-connector": "1.x",</li><li>"loopback-connector-mssql": "1.x",</li><li>"loopback-connector-oracle": "1.x",</li><li>"loopback-connector-soap": "1.x"</li></ul>
<b>strongloop-studio</b>	Studio - Product not yet released.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>"strong-studio": "2.x"</li></ul>
<b>strongloop-agent</b>	Monitoring / apm	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>"strong-agent": "0.x",</li><li>"strong-agent-statsd": "0.x"</li></ul>

## LoopBack known issues





This is the [list of currently-open issues](#) on GitHub, displayed 30 issues per page.

[Display next 30 issues](#)

Issue Number	Title	Description
--------------	-------	-------------

[Display next 30 issues](#)

## Latest updates

### 2015-09-03, Version 2.22.0

- Create stack-removing errorhandler middleware (Richard Walker)
- Update README.md (Rand McKinney)
- Allow EJS templates to use includes (Samuel Gaus)
- Fix options.to assertion message in user.verify (Farid Nouri Neshat)
- Upgrade Travis to container-based infrastructure (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- fix typo "PeristedModel" (Christoph)

### 2015-08-13, Version 2.21.0

- Add util methods to ACL and clean up related model resolutions (Raymond Feng)
- Promisify 'PersistedModel - replication' (Pradnya Baviskar)
- Promisify 'Application' model (Pradnya Baviskar)

### 2015-08-06, Version 2.20.0

- Allow methods filter for middleware config (Raymond Feng)
- Don't load Bluebird for createPromiseCallback (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- fix exit early when password is non-string closes #1437 (Berkeley Martinez)
- Promisify User model (Pradnya Baviskar)
- Add missing . to user model property descriptions (Richard Walker)

### 2015-07-28, Version 2.19.1

- Disable application model test for karma (Raymond Feng)
- Fix jsdocs for methods with where argument (Raymond Feng)
- Add link to createChangeStream docs (Ritchie Martori)

### 2015-07-09, Version 2.19.0

- Add PersistedModel.createChangeStream() (Ritchie Martori)
- Remove trailing whitespace from jsdoc (Ritchie Martori)
- Update model.js (Rand McKinney)
- Downgrade version of loopback-testing (Ritchie Martori)
- Auto-configure models required by app.enableAuth (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Add loadBuiltinModels flag to loopback(options) (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Add a unit-test for searchDefaultTokenKeys (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- access-token: add option "searchDefaultTokenKeys" (Owen Brotherhood)
- Fix the test case (Raymond Feng)
- Fix code standards issues (Tom Kirkpatrick)
- Add test case to highlight fatal error when trying to include a scoped relationship through a polymorphic relationship (Tom Kirkpatrick)
- add callback args for listByPrincipalType to jsdoc comment, pass explicit arguments to callback (Esco Obong)
- mark utility function as private (Esco Obong)
- fix linting errors (Esco Obong)
- fix lint errors (Esco Obong)
- consolidate Role methods roles, applications, and users into one, add query param to allow for pagination and restricting fields (Esco Obong)
- fix implementation of Role methods: users, roles, and applications (Esco Obong)

### 2015-05-13, Version 2.18.0

- Make the test compatible with latest juggler (Raymond Feng)

## 2015-05-12, Version 2.17.3

- Use the new `remoting.authorization` hook for check access (Ritchie Martori)
- Define remote methods via model settings/config (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Pass the full options object to the email send method in user verification process. (Alexandru Savin)
- `un-document _findLayerByHandler` (Rand McKinney)
- Gruntfile: disable debug & watch for CI builds (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Update devDependencies to the latest versions (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Remove trailing whitespace added by 242bcec (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Update `model.js` (Rand McKinney)

## 2015-04-28, Version 2.17.2

- Fix regression in `Model.getApp()` (Miroslav Bajtoš)

## 2015-04-28, Version 2.17.1

- Allow `dataSource === false` (Raymond Feng)
- Fix remoting metadata for `User.login#include` (Miroslav Bajtoš)

## 2015-04-21, Version 2.17.0

- Disable inclusion of `User.accessTokens` (Raymond Feng)
- Upgrade test fixtures to use LB 2.x layout (Raymond Feng)

## 2015-04-17, Version 2.16.3

- Rework global registry to be per-module-instance (Miroslav Bajtoš)

## 2015-04-17, Version 2.16.1

- Add back loopback properties like `modelBuilder` (Miroslav Bajtoš)

## 2015-04-16, Version 2.16.0

- Expose the `filter` argument for `findById` (Raymond Feng)
- fixed the missing `'.'` in various description fields. (Edmond Lau)
- Conflict resolution and Access control (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Fix the typo (Raymond Feng)
- Fix `PersistedModel._defineChangeModel` (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- `AccessControl` for change replication (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- test: remove global `autoAttach` (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Add support for app level Model isolation (Ritchie Martori)
- Implement `ModelCtor.afterRemoteError` (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Code cleanup, add `Model._runWhenAttachedToApp` (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Refactor Model and `PersistedModel` registration (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Fix the style issue (Raymond Feng)
- Add missing error handlers to `checkpoints()` (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Fix where param format (Rand McKinney)
- Test `embedsOne` CRUD methods (Fabien Franzen)

## 2015-04-01, Version 2.15.0

- Improve error handling in replication (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Add `loopback.runInContext` (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Fix style issues (Raymond Feng)
- Document the new third callback arg of `replicate()` (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Fix API doc for `updateAll/deleteAll` (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Import subset of `underscore.string` scripts only (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Use `ctx.instance` provided by "after delete" hook (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Add conflict resolution API (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Detect 3rd-party changes made during replication (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Ability to pass in custom verification token generator This commit adds the ability for the developer to use a custom token generator function for the `user.verify(...)` method. By default, the system will still use the `crypto.randomBytes()` method if no option is provided.

(jakerella)

- Remove unnecessary delay in tests. (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Update README.md (Simon Ho)
- Remove duplicate cb func from getRoles and other doc cleanup (crandmck)
- Enhance the token middleware to support current user literal (Raymond Feng)
- Handling owner being a relation/function (Benjamin Boudreau)
- Run replication tests in the browser too (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Add replication tests for conflict resolution (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Fix an assertion broke by recent chai upgrade. (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Static ACL support array of properties now (ulion)
- Add more integration tests for replication (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Prevent more kinds of false replication conflicts (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Upgrade deps (Raymond Feng)
- Fix "Issues" link in readme (Simon Ho)
- Add more debug logs to replication (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Fixes #1158. (Jason Sturges)
- Checkpoint: start with seq=1 instead of seq=0 (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Return new checkpoints in callback of replicate() (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Create a remote checkpoint during replication too (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Replication: fix checkpoint-related race condition (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Support different "since" for source and target (Miroslav Bajtoš)

## 2015-03-03, Version 2.14.0

- Replace deprecated hooks with Operation hooks (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- test: don't warn about running deprecated paths (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- karma conf: prevent timeouts on Travis CI (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Pass options from User.login to createAccessToken (Raymond Feng)
- Config option to disable legacy explorer routes Setting legacyExplorer to false in the loopback config will disable the routes /routes and /models made available in loopback.rest. The deprecate module has been added to the project with a reference added for the legacyExplorer option as it is no longer required by loopback-explorer. Tests added to validate functionality of disabled and enabled legacy explorer routes. (Ron Edgecomb)
- test: setup GUID for all models tracking changes (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Change tracking requires a string id set to GUID (Miroslav Bajtoš)

## 2015-02-25, Version 2.13.0

- Add a workaround to avoid conflicts with NewRelic (Raymond Feng)
- Fix "User.confirm" to always call afterRemote hook (Pradnya Baviskar)
- Skip hashing password if it's already hashed (Raymond Feng)
- travis.yml: drop 0.11, add 0.12 and iojs (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Add docs for settings per #1069 (crandmck)
- Fix change detection & tracking (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Minor doc fix (Ritchie Martori)
- Upgrade jscs to ~1.11 via grunt-jscs ^1.5 (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Remove redundant dev-dep serve-favicon (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Fix test broken by recent juggler changes (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Fix coding style issue (Raymond Feng)
- Remove trailing spaces (Raymond Feng)
- Fix for issue 1099. (zane)
- Fix API docs per #1041 (crandmck)
- Fix API docs to add proper callback doc per #1041 (crandmck)
- Fix #1080 - domain memory leak. (Samuel Reed)
- Document user settings (Ritchie Martori)
- Add wiki references to readme (Simon Ho)

## 2015-02-03, Version 2.12.1

- Map not found to 404 for hasOne (Raymond Feng)

## 2015-02-03, Version 2.12.0

- Fix the test case (Raymond Feng)
- Enable remoting for hasOne relations (Raymond Feng)
- README: add Gitter badge (Miroslav Bajtoš)

## 2015-01-27, Version 2.11.0

- Document options for `persistedmodel.save()` (Rand McKinney)
- Add test case to demonstrate url-encoded http path (Pradnya Baviskar)
- Fix JSdocs per #888 (crandmck)
- Add test case for loopback issue #698 (Pradnya Baviskar)
- Remove usages of deprecated `req.param()` (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Add error code property to known error responses. (Ron Edgecomb)
- test: use 127.0.0.1 instead of localhost (Ryan Graham)
- Extend AccessToken to parse Basic auth headers (Ryan Graham)
- tests: fix Bearer token test (Ryan Graham)
- don't send queries to the DB when no changes are detected (bitmage)

## 2015-01-16, Version 2.10.2

- Make sure EXECUTE access type matches READ or WRITE (Raymond Feng)

## 2015-01-15, Version 2.10.1

- Optimize the creation of handlers for rest (Raymond Feng)
- Add a link to gitter chat (Raymond Feng)
- Added context middleware (Rand McKinney)
- Use `User.remoteMethod` instead of `loopbacks` method This is needed for loopback-connector-remote authorization. Addresses <https://github.com/strongloop/loopback/issues/622>. (Berkeley Martinez)

## 2015-01-07, Version 2.10.0

- Revert the peer dep change to avoid npm complaints (Raymond Feng)
- Update strong-remoting dep (Raymond Feng)
- Allow `accessType` per remote method (Raymond Feng)
- API and REST tests added to ensure complete and valid credentials are supplied for verified error message to be returned - tests added as suggested and fail under previous version of User model - `strongloop/loopback#931` (Ron Edgecomb)
- Require valid login credentials before verified email check. - `strongloop/loopback#931`. (Ron Edgecomb)

## 2015-01-07, Version 2.9.0

- Update juggler dep (Raymond Feng)
- Fix Geo test cases (Raymond Feng)
- Allow `User.hashPassword/validatePassword` to be overridden (Raymond Feng)

## 2015-01-07, Version 2.8.8

- Fix context middleware to preserve domains (Pham Anh Tuan)
- Additional password reset unit tests for API and REST - `strongloop/loopback#944` (Ron Edgecomb)
- Small formatting update to have consistency with identical logic in other areas. - `strongloop/loopback#944` (Ron Edgecomb)
- Simplify the API test for `invalidCredentials` (removed create), move above REST calls for better grouping of tests - `strongloop/loopback#944` (Ron Edgecomb)
- Force request to send body as string, this ensures headers aren't automatically set to `application/json` - `strongloop/loopback#944` (Ron Edgecomb)
- Ensure error checking logic is in place for all REST calls, expand formatting for consistency with existing instances. - `strongloop/loopback#944` (Ron Edgecomb)
- Correct `invalidCredentials` so that it differs from `validCredentialsEmailVerified`, unit test now passes as desired. - `strongloop/loopback#944` (Ron Edgecomb)
- Update to demonstrate unit test is actually failing due to incorrect values of `invalidCredentials` - `strongloop/loopback#944` (Ron Edgecomb)
- fix jsco warning (Clark Wang)
- fix `nestRemoting` is nesting hooks from other relations (Clark Wang)

## 2015-01-06, Version 2.8.7

- Change `urlNotFound.js` to `url-not-found.js` (Rand McKinney)
- Add `lib/server-app.js` (Rand McKinney)
- package: add versioned `sl-blip` dependency (Ryan Graham)
- fix `User.settings.ttl` can't be overridden in sub model (Clark Wang)
- Fix `Change.getCheckpointModel()` giving new models each call (Farid Neshat)
- Update `README.md` (Rand McKinney)

## 2014-12-15, Version 2.8.6

- server-app: make `_sortLayersByPhase` stable (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Rework phased middleware, fix several bugs (Miroslav Bajtoš)

## 2014-12-12, Version 2.8.5

- fix jshint errors (Clark Wang)
- test if cb exists (Clark Wang)
- fix nested remoting function throwing error will crash app (Clark Wang)
- Fix bcrypt issues for browserify (Raymond Feng)

## 2014-12-08, Version 2.8.4

- Allow native bcrypt for performance (Raymond Feng)

## 2014-12-08, Version 2.8.3

- Remove unused underscore dependency (Ryan Graham)

## 2014-11-27, Version 2.8.2

- Prepend slash for nested remoting paths (Clark Wang)
- fix jscs errors (Rob Halff)
- enable jshint for tests (Rob Halff)
- permit some globals (Rob Halff)
- 'done' is not defined (Rob Halff)
- 'memory' is already defined (Rob Halff)
- singlequote, semicolon & `/*jshint -W030 */` (Rob Halff)

## 2014-11-25, Version 2.8.1

- Update docs.json (Rand McKinney)
- Update favicon.js (Rand McKinney)

## 2014-11-19, Version 2.8.0

- Expose more loopback middleware for require (Raymond Feng)
- Scope app middleware to a list of paths (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Update CONTRIBUTING.md (Alex Voitu)
- Fix the model name for hasMany/through relation (Raymond Feng)
- Fixing the model attach (wfgomes)
- Minor: update jsdoc for `PersistedModel.updateAll` (Alex Voitu)
- AccessToken: optional `options` in `findForRequest` (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- server-app: improve jsdoc comments (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- server-app: middleware API improvements (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- typo of port server (wfgomes)
- Move middleware sources to `server/middleware` (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- app.middleware: verify serial exec of handlers (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Simplify `app.defineMiddlewarePhases` (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Make sure loopback has all properties from express (Raymond Feng)
- Implement `app.defineMiddlewarePhases` (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Implement `app.middlewareFromConfig` (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- middleware/token: store the token in current ctx (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Fix `loopback.getCurrentContext` (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Update chai to ^1.10.0 (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- package: fix deps (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Middleware phases - initial implementation (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Allows ACLs/settings in model config (Raymond Feng)
- Remove context middleware per Ritchie (Rand McKinney)
- Add API doc for context middleware - see #337 (crandmck)
- Update persisted-model.js (Rand McKinney)
- rest middleware: clean up context config (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Move `context` example to a standalone app (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Enable the context middleware from `loopback.rest` (Raymond Feng)

- Add context propagation middleware (Raymond Feng)
- Changes to JSdoc comments (Rand McKinney)
- Reorder classes alphabetically in each section (Rand McKinney)
- common: coding style cleanup (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Coding style cleanup (Gruntfile, lib) (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Enable jscs for lib, fix style violations (Rob Half)
- Add access-context.js to API doc (Rand McKinney)
- Remove doc for debug function (Rand McKinney)
- Update registry.js (Rand McKinney)
- Fix the jsdoc for User.login (Raymond Feng)
- Deleted instantiation of new Change model. This PR removes the instantiation of a new change model as models return from Change.find are already instances of Change. This solves the duplicate Id issue #649 (Berkeley Martinez)
- Expose path to the built-in favicon file (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Add API docs for loopback.static. (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Add test for remoting.rest.supportedTypes (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Revert "rest handler options" (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- REST handler options. (Guilherme Cirne)
- The elapsed time in milliseconds can be 0 (less than 1 ms) (Raymond Feng)

## 2014-10-27, Version 2.7.0

- Bump version (Raymond Feng)
- User: custom email headers in verify (Juan Pizarro)
- Add realm support (Raymond Feng)
- Make sure GET /:id/exists returns 200 {exists: true|false} <https://github.com/strongloop/loopback/issues/679> (Raymond Feng)
- Adjust id handling to deal with 0 and null (Chris S)
- Force principalId to be a string. (Chris S)

## 2014-10-23, Version 2.6.0

- User: fix confirm permissions (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Use === to compare with 0 (Rob Half)
- add laxbreak option (Rob Half)
- use singlequotes (Rob Half)
- split jshint task for test & lib (Rob Half)
- allow comma first style and increase line length (Rob Half)
- add missing semicolons (Rob Half)
- Support per-model and per-handler remoting options (Fabien Franzen)
- Fix JSdoc for registerResolver (Rand McKinney)
- lib/application: improve URL building algo (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Fix findById callback signature (Rand McKinney)
- JSdoc fixes (Rand McKinney)
- Fix places using undefined variables (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Clean up jsdoc comments (crandmck)
- models: move Change LDL def into a json file (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- models: move Checkpoint LDL def into a json file (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- models: move Role LDL def into a json file (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- models: move RoleMapping def into its own files (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- models: move ACL LDL def into a json file (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- models: move Scope def into its own files (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- models: move AccessToken LDL def into a json file (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- models: move Application LDL def into a json file (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- models: move Email LDL def into email.json (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- models: move User LDL def into user.json (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- test: run more tests in the browser (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- test: verify exported models (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- test: remove infinite timeout (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Auto-load and register built-in Checkpoint model (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Skip static ACL entries that don't match the property (Raymond Feng)
- Dismantle lib/models. (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Register built-in models in a standalone file (Miroslav Bajtoš)

## 2014-10-10, Version 2.4.1

- models/change: fix id property definition (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Added class properties jsdoc. (Rand McKinney)
- Fixed up JS Doc (Rand McKinney)
- Update contribution guidelines (Ryan Graham)

- Document ACL class properties (Rand McKinney)
- Add properties JSdoc. (Rand McKinney)
- Move looback remote connector to npm module (Krishna Raman)
- Update strong-remoting version (Ritchie Martori)
- Document user class properties (Ritchie Martori)
- Add Model.disableRemoteMethod() (Ritchie Martori)

## 2014-09-12, Version 2.2.0

- Bump versions (Raymond Feng)
- PersistedModel: add remote method aliases (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Fix last commit, which misplaced an ACL. Move the ACL inside "acls". Signed-off-by: Carey Richard Murphey [rich@murphey.org](mailto:rich@murphey.org) (zxvv)
- Add an ACL to User, to allow everyone to execute User.passwordReset(). (zxvv)
- package: add "web" keyword (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Fix require (Fabien Franzen)
- Fix coercion for remoting on vanilla models (Ritchie Martori)
- user#login include server crash fix (Alexander Ryzhikov)
- Update model.js (Rand McKinney)
- Restrict: only hasManyThrough relation can have additional properties (Clark Wang)
- Restrict that only hasManyThrough can have additional properties (Clark Wang)
- Add tests for hasManyThrough link with data (Clark Wang)
- Support data field as body for link operation (Clark Wang)
- Tiny fix: correct url format (Fabien Franzen)
- Fix embedsMany/findById to return proper 404 response (Fabien Franzen)
- registry: warn when dataSource is not specified (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Only validate dataSource when defined (Fixes #482) (Ritchie Martori)
- Fix tests (Fabien Franzen)
- Enable remoting for embedsOne relation (Jaka Hudoklin)
- Allow 'where' argument for scoped count API (Fabien Franzen)
- Account for undefined before/afterListeners (Fabien Franzen)
- added test and fixed changing passed in object within ctor (britztopher)
- adding the ability to use single or multiple email transports in datasources.json file (britztopher)
- added the ability to use an array of transports or just a single trnasport (britztopher)

## 2014-08-18, Version 2.1.3

- Bump version (Raymond Feng)
- Make sure AccessToken extends from PersistedModel (Raymond Feng)
- add count to relations and scopes (Jaka Hudoklin)
- Remove req.resume from app.enableAuth (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Fix accessToken property docs (Ritchie Martori)

## 2014-08-08, Version 2.1.1

- Bump version (Raymond Feng)
- Make sure scoped methods are remoted (Raymond Feng)
- Pass in remotingContext for ACL (Raymond Feng)
- Fix reference to app (Raymond Feng)
- Don't assume relation.modelTo in case of polymorphic belongsTo (Fabien Franzen)

## 2014-08-07, Version 2.1.0

- Bump version (Raymond Feng)
- Fix doc for the EXECUTE (Raymond Feng)
- Fix "callback" by "callback" in doc (Steve Grosbois)
- Inherit hooks when nesting (Fabien Franzen)
- Changed options.path to options.http.path (Fabien Franzen)
- filterMethod can also be a direct callback (Fabien Franzen)
- filterMethod option (fn) to filter nested remote methods (Fabien Franzen)
- Fix test to be more specific (Fabien Franzen)
- Implement Model.nestRemoting (Fabien Franzen)
- Allow custom relation path (http) - enable hasOne remoting access (Fabien Franzen)
- Expose Model.exists over HTTP HEAD (Raymond Feng)
- Return data source for app.dataSource() (Raymond Feng)
- Fix typo in README (Ritchie Martori)
- Integration test: referencesMany (Fabien Franzen)
- Integration test: embedsMany (Fabien Franzen)
- Fix jsdoc for remoteMethod() (Rand McKinney)

- Map exists to HEAD for REST (Raymond Feng)
- Build the email verification url from app context (Raymond Feng)

## 2014-07-27, Version 2.0.2

- Fix <https://github.com/strongloop/loopback/issues/413> (Raymond Feng)
- Update test case to remove usage of deprecated express apis (Raymond Feng)

## 2014-07-26, Version 2.0.1

- Bump version (Raymond Feng)
- updated LB module diagram (altsang)
- Update package.json (Al Tsang)
- Updates for 2.0 (crandmck)
- Update module diagram again (crandmck)
- Update module diagram (crandmck)
- Emit a 'modelRemoted' event by app.model() (Raymond Feng)
- Fix remoting types for related models (Raymond Feng)
- Fix for email transports (Raymond Feng)
- Remove the link to obsolete wiki page to favor loopback.io (Raymond Feng)

## 2014-07-22, Version 2.0.0

- Enhance the base model assertions (Raymond Feng)
- Report error for User.confirm() (Raymond Feng)
- Set up the base model based on the connector types (Raymond Feng)
- express-middleware: improve error message (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Remove `app.docs()` (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Remove `loopback.compat.usePluralNamesForRemoting` (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Validate username uniqueness (Jaka Hudoklin)
- Add descriptions for custom methods on user model (Raymond Feng)
- Move remoting metadata from juggler to loopback (Raymond Feng)
- Upgrade to nodemailer 1.0.1 (Raymond Feng)
- Enhance the error message (Raymond Feng)

## 2014-07-16, Version 2.0.0-beta7

- Bump version (Raymond Feng)
- Remove unused dep (Raymond Feng)
- Bump version and update deps (Raymond Feng)
- Upgrade to `loopback-datasource-juggler@1.7.0` (Raymond Feng)
- Refactor modelBuilder to registry and set up default model (Raymond Feng)
- Add a test case for credentials/challenges (Raymond Feng)
- Fix credentials/challenges types (Raymond Feng)
- Update modules for examples (Raymond Feng)
- Split out aliases for deleteById and destroyAll functions for jsdoc. (crandmck)
- Remove unused deps (Raymond Feng)
- Refactor email verification tests into a new group (Raymond Feng)
- Fix the typo (Raymond Feng)
- Add an option to honor emailVerified (Raymond Feng)
- Update module list in README (Raymond Feng)
- Refine the test cases for relation REST APIs (Raymond Feng)
- test: add check of Model remote methods (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Adjust the REST mapping for add/remove (Raymond Feng)
- Add a test case for hasMany through add/remove remoting (Raymond Feng)
- Fix the typo and add Bearer token support (Raymond Feng)
- Update README (Raymond Feng)
- Fix misleading token middleware documentation (Aleksandr Tsertkov)

## 2014-07-15, Version 2.0.0-beta6

- 2.0.0-beta6 (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- lib/application: publish Change models to REST API (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- models/change: fix typo (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- checkpoint: fix `current()` (Miroslav Bajtoš)



## 2014-07-03, Version 2.0.0-beta5

- 2.0.0-beta5 (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- app: update url on listening event (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Fix "ReferenceError: loopback is not defined" in registry.memory(). (Guilherme Cirne)
- Invalid Access Token return 401 (Karl Mikkelsen)
- Bump version and update deps (Raymond Feng)
- Update debug setting (Raymond Feng)
- Mark `app.boot` as deprecated. (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Update link to doc (Rand McKinney)

## 2014-06-26, Version 2.0.0-beta4

- 2.0.0-beta4 (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- package: upgrade juggler to 2.0.0-beta2 (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Fix loopback in PhantomJS, fix karma tests (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Allow peer to use beta2 of datasource-juggler (and future) (Laurent)
- Remove `app.boot` (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Update juggler dep (Raymond Feng)
- Remove `relationNameFor` (Raymond Feng)
- Fix a slowdown caused by mutation of an incoming `accessToken` option. (Samuel Reed)
- Fix remote method definition in client-server example (Ritchie Martori)
- package: the next version will be a minor version (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- lib/registry: `getModel` throws, add `findModel` (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- lib/application: Remove forgotten `loopback` ref (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Allow customization of ACL http status (Karl Mikkelsen)
- Expose loopback as `app.loopback` (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Remove loopback-explorer from dev deps (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- registry: export `DataSource` class (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- registry: fix non-unique default `datasources` (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- lib/registry fix jsdoc comments (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- test: add debug logs (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- refactor: extract runtime and registry (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Remove `assertIsModel` and `isDataSource` (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Add `createModelFromConfig` and `configureModel()` (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Make `app.get/app.set` available in browser (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- package: upgrade Mocha to 1.20 (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- test: fix ACL integration tests (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- JSDoc fixes (crandmck)
- Add a test case (Raymond Feng)
- Set the role id to be generated (Raymond Feng)
- Add `loopback.version` back (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Tidy up `app.model()` to remove duplicate & recursive call (Raymond Feng)
- Register existing model to `app.models` during `app.model()` (Raymond Feng)
- JSDoc cleanup (crandmck)
- Bump version so that we can republish (Raymond Feng)
- Bump version (Raymond Feng)
- Use constructor to reference the model class (Raymond Feng)
- Allow the creation of access token to be overridden (Raymond Feng)
- Fixup JSDocs; note: `updateOrCreate` function alias pulled out on separate line for docs (crandmck)
- lib/loopback: fix jsdoc comments (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Rename `DataModel` to `PersistedModel` (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Added middleware and API doc headings (crandmck)
- Update JSDoc (crandmck)
- Update docs.json (Rand McKinney)
- Removed old .md files from API docs (Rand McKinney)
- Delete `api-model.md` (Rand McKinney)
- Delete `api-datasource.md` (Rand McKinney)
- Delete `api-geopoint.md` (Rand McKinney)
- Remove duplicate doc content (Rand McKinney)
- Add note about unavailable args to remote hooks. (Rand McKinney)
- Undo incorrect changes I made – per Ritchie (Rand McKinney)
- Update strong-remoting to 1.5 (Ritchie Martori)
- Remove "user" as arg to `beforeRemote(..)` (Rand McKinney)
- Exclude express-middleware from browser bundle (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- !fixup only set `ctx.accessType` when `sharedMethod` is available (Ritchie Martori)
- Refactor ACL to allow for `methodNames` / aliases (Ritchie Martori)
- test: Remove forgotten call of `console.log()` (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Update README and the module diagram (Raymond Feng)
- Clean up express middleware dependencies (Raymond Feng)

- Update strong-remoting dep (Raymond Feng)
- Rename express-wrapper to express-middleware (Raymond Feng)
- Clean up the tests (Raymond Feng)
- Upgrade to Express 4.x (Raymond Feng)
- Deprecate app.boot, remove app.installMiddleware (Miroslav Bajtoš)

## 2014-05-28, Version 2.0.0-beta3

- 2.0.0-beta3 (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- package.json: fix malformed json (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- 2.0.0-beta2 (Ritchie Martori)
- 2.0.0-beta1 (Ritchie Martori)
- Add RC version (Ritchie Martori)
- Depend on [juggler@1.6.0](#) (Ritchie Martori)
- !fixup Mark DAO methods as delegate (Ritchie Martori)
- Ensure changes are created in sync (Ritchie Martori)
- Remove un-rectify-able changes (Ritchie Martori)
- Rework change conflict detection (Ritchie Martori)
- - Use the RemoteObjects class to find remote objects instead of creating a cache - Use the SharedClass class to build the remote connector - Change default base model from Model to DataModel - Fix DataModel errors not logging correct method names - Use the strong-remoting 1.4 resolver API to resolve dynamic remote methods (relation api) - Remove use of fn object for storing remoting meta data (Ritchie Martori)
- In progress: rework remoting meta-data (Ritchie Martori)
- Add test for conflicts where both deleted (Ritchie Martori)
- Rework replication test (Ritchie Martori)
- bump juggler version (Ritchie Martori)
- Change#getModel(), Doc cleanup, Conflict event (Ritchie Martori)
- Add error logging for missing data (Ritchie Martori)
- Fix issues when using MongoDB for replication (Ritchie Martori)
- !fixup Test cleanup (Ritchie Martori)
- Move replication implementation to DataModel (Ritchie Martori)
- All tests passing (Ritchie Martori)
- !fixup use DataModel instead of Model for all data based models (Ritchie Martori)
- fixup! unskip failing tests (Ritchie Martori)
- !fixup RemoteConnector tests (Ritchie Martori)
- Add missing test/model file (Ritchie Martori)
- Refactor DataModel remoting (Ritchie Martori)
- !fixup .replicate() argument handling (Ritchie Martori)
- Fixes for e2e replication / remote connector tests (Ritchie Martori)
- Add replication e2e tests (Ritchie Martori)
- fixup! Assert model exists (Ritchie Martori)
- fixup! rename Change.track => rectifyModelChanges (Ritchie Martori)
- Add model tests (Ritchie Martori)
- Add replication example (Ritchie Martori)
- Add Checkpoint model and Model replication methods (Ritchie Martori)
- Add Change model (Ritchie Martori)

## 2014-07-16, Version 1.10.0

- Remove unused dep (Raymond Feng)
- Bump version and update deps (Raymond Feng)
- Upgrade to [loopback-datasource-juggler@1.7.0](#) (Raymond Feng)
- Refactor modelBuilder to registry and set up default model (Raymond Feng)
- Add a test case for credentials/challenges (Raymond Feng)
- Fix credentials/challenges types (Raymond Feng)
- Update modules for examples (Raymond Feng)
- Split out aliases for deleteById and destroyAll functions for jsdoc. (crandmck)
- Remove unused deps (Raymond Feng)
- Refactor email verification tests into a new group (Raymond Feng)
- Fix the typo (Raymond Feng)
- Add an option to honor emailVerified (Raymond Feng)
- Update module list in README (Raymond Feng)
- Refine the test cases for relation REST APIs (Raymond Feng)
- test: add check of Model remote methods (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Adjust the REST mapping for add/remove (Raymond Feng)
- Add a test case for hasMany through add/remove remoting (Raymond Feng)
- Fix the typo and add Bearer token support (Raymond Feng)
- Update README (Raymond Feng)
- Fix misleading token middleware documentation (Aleksandr Tsertkov)
- app: update url on listening event (Miroslav Bajtoš)

## 2014-06-27, Version 1.9.1

- Fix "ReferenceError: loopback is not defined" in registry.memory(). (Guilherme Cirne)
- Invalid Access Token return 401 (Karl Mikkelsen)

## 2014-06-25, Version 1.9.0

- Bump version and update deps (Raymond Feng)
- Update debug setting (Raymond Feng)
- Mark `app.boot` as deprecated. (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Update link to doc (Rand McKinney)
- Update juggler dep (Raymond Feng)
- Remove relationNameFor (Raymond Feng)
- Fix a slowdown caused by mutation of an incoming accessToken option. (Samuel Reed)
- package: the next version will be a minor version (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- lib/application: Remove forgotten `loopback` ref (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Allow customization of ACL http status (Karl Mikkelsen)
- Expose loopback as `app.loopback` (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- registry: export DataSource class (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- registry: fix non-unique default dataSources (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- lib/registry fix jsdoc comments (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- test: add debug logs (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- refactor: extract runtime and registry (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Remove assertIsModel and isDataSource (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Add createModelFromConfig and configureModel() (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Make app.get/app.set available in browser (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- package: upgrade Mocha to 1.20 (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- test: fix ACL integration tests (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- JSDoc fixes (crandmck)
- Add a test case (Raymond Feng)
- Set the role id to be generated (Raymond Feng)
- Tidy up app.model() to remove duplicate & recursive call (Raymond Feng)
- Register existing model to app.models during app.model() (Raymond Feng)
- JSDoc cleanup (crandmck)
- Bump version so that we can republish (Raymond Feng)

## 2014-06-09, Version 1.8.6

- Bump version (Raymond Feng)
- Use constructor to reference the model class (Raymond Feng)
- Allow the creation of access token to be overridden (Raymond Feng)
- Fixup JSDocs; note: updateOrCreate function alias pulled out on separate line for docs (crandmck)
- Added middleware and API doc headings (crandmck)
- Update JSDoc (crandmck)
- Update docs.json (Rand McKinney)
- Removed old .md files from API docs (Rand McKinney)
- Delete api-model.md (Rand McKinney)
- Delete api-datasource.md (Rand McKinney)
- Delete api-geopoint.md (Rand McKinney)
- Remove duplicate doc content (Rand McKinney)
- Add note about unavailable args to remote hooks. (Rand McKinney)
- Undo incorrect changes I made – per Ritchie (Rand McKinney)
- Update strong-remoting to 1.5 (Ritchie Martori)
- Remove "user" as arg to beforeRemote(..) (Rand McKinney)
- !fixup only set ctx.accessType when sharedMethod is available (Ritchie Martori)
- Refactor ACL to allow for methodName / aliases (Ritchie Martori)
- Update README and the module diagram (Raymond Feng)
- app: implement `connector()` and `connectors` (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Fix a typo in `app.boot`. (Samuel Reed)
- Make app.datasources unique per app instance (Miroslav Bajtoš)

## 2014-05-27, Version 1.8.5

- Bump version (Raymond Feng)
- Add postgresql to the keywords (Raymond Feng)
- updated package.json with SOAP and framework keywords (altsang)
- updated package.json with keywords and updated description (Raymond Feng)

## 2014-05-27, Version 1.8.4

- Add more keywords (Raymond Feng)
- Bump version (Raymond Feng)
- app: flatten model config (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Fix the test for mocha 1.19.0 (Raymond Feng)
- Update dependencies (Raymond Feng)
- Added more keywords (Rand McKinney)
- Update README and the module diagram (Raymond Feng)
- added "REST API" keyword (Rand McKinney)
- added 'web' and 'framework' keywords (Rand McKinney)
- Make image URL absolute for npmjs.org. (Rand McKinney)
- Use common syntax for juggler dep (Ritchie Martori)
- Modify `loopback.rest` to include `loopback.token` (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Relax validation object test (Ritchie Martori)
- Make juggler version a bit more strict to avoid pulling in breaking changes (Ritchie Martori)
- Change module diagram to local png (Rand McKinney)
- Add LoopBack modules diagram (crandmck)
- Update README.md (sumitha)
- Update README.md (Al Tsang)
- added github prefix to path (altsang)
- removed githalytics, added sl-beacon (altsang)
- Update README and license link (Raymond Feng)
- Add CLA (Raymond Feng)

## 2014-05-16, Version 1.8.2

- test/geo-point: relax too precise assertions (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Fix typo "Unkown" => "Unknown" (Adam Schwartz)
- Support all 1.x versions of datasource-juggler (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Remove validation methods, now covered in JSDoc. (Rand McKinney)
- Remove docs/api-geopoint.md from docs (Rand McKinney)
- Removed docs/api-datasource.md (Rand McKinney)
- Update README.md (Al Tsang)
- Update README.md (Rand McKinney)
- Move content from wiki on LB modules. (Rand McKinney)
- Add homepage to package.json (Ritchie Martori)
- Fix bug in User#resetPassword (haio)
- Fix client-server example (Ritchie Martori)
- Ensure roleId and principalId to be string in Role#isInRole (haio)
- typo (haio)
- Add more check on principalId (haio)
- Convert principalId to String (haio)

## 2014-04-24, Version 1.8.1

- Bump version (Raymond Feng)
- Fix constructor JSDoc (crandmck)
- Remove intermediate section headers from nav (crandmck)
- Rename the method so that it won't conflict with Model.checkAccess (Raymond Feng)
- Fix/remove ctx.user documentation (Ritchie Martori)
- Documentation cleanup (Ritchie Martori)
- Fix save implementation for remoting connector (Ritchie Martori)
- Add basic Remote connector e2e test (Ritchie Martori)
- Bump juggler version (Ritchie Martori)
- Add test for remoting nested hidden properties (Ritchie Martori)
- Fix #229 (Whitespaces removed) (Alex Pica)
- Add nodemailer to browser ignores (Ritchie Martori)
- Add an assertion to the returned store object (Raymond Feng)
- Add an integration test for belongsTo remoting (Raymond Feng)
- Depend on strong-remoting 1.3 (Ritchie Martori)
- Support host / port in Remote connector (Ritchie Martori)
- Throw useful errors in DataModel stub methods (Ritchie Martori)
- Move proxy creation from remote connector into base model class (Ritchie Martori)
- Remove reload method body (Ritchie Martori)
- Add Remote connector (Ritchie Martori)
- Initial client-server example (Ritchie Martori)

## 2014-04-04, Version 1.7.4

- Clean up JSDoc comments. Remove doc for deprecated installMiddleware function (crandmck)
- Describe the "id" parameter of model's sharedCtor (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Update and cleanup JSDoc (crandmck)
- Cleanup and update of jsdoc (crandmck)
- Add link to loopback.io (Rand McKinney)
- Update user.js (Doug Toppin)
- Add hidden property documentation (Ritchie Martori)
- test: add hasAndBelongsToMany integration test (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- fix to enable ACL for confirm link sent by email (Doug Toppin)
- Add hidden property support to models (Ritchie Martori)
- Allow app.model() to accept a DataSource instance (Ritchie Martori)
- Make verifications url safe (Ritchie Martori)
- Try to fix org.pegdown.ParsingTimeoutException (Rand McKinney)
- using base64 caused an occasional token string to contain '+' which resulted in a space being embedded in the token. 'hex' should always produce a url safe string for the token. (Doug Toppin)
- Sending email was missing the from field (Doug Toppin)

## 2014-03-19, Version 1.7.2

- Bump version (Raymond Feng)
- Add more comments (Raymond Feng)
- Improve the ACL matching algorithm (Raymond Feng)

## 2014-03-18, Version 1.7.1

- Add test for request pausing during authentication (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Pause the req before checking access (Raymond Feng)
- Remove the generated flag as the id is set by the before hook (Raymond Feng)
- Improvements to JSDoc comments (crandmck)
- Fixes to JSDoc for API docs (crandmck)
- Remove oauth2 models as they will be packaged in a separate module (Raymond Feng)
- Update api-model.md (Rand McKinney)
- Minor doc fix (Ritchie Martori)
- Set the correct status code for User.login (Raymond Feng)

## 2014-02-21, Version 1.7.0

- Bump version to 1.7.0 (Raymond Feng)
- Update deps (Raymond Feng)
- Bump version and update deps (Raymond Feng)
- Rewrite test for clear handler cache. (Guilherme Cirne)
- Allows options to be passed to strong-remoting (Raymond Feng)
- Remove coercion from port check (Ritchie Martori)
- The simplest possible solution for clearing the handler cache when registering a model. (Guilherme Cirne)
- Remove outdated test readme (Ritchie Martori)
- Remove unnecessary lines (Alberto Leal)
- Update the license text (Raymond Feng)
- Make sure User/AccessToken relations are set up by default (Raymond Feng)
- Remove unused karma packages (Ritchie Martori)
- Add karma for running browser tests (Ritchie Martori)
- Dual license: MIT + StrongLoop (Raymond Feng)

## 2014-02-12, Version 1.6.2

- Bump version and update deps (Raymond Feng)
- Documentation (generated) fix (Aurelien Chivot)
- Use hex encoding for application ids/keys (Raymond Feng)
- Add app.isAuthEnabled. (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Make app.models unique per app instance (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Fix incorrect usage of app in app.test.js (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Make sure the configured ACL submodel is used (Raymond Feng)

## 2014-01-30, Version 1.6.1

- Add `include=user` param to `User.login` (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Describe `access_token` param of `User.logout` (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Remove the generated flag for access token id (Raymond Feng)
- Remove message prefix as debug will print it (Raymond Feng)
- Add debug information for `user.login` (Raymond Feng)

## 2014-01-27, Version 1.6.0

- Update dependencies (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Add `loopback.compat` to simplify upgrade to 1.6 (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Register exported models using singular names (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- User: use `User.http.path` (Miroslav Bajtoš)

## 2014-01-23, Version 1.5.3

- Bump version (Raymond Feng)
- Add a test for `autoAttach` (Raymond Feng)
- Fix the Role ref to `RoleMapping` (Raymond Feng)
- Fix the Scope reference to models (Raymond Feng)
- Lookup the email model (Raymond Feng)
- Add `loopback.getModelByType()` and use it resolve model deps (Raymond Feng)
- Fix user test race condition (Ritchie Martori)
- Fix race condition where `MyEmail` model was not attached to the correct `dataSource` in tests (Ritchie Martori)
- Fix the method args (Raymond Feng)
- Fix the typo for the method name (Raymond Feng)
- Small change to text webhook. (Rand McKinney)
- Minor wording change for testing purposes. (Rand McKinney)
- Fix capitalization and punctuation. (Rand McKinney)
- Minor wording cleanup. (Rand McKinney)
- Prevent `autoAttach` from overriding existing data source (Raymond Feng)

## 2014-01-17, Version 1.5.2

- Bump version (Raymond Feng)
- Clean up `loopback.js` doc and add it to `docs.json` (Raymond Feng)
- Fix the jsdoc for `loopback.getModel()` (Raymond Feng)
- Make sure `defaultPermission` is checked (Raymond Feng)
- Remove the dangling `require` (Raymond Feng)
- Make ACL model subclassing friendly (Raymond Feng)
- Fix heading levels in docs/ markdown files. (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Remove `docs/rest.md` (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Improve jsdoc documentation of `app` object (Miroslav Bajtoš)

## 2014-01-14, Version 1.5.1

- Bump version (Raymond Feng)
- Make sure methods are called in the context of the calling class (Raymond Feng)
- Start to move `md` to `jsdoc` (Ritchie Martori)

## 2014-01-14, Version 1.5.0

- Replace `on` with `once` in middleware examples (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Fix incorrect transports (Ritchie Martori)
- Speed up tests accessing `User.password` (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Describe `loopback.ValidationError` in API docs. (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Implement `app.installMiddleware` (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Implement `app.listen` (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Provide sane default for email connector transports (Ritchie Martori)
- Add an empty `transportsIndex` to the mail connector by default (Ritchie Martori)
- Add missing `assert` in user model (Ritchie Martori)
- docs: document remote method `description` (Miroslav Bajtoš)

## 2014-01-07, Version 1.4.2

- Bump version (Raymond Feng)
- Add `app.restApiRoot` setting (Miroslav Bajtoš)

- Fix links so they work on apidocs site. (Rand McKinney)
- Add ValidationError to loopback exports. (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Add API docs to README (Ritchie Martori)
- Fixed some broken links and added ACL example in createModel() (Rand McKinney)

## 2013-12-20, Version 1.4.1

- Explicitly depend on [juggler@1.2.11](#) (Ritchie Martori)
- Add e2e tests for relations (Ritchie Martori)
- Fix destroyAll reference (Ritchie Martori)
- Add reference documentation using sdocs (Ritchie)
- Update README for application model (Raymond Feng)

## 2013-12-18, Version 1.4.0

- app.boot() now loads the "boot" directory (Ritchie Martori)
- Clean up the test case (Raymond Feng)
- Remove the default values for gateway/port (Raymond Feng)
- Reformat the code using 2 space indentation (Raymond Feng)
- Allow cert/key data to be shared by push/feedback (Raymond Feng)
- fixup - Include accessToken in user logout tests (Ritchie Martori)
- Logout now automatically pulls the accessToken from the request (Ritchie Martori)
- Fix tests depending on old behavior of default User ACLs (Ritchie Martori)
- Add default user ACLs (Ritchie Martori)
- Define schema for GCM push-notification settings (Miroslav Bajtoš)
- Improve debug statements for access control (Ritchie Martori)

## 2013-12-13, Version 1.3.4

- Dont attempt access checking on models without a check access method (Ritchie Martori)
- App config settings are now available from app.get() (Ritchie Martori)
- Fix user not allowed to delete itself if user (Ritchie Martori)
- Only look at cookies if they are available (Ritchie Martori)
- Remove the empty comment and set default token (Raymond Feng)
- Refactor to the code use wrapper classes (Raymond Feng)
- Enhance getRoles() to support smart roles (Raymond Feng)
- Fix the algorithm for Role.isInRole and ACL.checkAccess (Raymond Feng)
- Various ACL fixes (Ritchie Martori)
- Add user default ACLs (Ritchie Martori)
- Allow requests without auth tokens (Ritchie Martori)
- Fix base class not being actual base class (Ritchie Martori)
- Fix the ACL resolution against rules by matching score (Raymond Feng)
- Add access type checking (Ritchie Martori)
- Add Model.requireToken for disabling token requirement (Ritchie Martori)
- Add Model.requireToken, default swagger to false (Ritchie Martori)
- Add password reset (Ritchie Martori)

## 2013-12-06, Version 1.3.3

- Bump version (Raymond Feng)

## 2013-12-06, Version show

- Bump version (Raymond Feng)
- Make loopback-datasource-juggler a peer dep (Raymond Feng)
- Add blank line before list so it lays out properly. (Rand McKinney)
- Fix list format and minor wording fix. (Rand McKinney)
- Small fix to link text (Rand McKinney)
- Minor formatting and wording fixes. (Rand McKinney)
- docs: describe http mapping of arguments (Miroslav Bajtos)
- SLA-725 support PORT and HOST environment for PaaS support (Ritchie)

## 2013-12-04, Version 1.3.1

- Fix the test assertion as the error message is changed. (Raymond Feng)
- Bump version (Raymond Feng)

- Remove superfluous head1 (Rand McKinney)
- Fixed some list formatting issues. (Rand McKinney)
- Fix list formats to play well with wiki markdown macro. (Rand McKinney)
- Minor reformatting. (Rand McKinney)
- Sadly, HTML table format is unusable in documentation wiki. Revert to lame md format. (Rand McKinney)
- Reformat table for /find operation arguments (Rand McKinney)
- Deleted extra space that foiled bold formatting (Rand McKinney)
- Changed h3's to bold text to avoid generating items in TOC (Rand McKinney)
- Fixed erroneous heading level (Rand McKinney)
- Use loopback.AccessToken as default (Ritchie Martori)
- Fix missing assert (Ritchie Martori)
- Minor formatting fixes to make it play well in wiki (Rand McKinney)
- Initial auth implementation (Ritchie Martori)
- added Google Analytics to README.md to test tracking (altsang)
- Delete types.md (Rand McKinney)
- Delete resources.md (Rand McKinney)
- Delete quickstart.md (Rand McKinney)
- Delete js.md (Rand McKinney)
- Delete java.md (Rand McKinney)
- Delete ios.md (Rand McKinney)
- Delete gettingstarted.md (Rand McKinney)
- Delete concepts.md (Rand McKinney)
- Delete cli.md (Rand McKinney)
- Delete bundled-models.md (Rand McKinney)
- Delete apiexplorer.md (Rand McKinney)
- Delete intro.md (Rand McKinney)
- Add .jshintignore (Miroslav Bajtos)
- Add test for findById returning 404 (Miroslav Bajtos)
- Fix minor autoWiring bugs (Ritchie Martori)
- Add unauthenticated role (Raymond Feng)
- Add checkAccess for subject and token (Raymond Feng)
- Start to support smart roles such as owner (Raymond Feng)
- Add jshint configuration. (Miroslav Bajtos)
- Update rest.md (Rand McKinney)
- Update api.md (Rand McKinney)
- Add status middleware (Ritchie Martori)
- Auto attach all models created (Ritchie Martori)
- Update docs.json (Rand McKinney)
- Add loopback.urlNotFound() middleware. (Miroslav Bajtos)
- Remove .attachTo() from tests (Ritchie Martori)
- Create api-model-remote.md (Rand McKinney)
- Create api-model.md (Rand McKinney)
- Create api-geopoint.md (Rand McKinney)
- Create api-datasource.md (Rand McKinney)
- Create api-app.md (Rand McKinney)
- Debugging odd defineFK behavior (Ritchie Martori)
- Update the doc link (Raymond Feng)
- Initial auto wiring for model dataSources (Ritchie Martori)
- Add public flag checking (Ritchie Martori)

## 2013-11-18, Version 1.3.0

- Upgrade nodemailer (Ritchie Martori)
- Bump minor version (Ritchie Martori)
- Add LoopBack forum link (Raymond Feng)
- Remove blanket (Raymond Feng)
- Switch to modelBuilder (Raymond Feng)
- Allow ACLs for methods/relations (Raymond Feng)
- Allows LDL level ACLs (Raymond Feng)
- Update dependencies (Raymond Feng)
- Fix the permission resolution (Raymond Feng)
- Simplify check permission (Raymond Feng)
- Fix the permission check (Raymond Feng)
- Add oauth2 related models (Raymond Feng)
- Add a stub to register role resolvers (Raymond Feng)
- Add tests for isInRole and getRoles (Raymond Feng)
- Add constants and more tests (Raymond Feng)
- Define the models/relations for ACL (Raymond Feng)
- Start to build the ACL models (Raymond Feng)
- Update acl/role models (Raymond Feng)
- Update ACL model (Raymond Feng)



- Update AccessToken and User relationship (Ritchie Martori)
- Added AccessToken created property (Ritchie Martori)
- Update session / token documentation (Ritchie Martori)
- Add loopback.token() middleware (Ritchie Martori)
- Rename Session => AccessToken (Ritchie)
- Bump verison (Ritchie Martori)
- Fix bundle model name casing (Ritchie Martori)
- Remove old node versions from travis (Ritchie Martori)
- Add explicit Strong-remoting dep version (Ritchie Martori)
- Add travis (Ritchie Martori)
- Bump version (Ritchie Martori)
- Update "hasMany" example (Ritchie Martori)
- Code review fixes based on feedback from <https://github.com/strongloop/loopback/pull/57> (Ritchie Martori)
- Automatically convert strings to connectors if they are LoopBack connectors (Ritchie Martori)
- Update api.md (Rand McKinney)
- Update docs.json (Rand McKinney)
- Create types.md (Rand McKinney)
- Create bundled-models.md (Rand McKinney)
- Update java.md (Rand McKinney)
- Add app.dataSource() method (Ritchie)
- Add app.boot() (Ritchie Martori)
- README updates (Ritchie Martori)
- Remove the proxy as it is now handled by the juggler (Raymond Feng)
- Add MySQL connector (Raymond Feng)
- Add belongsTo and hasAndBelongsToMany (Raymond Feng)
- Clean up the model (Raymond Feng)
- Added link to Doxygen API docs. (Rand McKinney)
- Refactor email model into mail connector (Ritchie Martori)
- Update Application model for the push notification (Raymond Feng)
- Fix missing assert module (Ritchie Martori)
- Fix the test as DAO now ignores undefined value for query (Raymond Feng)
- Simplified LB architecture diagram (crandmck)
- reorg and rewriting of first part of LoopBack guide, with new diagram (crandmck)
- Fix the id and property access (Raymond Feng)
- Update remote method example (Ritchie)
- Update intro.md (Rand McKinney)
- Update rest.md (Rand McKinney)
- more cleanup (altsang)
- remove >>>>> from bad merge (altsang)
- merged in Schoons' changes to mobile clients section (altsang)
- revised per Ritchie's comments (altsang)
- Revise Mobile Clients copy. (Michael Schoonmaker)
- added Matt S' section on Mobile Clients (altsang)
- filled out Big Picture (altsang)
- revised shell -> node.js api (altsang)
- Fix the preposition (Raymond Feng)
- One more fix based on the comment (Raymond Feng)
- Drop sure (Raymond Feng)
- Add the missing article (Raymond Feng)
- Add section for api explorer to docs (Raymond Feng)
- added apiexplorer placeholder and big picture (altsang)
- removed 'the' before StrongLoop Suite (altsang)
- Remove redundant version in docs and testing docs webhook (Ritchie Martori)
- removed version text (altsang)
- Add keywords to package.json (Raymond Feng)
- Add repo (Raymond Feng)
- Finalize package.json for sls-1.0.0 (Raymond Feng)
- Update docs for api->project rename. (Michael Schoonmaker)
- Use a pure JS bcrypt (Ritchie)
- Added little boxes to Getting Started. (Michael Schoonmaker)
- Update assets mapping (Raymond Feng)
- Update concepts doc with a new diagram (Raymond Feng)
- Simplify readme (Ritchie Martori)
- Add placeholders for client apis (Ritchie Martori)
- Add command line docs (Ritchie Martori)
- Add getting started link (Ritchie Martori)
- Update the Quick Start (Ritchie Martori)
- Fix package.json to remove duplicate mocha deps (Raymond Feng)
- Tidy up package.json for LoopBack 1.0.0 (Raymond Feng)
- Update model docs further. (Michael Schoonmaker)
- Update license (Raymond Feng)
- Updated model docs (Ritchie Martori)

- Concepts overhaul in progress (Ritchie Martori)
- Update the rest doc with more samples, fix the curl encoding (Raymond Feng)
- Remove the todos example and fix doc example (Ritchie Martori)
- doc/concepts: fixed link to strong-remoting docs (Miroslav Bajtos)
- Update the internal prefix (Raymond Feng)
- Update findOne (Raymond Feng)
- Update REST doc based on the PR feedback (Raymond Feng)
- Update REST doc (Raymond Feng)
- Update the docs to fix into width of 80 (Raymond Feng)
- intro edits and TOC adjustments (Al Tsang)
- Fix the test case (Raymond Feng)

## 2013-08-27, Version 0.2.1

- Doc edits (Ritchie Martori)
- Update concepts (Raymond Feng)
- Add more description about the filter arg for find() (Raymond Feng)
- Update the concepts.md and link to related guides (Raymond Feng)
- Update rest.md (Raymond Feng)
- Add quickstart (Ritchie Martori)
- Start to add rest.md (Raymond Feng)
- adjusting concept headers, cleaning up intro, more instructions on getting started (Al Tsang)
- Use findByid to look up the instance by id (Raymond Feng)
- Update the list of shared methods (Raymond Feng)
- Make sure User.setup calls Model.setup to support shared ctor (Raymond Feng)
- Add LICENSE (Raymond Feng)
- Added code coverage blanket.js (cgole)
- took google docs TOC and put into sdocs (Al Tsang)
- Added placeholder docs (Ritchie Martori)
- Use strong-task-emitter (Raymond Feng)
- Rename 'loopback-data' to 'loopback-datasource-juggler' (Raymond Feng)
- Fix login query (Ritchie Martori)
- Implement required and update invlaid id schemas (Ritchie Martori)
- Remove auth middleware and passport until adding in acl and strategies (Ritchie Martori)
- Clean up log out methods (Ritchie Martori)
- Swagger integration (Ritchie)
- Fix hasMany / relational methods. Update docs. (Ritchie)
- Add root true to remote methods (Ritchie)
- Fix bad connector path (Ritchie)
- Fix the test case (Raymond Feng)
- Rename adapter to connector (Raymond Feng)
- Add more docs and apis to application model (Raymond Feng)
- Add a deleteById test (Raymond Feng)
- Rename sl-remoting to strong-remoting (Ritchie Martori)
- Add more functions and tests for Application model (Raymond Feng)
- More readme cleanup (Ritchie)
- README cleanup (Ritchie)
- Fix renaming manually (Ritchie)
- Manually merge application (Ritchie)
- Manually merge rest adapter (Ritchie)
- Add fields documentation (Ritchie)
- More cleanup for test/README.md (Ritchie Martori)
- Cleanup test markdown (Ritchie Martori)
- Add memory docs and test (Ritchie Martori)
- Remove remote option object (Ritchie Martori)
- Rename jugglengdb to loopback-data (Raymond Feng)
- Add renamed files (Raymond Feng)
- rename asteroid to loopback (Raymond Feng)
- Fix model remoting issue. (Ritchie Martori)
- Fix inheritance bug (Ritchie Martori)
- Remove updateAttribute as remote method (Ritchie Martori)
- Fix login bug. (Ritchie Martori)
- Added bcrypt for password hashing (Ritchie Martori)
- Refactor Model into class. Make createModel() just sugar. (Ritchie Martori)
- Remove data argument name from user tests (Ritchie Martori)
- Validate uniqueness and format of User email. (Ritchie Martori)
- Add user.logout() sugar method and update logout docs (Ritchie Martori)
- Create 64 byte session ids (Ritchie Martori)
- Tests README (Ritchie Martori)
- Experiment application model (Raymond Feng)
- Updated generated test docs (Ritchie Martori)

- Update docs and add `asteroid.memory()` sugar api (Ritchie Martori)
- Add exports to models (Raymond Feng)
- Updating models (Raymond Feng)
- Add basic email verification (Ritchie Martori)
- Initial users (Ritchie Martori)
- Add default user properties (Ritchie Martori)
- Add initial User model (Ritchie Martori)
- Remove `app.modelBuilder()` (Ritchie Martori)
- Add more user model docs (Ritchie Martori)
- Update README.md (cgole)
- Fix type in docs (Ritchie Martori)
- Add normalized properties to Models (Ritchie Martori)
- Add schema skeletons for built-in models (Raymond Feng)
- Fix `service()` & `services()` (Raymond Feng)
- Add service method (Ritchie Martori)
- Add more info to the models (Raymond Feng)
- Add more information to the logical models (Raymond Feng)
- Only build a sl remoting handler when a model is added to the app. (Ritchie Martori)
- Add user model docs. (Ritchie Martori)
- Bump version (Ritchie Martori)
- Add geo point tests (Ritchie Martori)
- Rename long to lng (Ritchie Martori)
- Add geo point (Ritchie Martori)
- `model.find => model.findById, model.all => model.find` (Ritchie Martori)

## 2013-06-24, Version 0.8.0

- First release!

## LoopBack Definition Language (LDL)

Use LoopBack Definition Language (LDL) to define LoopBack data models in JSON or JavaScript.

Use `slc loopback:model` command to create a JSON definition of a model. For more information, see [Model generator](#).

The simplest form of a property definition in JSON has a `propertyName: type` element for each property. The key is the name of the property and the value is the type of the property. For example:

```
{
  "id": "number",
  "firstName": "string",
  "lastName": "string"
}
```

This example defines a `user` model with three properties:

- `id` - The user id, a number.
- `firstName` - The first name, a string.
- `lastName` - The last name, a string.

Each key in the JSON object defines a property in the model that is cast to its associated type. See [LoopBack types](#) for more information.

You can also describe the same model in JavaScript code:

```
var UserDefinition = {
  id: Number,
  firstName: String,
  lastName: String
}
```

The JavaScript version is less verbose, since it doesn't require quotes for property names. The types are described using JavaScript constructors, for example, `Number` for `"Number"`. String literals are also supported.

To use the model in code is easy, because LoopBack builds a JavaScript constructor (or class) for you.

## Error object

By convention, LoopBack passes an `Error` object to callback functions as the `err` parameter.

For more information, see

- [JavaScript Error object](#) (Mozilla)
- [Error Handling in Node.js](#) (Joyent)
- [What is the error object?](#) (Nodejitsu)

The following table describes the properties of the error object.

Property	Type	Description
name	String	Name of the error.
status	String	When the error occurs during an HTTP request, the HTTP status code.
message	String	The error message.



Any other properties of the error object are copied to the error output.